



515

**Preuss & Jünger**  
Buchhandlung u. Antiquariat  
in Breslau  
Schmiedebrücke 29a.

A. J. Bell.  
Breslau  
Germany.

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2009 with funding from  
Ontario Council of University Libraries



*The "AUTHORIZED TEXT BOOK" Series.*

---

A

# LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, PH. D.,

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

AUTHOR OF

"A FIRST LATIN BOOK," "A SECOND LATIN BOOK," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

TORONTO:

COPP, CLARK & CO.,

17 & 19 KING STREET EAST.

1870.

ENTERED, according to Act of the Provisional Legislature, in the year 1868, by

ALBERT HARKNESS,

In the Office of the Registrar of the Province of Canada

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern  
District of New York.

## P R E F A C E .

---

THE work now offered to the public had its origin in a desire to promote the cause of Classical study. It has long been the opinion of the author, in common with numerous classical teachers, that the subject of Latin Grammar, often regarded as dry and difficult, may be presented to the learner in a form at once simple, attractive, and philosophical. It is the aim of this manual to aid the instructor in the attainment of this most desirable end.

That the present is a favorable time for the production of a Latin Grammar scarcely admits of a doubt. Never before were there such facilities for the work. The last quarter of a century has formed an epoch in the study of language and in the methods of instruction. During this period some of the most gifted minds of Germany have been gathering the choicest treasures in the field of philology, while others have been equally successful in devising improved methods of instruction. In our own country too, the more enterprising teachers have caught the spirit of improvement, and are calling loudly for a better method than has hitherto prevailed in classical study.

The present work has been prepared in view of these facts. To explain its general plan, the author begs leave to specify the following points.

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student. Accordingly it presents in large type a general survey of the whole subject in a brief and concise statement of facts and

laws, while parallel with this, in smaller type, it furnishes a fuller discussion of irregularities and exceptions for later study and for reference.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. In the regular paradigms, both of declension and of conjugation, the stems and endings have been distinguished by a difference of type, thus keeping constantly before the pupil the significance of the two essential elements which enter into the composition of inflected forms.

6. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself. The leading principles of construction have been put in the form of definite rules, and illustrated by carefully selected examples. To secure convenience of reference and to give completeness and vividness to the general outline, these rules, after being separately discussed, are presented in a body at the close of the Syntax.

7. The subdivisions in each discussion are developed, as far as practicable, from the leading idea which underlies the whole subject. Thus in the treatment of cases, moods, and tenses, various uses, comparatively distinct in themselves, are found to centre around some leading idea or thought, thus imparting to the subject both unity and simplicity.

8. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

9. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with

the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher’s patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive. The different uses have not only been carefully classified, but also distinguished by characteristic and appropriate terms, convenient for the class-room.

For the benefit of those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual in the study of Latin, it is in contemplation to publish a smaller Grammar on precisely the same plan as the present work, and with the same mode of treatment. This will be especially adapted to the wants of those who do not contemplate a collegiate course of study.

A Latin Reader, prepared with special reference to this work and intended as a companion to it, will be published at an early day.

In conclusion the author cheerfully acknowledges his indebtedness to other scholars, who have labored in the same field. The classification of verbs is founded in part on that of Grotendorf and Krüger, a mode of treatment generally adopted in the recent German works on the subject, and well exhibited by Allen in his *Analysis of Latin Verbs*.

In Prosody much aid has been derived from the excellent works of Ramsay and Habenicht.

On the general subjects of Etymology and Syntax, his indebtedness is less direct, though perhaps no less real. His views of philology have been formed in a great measure under the moulding influence of the great German masters; and perhaps few Latin Grammars of any repute have appeared within the last half century, either in this country, England, or Germany, from which he has not received valuable suggestions. In the actual work of preparation, however, he has carried out his own plan, and presented his own modes of treatment, but he has aimed to avoid all untried novelties and to admit only that which is sustained by the highest authority, and confirmed by the actual experience of the class-room.

The author is happy to express his grateful acknowledgments to the numerous Instructors who have favored him with valuable suggestions; especially to his esteemed friend and colleague, Professor J. L. Lincoln, of this University.

## PREFACE

### TO THE REVISED EDITION.

THE present edition is the result of a thorough and complete revision. The author has subjected every part of the work to a careful examination; he has availed himself of the suggestions of the most eminent classical instructors, and, finally, as the surest of all tests, he has used the work in connection with all the principal Latin authors usually read in school and college. The materials thus collected have been incorporated in this edition without either changing the plan or increasing the size of the work. By a studied attention to clearness and brevity, space has been secured for many valuable refinements of the language.

In this new form the work is now committed to classical teachers in the hope that in their hands it may promote the cause of classical education in our land.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, *September*, 1867.

# CONTENTS.

## PART FIRST

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page,
Alphabet, . . . . .	1
Sounds of Letters, . . . . .	2
I. English Method of Pronunciation, . . . . .	2
II. Continental Method, . . . . .	5
Syllables, . . . . .	6
Quantity, . . . . .	7
Accentuation, . . . . .	7

## PART SECOND.

### ETYMOLOGY.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### NOUNS.

Gender, . . . . .	8
Person and Number, . . . . .	9
Cases, . . . . .	10
Declensions, . . . . .	10
First Declension, . . . . .	11
Greek Nouns, . . . . .	12
Gender, . . . . .	12
Second Declension, . . . . .	12
Greek Nouns, . . . . .	14
Gender, . . . . .	15
Third Declension, . . . . .	15
Class I.—With Nominative Ending, . . . . .	16
Class II.—Without Nominative Ending, . . . . .	17
Formation of Cases, . . . . .	20
Greek Peculiarities, . . . . .	29
Gender, . . . . .	30
Fourth Declension, . . . . .	34
Gender, . . . . .	35
Fifth Declension, . . . . .	36
Gender, . . . . .	36
Comparative View of Declensions, . . . . .	37
General Table of Gender, . . . . .	39
Declension of Compound Nouns, . . . . .	39

	Page.
Irregular Nouns, . . . . .	40
I. Indeclinable, . . . . .	40
II. Defective, . . . . .	41
III. Heteroclites, . . . . .	42
IV. Heterogeneous, . . . . .	43

## CHAPTER II.

## ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions, . . . . .	44
Third Declension, . . . . .	47
Formation of Cases, . . . . .	49
Irregular Adjectives, . . . . .	50
Comparison, . . . . .	51
I. Terminational Comparison, . . . . .	51
Irregular, . . . . .	51
Defective, . . . . .	52
II. Adverbial Comparison, . . . . .	53
Numerals, . . . . .	54
I. Numeral Adjectives, . . . . .	54
II. Numeral Adverbs, . . . . .	58

## CHAPTER III.

## PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns, . . . . .	59
Possessive, . . . . .	60
Demonstrative, . . . . .	60
Relative, . . . . .	62
Interrogative, . . . . .	63
Indefinite, . . . . .	63

## CHAPTER IV.

## VERBS.

Voices, Moods, . . . . .	65
Tenses, . . . . .	66
Numbers, Persons, . . . . .	67
Conjugation, . . . . .	67
Paradigms of Verbs, . . . . .	68
Synopsis of Conjugation, . . . . .	88
Deponent Verbs, . . . . .	91
Periphrastic Conjugation, . . . . .	94
Contractions and Peculiarities of Conjugation, . . . . .	95
Formation of the Parts of Verbs, . . . . .	96
Table of Verbal Inflections, . . . . .	98
Comparative View of Conjugations, . . . . .	102
Formation of Principal Parts, . . . . .	104
I. Regular Formations, . . . . .	104
Euphonic Changes, . . . . .	105
II. Irregular Formations, . . . . .	106
Principal Parts in Compounds, . . . . .	109



	Page.
Classification of Verbs, . . . . .	110
First Conjugation, . . . . .	110
Second Conjugation, . . . . .	112
Third Conjugation, . . . . .	115
Fourth Conjugation, . . . . .	125
Irregular Verbs, . . . . .	127
Defective " . . . . .	134
Impersonal " . . . . .	136

## CHAPTER V.

## PARTICLES.

Adverbs, . . . . .	137
Prepositions, . . . . .	139
Conjunctions, . . . . .	139
Interjections, . . . . .	141

## CHAPTER VI.

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

Derivation of Words, . . . . .	141
Derivative Nouns, . . . . .	141
Derivative Adjectives, . . . . .	145
Derivative Verbs, . . . . .	147
Derivative Adverbs, . . . . .	149
Composition of Words, . . . . .	150
Compound Nouns, . . . . .	152
Compound Adjectives, . . . . .	152
Compound Verbs, . . . . .	153
Compound Adverbs, . . . . .	153

## PART THIRD.

## SYNTAX.

## CHAPTER I

## SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.	
I. Classification of Sentences, . . . . .	154
II. Simple Sentences, . . . . .	156
III. Complex Sentences, . . . . .	158
IV. Compound Sentences, . . . . .	159

## CHAPTER II.

## SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

I. Agreement of Nouns, . . . . .	160
Predicate Nouns, . . . . .	160
Appositives, . . . . .	161
II. Nominative, . . . . .	162

Section.	Page.
III. Vocative, . . . . .	163
IV. Accusative, . . . . .	163
I. Direct Object, . . . . .	164
Two Accusatives, . . . . .	165
II. Subject of Infinitive, . . . . .	167
III. Agreement of Accusative, . . . . .	167
IV. Accusative in an Adverbial sense, . . . . .	168
With or without Prepositions, . . . . .	168
Accusative of Time and Space, . . . . .	168
Accusative of Limit, . . . . .	168
Accusative of Specification, . . . . .	169
V. Accusative in Exclamations, . . . . .	169
V. Dative, . . . . .	170
I. Dative with Verbs—Indirect Object, . . . . .	170
Dative of Advantage, . . . . .	171
Dative with Compounds, . . . . .	172
Dative of Possessor, . . . . .	173
Dative of Agent, . . . . .	173
Ethical Dative, . . . . .	174
Two Datives, . . . . .	174
II. Dative with Adjectives, . . . . .	175
III. Dative with Nouns and Adverbs, . . . . .	176
VI. Genitive, . . . . .	176
I. Genitive with Nouns, . . . . .	177
II. Genitive with Adjectives, . . . . .	180
III. Genitive with Verbs, . . . . .	182
Predicate Genitive, . . . . .	182
Genitive of Place, . . . . .	183
Genitive in Special Constructions, . . . . .	183
Genitive and Accusative, . . . . .	186
IV. Genitive with Adverbs, . . . . .	187
VII. Ablative, . . . . .	187
I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, . . . . .	188
Ablative of Price, . . . . .	190
Ablative with Comparatives, . . . . .	190
Ablative of Difference, . . . . .	191
Ablative in Special Constructions, . . . . .	192
II. Ablative of Place, . . . . .	193
Ablative of Source and Separation, . . . . .	195
III. Ablative of Time, . . . . .	196
IV. Ablative of Characteristic, . . . . .	197
V. Ablative of Specification, . . . . .	198
VI. Ablative Absolute, . . . . .	198
VII. Ablative with Prepositions, . . . . .	199
VIII. Cases with Prepositions, . . . . .	199

## CHAPTER III.

## SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives, . . . . .	201
Use of Adjectives, . . . . .	202
Comparison, . . . . .	203

## CHAPTER IV.

## SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

	Page.
Agreement of Pronouns, . . . . .	204
Personal and Possessive Pronouns, . . . . .	206
Reflexive Use, . . . . .	206
Demonstrative Pronouns, . . . . .	208
Relative Pronouns, . . . . .	209
Interrogative Pronouns, . . . . .	210
Indefinite Pronouns, . . . . .	211

## CHAPTER V.

## SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Section.		
I.	Agreement of Verbs, . . . . .	212
II.	Use of Voices, . . . . .	214
III.	Tenses of the Indicative, . . . . .	215
IV.	Use of the Indicative, . . . . .	219
V.	Tenses of the Subjunctive, . . . . .	219
	Sequence of Tenses, . . . . .	220
VI.	Use of the Subjunctive, . . . . .	223
	I. Potential Subjunctive, . . . . .	223
	II. Subjunctive of Desire, . . . . .	225
	III. Subjunctive of Purpose or Result, . . . . .	226
	IV. Subjunctive of Condition, . . . . .	232
	V. Subjunctive of Concession, . . . . .	236
	VI. Subjunctive of Cause and Time, . . . . .	238
	VII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions, . . . . .	242
	VIII. Subjunctive by Attraction, . . . . .	244
	IX. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, . . . . .	245
	Moods and Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua, . . . . .	246
	Pronouns, Adverbs, etc., in Oratio Obliqua . . . . .	248
VII.	Imperative, . . . . .	248
	I. Tenses of the Imperative, . . . . .	248
	II. Use of the Imperative, . . . . .	249
VIII.	Infinitive, . . . . .	250
	I. Tenses of the Infinitive, . . . . .	251
	II. Subject of the Infinitive, . . . . .	252
	III. Predicate after the Infinitive, . . . . .	253
	IV. Construction of the Infinitive, . . . . .	254
IX.	Subject and Object Clauses, . . . . .	258
X.	Gerund, . . . . .	262
	Gerundive, . . . . .	263
XI.	Supine, . . . . .	266
XII.	Participles, . . . . .	267

## CHAPTER VI.

## SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

Adverbs, . . . . .	270
Prepositions, . . . . .	271
Conjunctions, . . . . .	271
Interjections, . . . . .	274

## CHAPTER VII.

	Page.
Rules of Syntax, . . . . .	274

## CHAPTER VIII.

## ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

## Section.

I. Arrangement of Words, . . . . .	281
II. Arrangement of Clauses, . . . . .	285

## PART FOURTH.

## PROSODY.

## CHAPTER I.

## QUANTITY.

I. General Rules of Quantity, . . . . .	287
II. Special Rules of Quantity, . . . . .	289
I. Quantity of Final Syllables, . . . . .	289
II. Quantity in Increments, . . . . .	292
III. Quantity of Derivative Endings, . . . . .	295
IV. Quantity of Stem Syllables, . . . . .	297

## CHAPTER II.

## VERSIFICATION.

I. General View of the Subject, . . . . .	300
I. Metrical Feet, . . . . .	300
II. Verses, . . . . .	302
III. Figures of Prosody, . . . . .	304
II. Varieties of Verse, . . . . .	305
I. Dactylic Verse, . . . . .	305
II. Anapaestic Verse, . . . . .	308
III. Trochaic Verse, . . . . .	308
IV. Iambic Verse, . . . . .	309
V. Ionic Verse, . . . . .	312
VI. Choriambic Verse, . . . . .	312
VII. Logaeodic Verse, . . . . .	313
VIII. Miscellaneous Verses, . . . . .	315
III. Versification of Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and Juvenal, . . . . .	315

## APPENDIX.

Figures of Speech, . . . . .	320
Latin Authors, . . . . .	322
Roman Calendar, . . . . .	323
Roman Money, Weights, and Measures, . . . . .	325
Abbreviations, . . . . .	327
Index of Verbs, . . . . .	328
Index of Subjects, . . . . .	336

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language. It comprises four parts:

I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

III. SYNTAX, which treats of the construction of sentences.

IV. PROSODY, which treats of quantity and versification.

---

## PART FIRST.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

---

#### ALPHABET.

2. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*.

1. *U* supplies the place of *w*.

2. *H* is only a breathing, and not strictly entitled to the rank of a letter.

3. *J* and *v* did not originally belong to the Latin: their places were supplied respectively by *i* and *u*, which were used both as vowels and as consonants.

4. *K* is seldom used, and *y* and *z* occur only in words of Greek origin.

3. **Classes of Letters.**—Letters are divided into two classes:

- I. *Vowels*, . . . . . a, e, i, o, u, y.
- II. *Consonants* :
1. Liquids, . . . . . l, m, n, r.
  2. Spirants, . . . . . h, s.
  3. Mutes: 1) Labials, . . . . . p, b, f, v.
  - 2) Palatals, . . . . . c, g, k, q, j.
  - 3) Linguals, . . . . . t, d.
  4. Double Consonants, . . . . . x, z.

#### 4. Combinations of Letters.—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are—*ae, oe, au*.
2. *Double Consonants*—*x = cs or gs; z = ds or ts*.
3. *Ch, ph, th* are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c, p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

### SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Method*.<sup>1</sup> For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

#### I. ENGLISH METHOD.

##### 1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds. But

1. *These sounds* in Latin, as in English, are somewhat modified by the consonants which accompany them.

2. *R, final*, or followed by another consonant, greatly obscures the vowel sound. Before *r* thus situated, *e, i*, and *u* are scarcely distinguishable from each other, as in the English *her, fir, fur*, while *a* and *o* are pronounced as in *far, for*, but between *qu* and *rt*, *a* approaches the sound of *o*: *quar-tus*, as in *quarter*.

3. *Dr, following qua*, gives to *a* something of the sound of *o*: *quad-rupes*, as in *quadruped*.

7. *Long Sound*.—Vowels have their long English sounds

---

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

—*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel: <sup>1</sup> *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.<sup>2</sup>

3. In penultimate<sup>3</sup> and unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A* unaccented has the sound of a final in *America*: *men'-sa*.

2) *A* after *qu*. See 6. 2.

3) *I* (also *y*) unaccented, not final, generally has the short sound of *e*; *nobilis* (nob'-e-lis), *Amycus* (Am'-e-cus). But in the first syllable of a word it has—(1) before an accented vowel or diphthong, its long sound, *di'-e-bus*; and (2) before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, sometimes the long sound, *i-do'-ne-us*; and sometimes the short sound, *philosophus* (phe-los'-o-phus).

4) *I* and *u* in special combinations. See 9. 2 and 4.

5) Before *bl*, *gl*, *tl*.—*U* has the short sound before *bl*; and the other vowels before *gl* and *tl*: *Public'-o-la*, *Ag-la'-o-phon*, *At'-las*.

6) In compounds, when the first part is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the short sound: *a* in *ab'-es*, *e* in *red'-it*, *i* in *in'-it*, *o* in *ob'-it*, *prod'-est*. But those final syllables which, as exceptions, have the long sound before a consonant (8. 1), retain that sound in compounds: *post'-quam*, *hos'-ce*.

**8. Short Sound.**—Vowels have the short English sound —*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*; except *post*, *es* final, and *os* final in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex-e'-runt*, *bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables before one or more consonants, except the penultimate: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) fol-

<sup>1</sup> Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *sibi* the short sound.

<sup>2</sup> In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel: for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

<sup>3</sup> Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

lowed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ec-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl* (7. 5), has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

3) *Compounds*. See 7. 6).

## 2. Sounds of Diphthongs.

9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced like *e* :

1) long: *Cae'-sar* (Ce'-sar), *Oe'-ta* (E'-ta).

2) short: *Daed'-ä-lus* (Ded'-a-lus), *Oed'-i-pus*

*Au*, as in author: *au'-rum*.

*Eu*, . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.

1. *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in height, coin: *hei*, *proin*. See Synaeresis, 669. II.

2. *I* between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y* and another vowel has the sound of *y* consonant in yes: *Acha'ia* (A-ka'-ya), *Pompe'ius* (Pom-pe'-yus), *Latoia* (La-to'-ya), *Harpyia* (Har-py'-ya). These combinations of *i* with the following vowel are sometimes called semi-consonant diphthongs.

3. *Ui*, as a diphthong with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui*, *hui*, *huic*.

4. *U*, with the sound of *w*, sometimes unites with the following vowel or diphthong:—(1) after *q*; *qui* (kwi), *qua*, *que*, *quae*:—(2) generally after *g*; *lingua* (lin'-gwa), *lin'-guis*, *lin'-guae*:—(3) sometimes after *s*; *sua'-deo* (swa'-deo). These combinations of *u* are analogous to those of *i* mentioned above under 2.

## 3. Sounds of Consonants.

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English, but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T, and X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae* and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (sedo), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-na*, *a'-ge* (a-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*. But

1) *Ck* is hard like *k*; *chorus* (ko'-rus), *Chi-os* (Ki'os). But see 13. 2.

2) *G* has the soft sound before *g* soft: *ag'-ger*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound, as in son, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S* final, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

2) In a few words *s* has the sound of *z*, because so pronounced in English words derived from them: *Cae'-sar*, Caesar; *cau'-sa*, cause; *mu'-sa*, muse; *mi'-ser*, miser; *phys'-i-cus*, physic, etc.

3. *T* has its regular English sound, as in time: *ti-mor*, *to-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*; *rex'-i* (rek'-si), *ux'-or* (uk'-sor). But



1) At the beginning of a word it has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus* (Zan-thus).

2) Between *e* or *u* and an accented vowel, it has the sound of *gz*: *ca-i'-lis* (egzi'lis, as in exile); *ux-o'-ri-us* (ugzo're-us, as in uxorious).

**12. C, S, T, and X—Aspirated.**—Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated—*c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'she-um); *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-e-on). But

1. *S*, immediately preceded by an accented vowel and followed by *i* with another vowel, has the sound of *zh*: *Moe'-si-a* (Me'-zhe-a). But some proper nouns retain the sound of *sh*: *A'-si-a* (A'-she-a), *Lys'-i-as*, *So'-si-a*, *The'-o-do'-si-a*, *Tys'-i-as*.

2. *T* loses the aspirate—(1) after *s*, *i*, or *x*: *Os'-ti-a*, *At'-ti-us*, *mix'-ti-o*:—(2) in old infinitives in *ier*; *flec'-ti-cr*:—(3) generally in proper names in *tion* (tyon): *Phi-lis'-ti-on*, *Am-phi'-ty-on*.

**13. Silent Consonants.**—An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: Thus

1. *C* before *n*: *Cne'-us* (Ne'-us).

2. *Ch* or *ph* before a mute: *Chtho'-ni-a* (Thonia), *Phthi'-a* (Thia).

3. *G* or *m* before *n*: *gna'-rus*; *Mne'-mon*.

4. *P* before *s* or *t*: *Psy'-che*, *Ptol'-e-mae'-us*.

5. *T* before *m*: *Tmo'-lus*.

## II. CONTINENTAL METHOD.

### 1. Sounds of Vowels.

**14.** Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound,<sup>1</sup> but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel sounds are as follows:

*a* like *ä* in father: e. g. *a'-ra*.

*e*      *ā*      made:      *ple'-bes*.

*i*      *ē*      me:      *i'-ri*.

*o*      *ō*      no:      *o'-ro*.

*u*      *ô*      do:      *u'-num*.

*y*      *ē*      me:      *Ny'-sa*.

<sup>1</sup> These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *Ae* and *oe* like *a* in *made*, e. g. *ae'-tas*, *coe'-lum*.  
*au* " *ou* " *out*, " *au'-rum*.<sup>1</sup>

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method, but it varies somewhat in different countries.

## SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo'-re*, *vi'-ce*, *a-cu'-te*, *per-sua'-de*.

18. **Simple words** are divided into syllables as follows:

1. After a vowel (or diphthong), with the *Long Sound* (7), consonants must be joined to the following vowel: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *a-gro'-rum*, *sa-cro'-rum*, *au-di'-vi*.

2. After a vowel with the *Short Sound* (8),

1) A *single* or *double consonant* is joined to such vowel, except after *i* unaccented: *gen'-e-ri*, *rex'-i*, *dom'-i-nus*.

2) *Two consonants* are separated: *bel'-lum*, *men'-sa*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But *x* following a consonant must be joined to the preceding syllable: *Aerx'-es*, *anx'-i-us*.

3) *Of three or more consonants*, the last, or, if a mute with *l* or *r*, the last two must be joined to the following vowel: *emp'-tus*, *tem'-plum*, *claus'-tra*, *trans'-tra*.

19. **Compounds** are divided into syllables,

1. Generally like simple words: *ed'-o-mo* (e, domo), *an-tef'-e-ro* (ante, fero), *be-nev'-o-lens* (bene, volens), *mag-nan'-i-mus* (magnus, animus).

2. But if the first part is entire and ends in a consonant, the compound is resolved into its component parts: *ab'-es*, *ab-i'-re*.

---

<sup>1</sup> In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately, but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs with nearly the same sound as in English.

## QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.<sup>1</sup>

21. **Long.**—A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. **Short.**—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *di'-es*, *vi'-ae*, *ni'-hil*.<sup>2</sup>

23. **Common.**—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-gri*.

24. The signs  $\bar{\phantom{a}}$ ,  $\acute{\phantom{a}}$ ,  $\times$  denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: *ă-grō-rūm*.

## ACCENTUATION.

## I. PRIMARY ACCENT.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables: *mons*, *nos*.

26. Other words are accented as follows:<sup>3</sup>

1. *Words of two syllables*—always on the first: *men'-sa*.

2. *Words of more than two syllables*—on the *penult*<sup>4</sup> if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *antepenult*:<sup>4</sup> *hō-nō'-ris*, *con'-sū-lis*. But

1) *Genitives* in *i* for *ii* and *vocatives* in *i* for *ie* retain the accent of the full form: *in-ge'-ni* for *in-ge-ni-i*; *Mer-cu'-ri* for *Mer-cu-ri-e*.

2) *Penults common* in quantity take the accent when used as long.

3) *Compounds* are accented like simple words; but

(a) *The enclitics*, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, appended to words accented on the antepenult, throw back their accent upon the last syllable of that word: *hom'-i-ne'-que*, *hom'-i-nes'-que*.

(b) *Facio* compounded with other words than prepositions, retains its own accent: *cal-e-fa'-cit*.

<sup>1</sup> Common, i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short. For rules of quantity see Prosody. Two or three leading facts are here given for the convenience of the learner.

<sup>2</sup> No account is taken of the breathing *h* (2. 2).

<sup>3</sup> In the subsequent pages the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

<sup>4</sup> Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

## II. SECONDARY ACCENTS.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent,—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mon'-u-e'-runt*; *mon'-u-e-ra'-mus*; *in-stau'-ra-ve'-runt*.

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hon'-o-rif'-i-cen-tis'-sī-mus*.

## PART SECOND.

## ETYMOLOGY.

29. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech are—*Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

## CHAPTER I.

## NOUNS.

31. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *puer*, boy; *dōmus*, house.

1. A Proper Noun is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicēro*, *Rōma*.

2. A Common Noun is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, a man; *equus*, horse. Common nouns include

1) *Collective Nouns*—designating a collection of objects: *popūlus*, people; *exercitus*, army.

2) *Abstract Nouns*—designating properties or qualities: *virtus*, virtue; *justitia*, justice.

3) *Material Nouns*—designating materials as such: *aurum*, gold; *lignum*, wood; *āqua*, water.

32. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

## GENDER.

33. There are three genders—*Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

## 35. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

## I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Nōtus*, south wind; *Aprilis*, April.

## II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pīrus*, pear tree.

## III. NEUTERS.

1. *Indeclinable Nouns*: *fas*, right; *nihil*, nothing.

2. *Words and Clauses* used as *indeclinable nouns*: *triste vale*, a sad farewell; *difficile est amicitiam manēre*, it is difficult for friendship to continue.<sup>1</sup>

## 36. REMARKS ON GENDER.

1. **Exceptions.**—The endings<sup>2</sup> of nouns sometimes give them a gender at variance with these rules. Thus,

1) The names of rivers—*Albula*, *Allia*, *Lithe*, *Styx*, and sometimes others, are feminine by ending.

2) Some names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, *trees*, and *animals* take the gender of their endings. See 47. 1.

2. **Masculine or Feminine.**—A few personal appellatives applicable to both sexes and a few names of animals are sometimes *masculine* and sometimes *feminine*, but when used without distinct reference to sex they are generally *masculine*: *civis*, citizen (man or woman); *cōmes*, companion; *bos*, ox, *cow*.

3. **Mobile Nouns** have different forms for different genders: *filius*, *filia*, son, daughter; *rex*, *regina*, king, queen; *leo*, *leaena*, lion, lioness.

4. **Epicene Nouns** have but one gender, but are used for both sexes. They apply only to the inferior animals, and usually take the gender of their endings: *anser*, goose (male or female), *masculine*; *aquila*, eagle, *feminine*.

## PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

<sup>1</sup> Here *vale* and the clause *amicitiam manēre* are both used as neuter nouns.

<sup>2</sup> Gender as determined by the endings of nouns will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

## CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases :

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

1. **Oblique Cases.**—In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (*casus recti*, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (*casus obliqui*).

2. **Case-Endings.**—In form the several cases are in general distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings*: Nom. *mensa*, Gen. *mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases Alike.**—But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* in *neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all pure Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

## DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called Declension.

40. **Five Declensions.**—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

*Genitive Endings.*

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	i,	is,	ūs,	eī. <sup>1</sup>

41. **Stem and Endings.**—In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

<sup>1</sup> See 119. 1.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and ĕ,—*feminine*; ās and ĕs,—*masculine*.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are declined as follows :

## SINGULAR.

	Example.	Meaning.	Case-Endings.
Nom.	mensă,	a table,	ă
Gen.	mensę,	of a table,	ę
Dat.	mensę,	to, for a table,	ę
Acc.	mensă,	a table,	ă
Voc.	mensă,	O table,	ă
Abl.	mensă,	with, from, by a table,	ă

## PLURAL.

Nom.	mensę,	tables,	ę
Gen.	mensărŭm,	of tables,	ărŭm
Dat.	mensīs,	to, for tables,	īs
Acc.	mensăs,	tables,	ăs
Voc.	mensę,	O tables,	ę
Abl.	mensīs,	with, from, by tables.	īs.

1. **Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of this example, it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—With these endings decline :

*Ala*, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortŭna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victoria*, victory.

3. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur :

1) **As** for *ę* in the Gen. of *familia*, in composition with *păter*, *măter*, *filius*, and *filia*: *paterfamilias*, father of a family.

2) **Ai** for the genitive ending *ę*, in the poets: *aulăi* for *aulę*, of a hall.

3) **Um** for *ărŭm* in the Gen. Plur.: *Dardanŭdum* for *Dardanidărŭm*, of the descendants of Dardanus.

4) **Abus** for *īs* in the Dat. and Abl. Plur., especially in *dea*, goddess, and *filia*, daughter, to distinguish them from the same cases of *deus*, god, and *filius*, son.

4. **Article.**—The Latin has no article. A Latin noun may therefore, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated either without any article, with *a* or *an*, or with *the*: *côrôna*, crown, a crown, the crown.

43. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **e, as,** and **es** are of Greek origin, and are declined as follows :

Epitōme, *epitome*. Aenēas, *Aeneas*. Pyrītes, *pyrites*.

## SINGULAR.

N. ěpītōmē	Aenēās	pŷrītēs
G. epitōmēs	Aenēae	pyritae
D. epitōmae	Aenēae	pyritae
A. epitōmēn	Aenēām, ān	pyritēn
V. epitōmē	Aenēā	pyritē, ā
A. epitōmē	Aenēā.	pyritē, ā

## PLURAL.

N. ěpītōmae	pŷritae
G. epitōmārūm	pyritārūm
D. epitōmīs	pyritīs
A. epitōmās	pyritās
V. epitōmae	pyritae
A. epitōmīs.	pyritīs. ✕

1. Examples for Practice.—*Aloe*, aloe ; *borcas*, north wind ; *comētes*, comet.

2. Paradigms.—Observe 1) That in the Plur. and in the Dat. Sing., Greek nouns are declined like *mensa*, and 2) That in the Gen. Sing., only those in *e* depart from the regular ending *ae*.

3. Many Greek nouns assume the Latin ending *a*, and are declined like *mensa*. Many in *e* have also a form in *a* ; *epitōme*, *epitōma*, *epitome*.

## 44. GENDER IN FIRST DECLENSION.

Feminine endings : **a, e.**

Masculine endings : **as, es.**

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*—(1) a few in *a* by signification : *poēta*, poet ; *agricōla*, husbandman. See 35. 1.—(2) *Hadria*, Adriatic sea ; sometimes *dāma*, deer, and *talpa*, mole.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

45. Nouns of the second declension end in

**ēr, ĩr, ūs, os,**—*masculine* ; **ūm, on,**—*neuter*.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *er, ĩr, us, um*, and are declined as follows :



*Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.*

## SINGULAR.

N. <i>servūs</i>	<i>puēr</i>	<i>āgēr</i>	<i>templūm</i>
G. <i>servī</i>	<i>puērī</i>	<i>āgrī</i>	<i>templī</i>
D. <i>servō</i>	<i>puērō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>templō</i>
A. <i>servūm</i>	<i>puērūm</i>	<i>agrūm</i>	<i>templūm</i>
V. <i>servē</i>	<i>puēr</i>	<i>agēr</i>	<i>templūm</i>
A. <i>servō</i>	<i>puērō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>templō</i>

## PLURAL.

N. <i>servī</i>	<i>puērī</i>	<i>āgrī</i>	<i>templā</i>
G. <i>servōrūm</i>	<i>puērōrūm</i>	<i>agrōrūm</i>	<i>templōrūm</i>
D. <i>servīs</i>	<i>puērīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>templīs</i>
A. <i>servōs</i>	<i>puērōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>templā</i>
V. <i>servī</i>	<i>puērī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>templā</i>
A. <i>servīs.</i>	<i>puērīs.</i>	<i>agrīs.</i>	<i>templīs.</i>

1. *Case-Endings.*—From an inspection of the paradigms it will be seen that they are declined with the following

*Case-Endings.*

1. ūs.                      2. ēr.                      3. ūm.

## SINGULAR.

N. ūs	— <sup>1</sup>	ūm
G. ī	ī	ī
D. ō	ō	ō
A. ūm	ūm	ūm
V. ē	— <sup>1</sup>	ūm
A. ō	ō	ō

## PLURAL.

N. ī	ī	ā
G. ōrūm	ōrūm	ōrūm
D. īs	īs	īs
A. ōs	ōs	ā
V. ī	ī	ā
A. īs.	īs.	īs.

2. *Examples for Practice.*—Like *SERVUS*: *annus*, year; *domīnus*, master.—Like *PUER*: *gēner*, son-in-law; *sōccr*, father-in-law.—Like *AGER*: *fāber*, artisan; *magīster*, master.—Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. *Paradigms.*—Observe

1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the

<sup>1</sup> The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*; thus *puer* is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be *puērūs*.

endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. ; Nom. *puer* for *puërus*, Voc. *puer* for *puëre*.

2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.<sup>1</sup>

3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38. 3.

4. **Ager and Puer.**—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ager*, but the following in *er* and *ir* are declined like *puer*.

1) Nouns in *ir*: *vir*, *viri*, man.

2) Compounds in *fer* and *ger*: *armiger*, *armigëri*, armor-bearer ; *signifer*, *signifëri*, standard-bearer.

3) Adulter, *adulterer* ;      *Liber*, *Bacchus* ;      presbÿter, *elder*.  
Celtiber, *Celtiberian* ; <sup>2</sup> *libëri*, *children* ;      söcer, *father-in-law*.  
gëner, *son-in-law* ;      Mulciber, *Vulcan* ; <sup>2</sup> *vesper*, *evening*.  
Iber, *Spaniard*.<sup>2</sup>

5. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur :

1) **I** for *ii* by contraction, in the Gen. Sing. without change of accent: *ingëni* for *ingë'nii*, of talent.

2) **I** for *ie*, common in proper names in *ius*, without change of accent: *Mercü'ri* for *Mercu'rie*, Mercury. Also in *fili* for *filie*, son ; *gëni* for *genie*, guardian spirit.

3) **Us** for *e* in the Voc., the regular form in *deus*, god, but rare in other words.

4) **Um** for *orum*, common in a few words denoting money, weight, and measure: *talentum* for *talentorum*, of talents ; also in a few other words: *deum* for *deorum* ; *libërum* for *liberorum* ; *Argivum* for *Argivorum*.

6. **Deus.**—This has, Voc. Sing., *deus* ; Nom. Plur., *dei*, *diï*, *di* ; Gen., *deorum*, *deum* ; Dat. and Abl., *deis*, *diis*, *dis* ; otherwise regular.

## 46. GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns of this declension in **os** and **on** are of Greek origin.

1. Nouns in *os* are generally declined like those in *us*, except in the accusative singular, where they have *on*: *Delös*, *Delï*, *Delö*, *Delön*, etc., island Delos.

2. Nouns in *on* are declined like *templum*, with *on* for *um* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative.

3. Most Greek nouns generally assume in prose the Latin forms in *us* and *um*, but sometimes, especially in poetry, they retain in one or more cases the peculiar endings of the Greek. Thus,

<sup>1</sup> In *puer*, *e* belongs to the stem, and is accordingly retained in all the cases ; but in *ager* it is inserted in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., as the pure stem *agr* would be difficult to pronounce.

<sup>2</sup> Celtiber and Iber have *e long* in the Gen., and Mulciber sometimes drops *e*.

- 1) *Genitive Singular*, **ō** (rarely **u**): Andrōgeō from Andrōgeōs.
- 2) *Accusative* " **o** or **on**: Atho, Athon " Athos.
- 3) *Nominative Plural*, **oe**: cānēphōroe " cānēphōrōs.
- 4) *Genitive* " **ōn** (**om**): bēcōlicōn " bēcōlicōn.
- 5) *Greek nouns in eūs* admit certain forms of the third declension: *Orpheus*; G., *Orphēōs*; D., *Orphēi*; A., *Orphēa*; V., *Orphēū*.—*Panthūs* has Voc. *Panthā*, and *pelāgus*, Plur. *pelāge*.

#### ✕ 47. GENDER IN SECOND DECLENSION.

Masculine endings: **er, ir, us, os.**

Neuter endings: **um, on.**

##### I. FEMININE BY EXCEPTION.

1. *Nouns feminine by signification*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth. See §5. 2, but observe that

Many names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees* follow the gender of their endings.—(1) *COUNTRIES*: *Bospōrus*, *Isthmus*, *Pontus*, masculine by ending; those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter by ending.—(2) *TOWNS*: *Canōpus* and plurals in *i*, masculine; those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter.—(3) *ISLANDS*: those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter.—(4) *TREES*: *oleaster* and *pinaster*, masculine. Some names of shrubs and plants are feminine, like those of trees, while others take the gender of their endings.

##### 2. Other Feminine exceptions are

- 1) Most names of gems and ships: *amethystus*, *sapphirus*.
- 2) *Alvus*, belly; *carbāsus*, sail; *cōlus*, distaff; *hūmus*, ground; *vannus*, sieve.
- 3) Many Greek feminines, as (1) nouns in *odus*, *metros*, *thongus*: *periōdus*, period; *diamētros*, diameter; *diphthongus*, diphthong; (2) *abyssus*, abyss; *atōmus*, atom; *dialectos*, dialect.

##### II. NEUTER BY EXCEPTION.

*Pelāgus*, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *vulgus* (rarely masc.), common people.

✕

#### THIRD DECLENSION.

#### 48. Nouns of the third declension end in

**a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.**

##### I. MASCULINE ENDINGS:

**o, or, os, er, es** *increasing in the genitive.*

##### II. FEMININE ENDINGS:

**as, is, ys, x, es** *not increasing in the genitive, s preceded by a consonant.*

##### III. NEUTER ENDINGS:

**a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.**

#### 49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case-ending in the nominative singular. These all end in *e, s, or x.*

## II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the nominative singular.

In class II. the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. *consulis*; stem, *consul*, a *consul*; *leo*, *leōnis*, stem, *leon* (Nom. drops n), *lion*; *carmen*, *carminis*, stem, *carmin* (Nom. changes in to en), *song*.

### 50. CLASS I.—WITH NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s impure**,<sup>2</sup> and **x**:—*with stem unchanged in nominative.*

Nubes, <i>f.</i> <i>cloud.</i>	Avis, <i>f.</i> <i>bird.</i>	Urbs, <i>f.</i> <i>city.</i>	Rex, <i>m.</i> <i>king.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------

#### SINGULAR.

N. nūbēs	āvīs	urbs	rex <sup>1</sup>
G. nubīs	avis	urbīs	rēgīs
D. nubī	avī	urbī	regī
A. nubēm	avēm	urbēm	regēm
V. nubēs	avis	urbs	rex
A. nubē	avē <sup>3</sup>	urbē	regē

#### PLURAL.

N. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
G. nubīūm	aviūm	urbīūm	regūm
D. nubībūs	avībūs	urbībūs	regībūs
A. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
V. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
A. nubībūs.	avībūs.	urbībūs.	regībūs.

II. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s impure**, and **x**:—*with stem changed in nominative.*

Miles, <i>m.</i> <i>soldier.</i>	Lapis, <i>m.</i> <i>stone.</i>	Ars, <i>f.</i> <i>art.</i>	Judex, <i>m. and f.</i> <i>judge.</i>
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-------------------------------	--

#### SINGULAR.

N. milēs	lāpīs	ars	jūdex <sup>1</sup>
G. militīs	lapīdīs	artīs	judicīs
D. militī	lapīdī	artī	judicī
A. militēm	lapīdēm	artēm	judicēm
V. milēs	lapīs	ars	judex
A. militē	lapīdē	artē	judicē

#### PLURAL.

N. militēs	lapīdēs	artēs	judicēs
G. militūm	lapīdūm	artiūm	judiciūm

<sup>1</sup> X in rex = *gs—g* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the nom. ending; but in judex, x = *cs—c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the nom. ending.

<sup>2</sup> *Impure*, i. e., preceded by a consonant. <sup>3</sup> Sometimes *avē*.

<i>D. militibūs</i>	<i>lapidibūs</i>	<i>artibūs</i>	<i>judicibūs</i>
<i>A. militēs</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>artēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>
<i>V. militēs</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>artēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>
<i>A. militibūs.</i>	<i>lapidibūs.</i>	<i>artibūs.</i>	<i>judicibūs.</i>

III. Nouns in *as, os, us*, and *e*:—*those in as, os, and us with stem changed, those in e with stem unchanged.*

<i>Civitas, f.</i>	<i>Nepos, m.</i>	<i>Virtus, f.</i>	<i>Mare, n.</i>
<i>state.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>	<i>virtue.</i>	<i>sea.</i>

## SINGULAR.

<i>N. civitās</i>	<i>nepōs</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>mārē</i>
<i>G. civitatīs</i>	<i>nepōtīs</i>	<i>virtūtīs</i>	<i>marīs</i>
<i>D. civitatī</i>	<i>nepōtī</i>	<i>virtūtī</i>	<i>marī</i>
<i>A. civitatēm</i>	<i>nepōtēm</i>	<i>virtutēm</i>	<i>marē</i>
<i>V. civitās</i>	<i>nepōs</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>marē</i>
<i>A. civitatē</i>	<i>nepōtē</i>	<i>virtutē</i>	<i>marī</i> <sup>2</sup>

## PLURAL.

<i>N. civitatēs</i>	<i>nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtutēs</i>	<i>marīā</i>
<i>G. civitatūm</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>nepōtūm</i>	<i>virtutūm</i>	<i>marīām</i>
<i>D. civitatibūs</i>	<i>nepotibūs</i>	<i>virtutibūs</i>	<i>maribūs</i>
<i>A. civitatēs</i>	<i>nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtutēs</i>	<i>marīā</i>
<i>V. civitatēs</i>	<i>nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtutēs</i>	<i>marīā</i>
<i>A. civitatibūs.</i>	<i>nepotibūs.</i>	<i>virtutibūs.</i>	<i>maribūs.</i>

## 51. CLASS II.—WITHOUT NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in *l* and *r*:—*with stem unchanged in nominative.*

<i>Sol, m.</i>	<i>Consul, m.</i>	<i>Passer, m.</i>	<i>Vultur, m.</i>
<i>sun.</i>	<i>consul.</i>	<i>sparrow.</i>	<i>vulture.</i>

## SINGULAR.

<i>N. sōl</i>	<i>consul</i>	<i>passēr</i>	<i>vultūr</i>
<i>G. sōlis</i>	<i>consulīs</i>	<i>passērīs</i>	<i>vultūrīs</i>
<i>D. sōlī</i>	<i>consulī</i>	<i>passērī</i>	<i>vultūrī</i>
<i>A. sōlēm</i>	<i>consulēm</i>	<i>passērēm</i>	<i>vultūrēm</i>
<i>V. sōl</i>	<i>consul</i>	<i>passēr</i>	<i>vultūr</i>
<i>A. sōlē</i>	<i>consulē</i>	<i>passērē</i>	<i>vultūrē</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>N. sōlēs</i>	<i>consulēs</i>	<i>passērēs</i>	<i>vultūrēs</i>
<i>G. sōlibūs</i>	<i>consulūm</i>	<i>passērūm</i>	<i>vultūrūm</i>
<i>D. sōlibūs</i>	<i>consulibūs</i>	<i>passeribūs</i>	<i>vulturibūs</i>

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes *civitatiūm*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

<i>A.</i> sōlēs	consulēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
<i>V.</i> sōlēs	consulēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
<i>A.</i> sōlibūs.	consulibūs.	passeribūs.	vulturibūs.

II. Nouns in **o** and **r** :—*with stem changed in nominative.*

Leo, <i>m.</i> <i>lion.</i>	Virgo, <i>f.</i> <i>maiden.</i>	Pater, <i>m.</i> <i>father.</i>	Pastor, <i>m.</i> <i>shepherd.</i>
--------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

## SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> leo	virgo	pātēr	pastōr
<i>G.</i> leōnīs	virginīs	pātrīs	pastōrīs
<i>D.</i> leōnī	virginī	patrī	pastōrī
<i>A.</i> leōnēm	virginēm	patrēm	pastōrēm
<i>V.</i> leo	virgo	patēr	pastōr
<i>A.</i> leōnē	virginē	patrē	pastōrē

## PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> leōnēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastōrēs
<i>G.</i> leōnūm	virginūm	patrūm	pastōrūm
<i>D.</i> leonibūs	virginibūs	patrībūs	pastoribūs
<i>A.</i> leōnēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastōrēs
<i>V.</i> leōnēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastōrēs
<i>A.</i> leonibūs.	virginibūs.	patrībūs.	pastoribūs.

III. Nouns in **en**, **us**, and **ut** :—*with stem changed in nominative.*

Carmen, <i>n.</i> <i>song.</i>	Opus, <i>n.</i> <i>work.</i>	Corpus, <i>n.</i> <i>body.</i>	Capūt, <i>n.</i> <i>head.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

## SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> carmēn	ōpūs	corpūs	cāpūt
<i>G.</i> carminīs	opērīs	corpōrīs	capitīs
<i>D.</i> carminī	opērī	corpōrī	capitī
<i>A.</i> carmēn	opūs	corpūs	capūt
<i>V.</i> carmēn	opūs	corpūs	capūt
<i>A.</i> carminē	opērē	corpōrē	capitē

## PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> carminā	opērā	corpōrā	capitā
<i>G.</i> carminūm	opērūm	corpōrūm	capitūm
<i>D.</i> carminibūs	operibūs	corporibūs	capitibūs
<i>A.</i> carminā	opērā	corpōrā	capitā
<i>V.</i> carminā	opērā	corpōrā	capitā
<i>A.</i> carminibūs.	operibūs.	corporibūs.	capitibūs.

**52. Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the nominative and vocative singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

### *Case-Endings.*

#### SINGULAR.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	s <sup>1</sup> (es, is) — <sup>2</sup>	ě — <sup>2</sup>
<i>Gen.</i>	īs	īs
<i>Dat.</i>	ī	ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ēm (īm) <sup>3</sup>	like nom.
<i>Voc.</i>	like nom.	" "
<i>Abl.</i>	ě, ī	ě, ī

#### PLURAL.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	ēs	ă, iă
<i>Gen.</i>	ŭm, iŭm	ŭm, iŭm
<i>Dat.</i>	ībŭs	ībŭs
<i>Acc.</i>	ēs	ă, iă
<i>Voc.</i>	ēs	ă, iă
<i>Abl.</i>	ībŭs.	ībŭs.

**53. Declension.**<sup>4</sup>—To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the nominative singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

### 54. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE :

#### *Class I.*

Rŭpes,	<i>Gen.</i> rupis, f.	<i>rock</i> ,	hospes,	<i>Gen.</i> hospĭtis, m.	<i>guest</i> .
vestis,	vestis, f.	<i>garment</i> ;	cuspis,	cuspidis, f.	<i>spear</i> .
trabs,	trăbis, f.	<i>beam</i> ;	mons,	montis, m.	<i>mountain</i> .
lex,	lēgis, f.	<i>law</i> ;	ăpex,	apĕcis, m.	<i>summit</i> .
libertas,	libertătis, f.	<i>liberty</i> ;	sălus,	salŭtis, f.	<i>safety</i> .
sedile,	sedilis, n.	<i>seat</i> ;			

<sup>1</sup> In nouns in æ (= es or gs), s is the case-ending, and the e or g belongs to the stem.

<sup>2</sup> The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns of Class II.

<sup>3</sup> The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

<sup>4</sup> For Irregularities see Formation of Cases (55-95) and Irregular Nouns.

## Class II.

Exsul,	Gen. exsūlis, m. and f.	exile ;	dōlor,	Gen. dolōris, m.	pain.
actio,	actiōnis, f.	action ;	imāgo,	imaginis, f.	image.
anser,	ansēris, m.	goose ;	frāter,	fratris, m.	brother.
nōmen,	nomīnis, n.	name ;	tempus,	tempōris, n.	time.

## FORMATION OF CASES.

*Nominative Singular.*

55. The nominative singular may generally be formed from any oblique case in one of two ways :

I. By changing the ending of the given case to the nominative ending

**s (es, is)** in masculines and feminines ; **e** in neuters :  
Acc. *urbem*, Nom. *urbs* ; *āvem*, *avis* ; *nūbem*, *nubes*. So  
Gen. *māris* (neut.), Nom. *mare*.

II. By dropping the ending of the given case : Gen.  
*consūlis*, Nom. *consul* ; *passēris*, *passer* ; *pastōris*, *pastor*.

1. THE FIRST METHOD applies in general to *mute stems*.

2. THE SECOND METHOD applies to most *liquid stems*.

3. EUPHONIC CHANGES :

1) **T, d,** and **r** before **s** are dropped ; **c** and **g** before **s** unite with it and form **z** ; **i** is sometimes changed to **e** : Gen. *civitātis*, N. *civitas* (for *civitäts*, *t* dropped) ; G. *militis*, N. *miles* (*militis*, *t* dropped and *i* changed to *e*) ; G. *rēgis*, N. *rex* (regs).

2) The endings **on** and **in** of masc. and fem. stems are generally changed to **o** : G. *lēōnis*, N. *leo* (for *leon*) ; G. *virgīnis*, N. *virgo* (for *virgin*). But in neuters **in** is changed to **en** : G. *carminis*, *carmen* (for *carmin*).

3) The endings **er** and **or** of neut. stems are generally changed to **us** : G. *opēris*, N. *opus* (for *oper*) ; G. *corpōris*, N. *corpus* (for *corpor*).

4) Other changes sometimes occur.

*Genitive Singular.*

## I. GENERAL RULES.

56. Class I. forms the genitive singular by changing the nominative ending into **is** : *māre*, *māris*, sea ; *urbs*, *urbis*, city ; *nūbes*, *nubis*, cloud ; *hostis*, *hostis*, enemy ; *arx* (arcs), *arcis*, citadel ; *rex* (regs), *rēgis*, king.

1. CLASS I. includes, it will be remembered, nouns in **e**, **s** (with a few exceptions), and **x**.

2. THE NOMINATIVE ENDING in this class is

1) **e** in nouns in **e** : *mare*.

2) **s** in nouns in **s** ; but if **e** or **i** precedes, it may be **es** or **is** ; thus it is **s** in *urbs*, **es** in *nubes*, and **is** in *hostis*.



3) *s* in nouns in *x*: as the double consonant *x* = *cs* or *gs*, the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem and the *s* is the ending.

Accordingly the genitive changes the endings *e*, *s*, *es*, and *is* into *is*, as above.

3. IRREGULARITIES AND EXCEPTIONS.—See special rules, 58–83.

57. **Class II.** forms the genitive by adding *is* to the nominative: *sōl*, *sōlis*, sun; *carcer*, *carcēris*, prison; *pastor*, *pastōris*, shepherd; *lien*, *liēnis*, spleen.

1. **Class II.** includes all nouns of this declension not embraced under **Class I.**

2. **CHANGES AND IRREGULARITIES.**—See special rules.

## II. SPECIAL RULES.

### I. Words ending in a Vowel.

#### *Genitive Formation—Various.*

##### A.

58. Nouns in **a** form the genitive in *ātis*; *poēma*, *poemātis*, poem. These are of Greek origin.

##### E.

59. Nouns in **e** form the genitive in *is*; *māre*, *māris*, sea.

##### I.

60. Nouns in **i** form the genitive in *is*, or are indeclinable: *sināpi*, *sināpis*, mustard.

EXCEPTIONS.—The compounds of *mēli* form it in *ītis*: *oxymēli*, *oxymclītis*, oxymel.

##### O.

61. Nouns in **o** form the genitive in *ōnis*: *leo*, *leōnis*, lion; *actio*, *actiōnis*, action.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. *ōnis*:—most national names, *Macēdo*, *Macedōnis*, Macedonian.

2. *īnis*:—*Apollo*; *hōmo*, man; *nēmo*, nobody; *turbo*, whirlwind; and nouns in **do** and **go**: *grando*, *grandinis*, hail; *virgo*, *virginis*, maiden; except—*harpāgo*, *ōnis*; *līgo*, *ōnis*; *praedo*, *ōnis*, also *comēdo*, *cūdo*, mango, *spādo*, *unēdo*, *ēdo*.

3. *nīs*:—*cāro*, *carnīs*, flesh.

4. *ēnis*:—*Anio*, *Aniēnis*, river Anio; *Nerio*, *Neriūs*.

5. *us*:—few Greek feminines: *Dīdo*, *Didus*.

##### Y.

62. Nouns in **y** form the genitive in *ŷis* (*ŷos*, *ys*), or

are indeclinable: *mīsy, mīsyis* (*mīsyos, mīsys*) copperas. These are of Greek origin.

II. Words ending in Mutes or Liquids: **c, l, n, r, t.**  
*Genitive adds is.*

**C.**

63. There are two nouns in **c**: *ālec, alēcis*, pickle; *lac, lactis*, milk.

**L.**

64. Nouns in **l** form the genitive by adding **is**: *sōl, sōlis*, sun.

1. *Two add lis*:—*fel, fellis*, gall; *mel, mellis*, honey.

2. *Nouns in āl* lengthen **a** in the Gen.; *anīmal, animālis*, animal; except *sal*, salt, and masculine proper names: *Hannibal, Hannibālis*.

**N.**

65. Nouns in **n** form the genitive by adding **is**, but those in **ēn** form it in **īnis**: *pacan, pacānis*, pacan; *flūmen, flūminis*, stream.

1. *The few nouns in ēn* (e long), mostly Greek, add **is**: *liēn, liēnis*, spleen.

2. *Nouns in an, on, in, yn* are Greek, and sometimes have **os** for **is** in the Gen.: *Pān, Pānos* for Panis, god Pan.—Some in *on* have *onis* or *ontis*: *aīdon, aīdōnis*, nightingale; *Xenōphon, Xenōphontis*.

**R.**

66. Nouns in **r** form the genitive by adding **is**: *carcer, carcēris*, prison; *fulgur, fulgūris*, lightning.

1. *Nouns in ār* generally lengthen **a** in the Gen.: *calcār, calcāris*, spur; but a few retain the short vowel.—*Far*, corn, has *farris*; *hēpar*, liver, *hepātis*.

2. *Some nouns in er* drop **e** in the genitive:

1) Those in **ter**: *pāter, patris*, father; except *lāter, latēris*, tile, and Greek nouns: *crāter, eratēris*, bowl.

2) *Imber* and names of months in **ber**: *imber, imbris*, shower; *September, Septembris*.

3. *Ier*, way, has *itinēris*; *Jupāter, Jōvis*.

4. *Nouns in or* have generally **ōris**: *pastor, pastōris*, shepherd; but a few retain the short vowel. *Cor*, heart, has *cordis*.

5. Four in **ur** have **ōris**: *ēbur*, ivory; *fēmur*, thigh; *jēcūr*, liver; *rōbur*, strength; but *femur* has also *femīnis*, and *jecur, jecinōris, jecinēris*, and *jocinēris*.

## T.

67. Nouns in **t** form the genitive in **itis**: *cāput*, *capitis*, head. *Caput* and its compounds are the only nouns in **t**.

III. Words ending in **S** preceded by a Vowel or Diphthong.

*Genitive Formation—Various.*

## AS.

68. Nouns in **as** form the genitive in **ātis**: *aetas*, *aetātis*, age; *civitas*, *civitātis*, state.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ātis**:—*ānas*, *anātis*, duck, and neuter Greek nouns.
2. **adis**:—*vas*, *vadis*, surety; *Arcas*, Arcadian, and fem. Greek nouns;<sup>1</sup> *lampas*, *lampadis*, torch.
3. **āris**:—*mas*, *māris*, a male.
4. **āsīs**:—*vas*, *vāsīs*, vessel.
5. **assis**:—*as*, *assis*, an as (a coin).
6. **antis**:—only masc. Greek nouns; *adūmas*, *antis*, adamant.

## ES.

69. Nouns in **ēs** (e long) form the genitive in **is**: *fāmes*, *famis*, hunger; *nūbes*, *nubis*, cloud.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **edis**:—(1) **ēdis**: *hēres*, *herēdis*, heir; *merees*, reward.—(2) **ēdis**: *pes*, *pēdis*, foot.—(3) **aedis**: *praes*, *praedis*, surety.
2. **eris**:—(1) **ēris**: *Cēres*, *Cerēris*.—(2) **aeris**: *aes*, *aeris*, copper.
3. **etis**:—(1) **ētis**: *quies*, rest, with compounds, *inquies*, *requies*, and a few Greek words: *libes*, *tūpes*.—(2) **ētis**: *abies*, fir tree; *aries*, ram; *paries*, wall.
4. **essis**:—*bes*, *bessis*, two thirds.
5. **i**:—a few Greek proper names: *Xerxes*, *i*.

70. Nouns in **ēs** (e short) form the genitive in **itis**: *māles*, *militis*, soldier.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ētis**:—*interpres*, interpreter; *sēges*, crop; *tēges*, covering.
2. **īdis**:—*obses*, hostage; *praeses*, president.

## IS.

71. Nouns in **is** form the genitive in **is**: *avis*, *avis*, bird; *cānis*, *canis*, dog.

<sup>1</sup> Greek nouns sometimes have *ados* for *adis*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ĕris** :—*cĕnis, cinĕris*, ashes ; *cucūmis*, cucumber ; *pulvis*, dust ; *vōmis*, ploughshare.
2. **īdis** :—*cūpis*, cup ; *cassis*, helmet ; *cuspis*, spear ; *lāpis*, stone ; *promulsis*, antepast, and a few Greek <sup>1</sup> words : as *tyrannis*, *īdis*, tyranny. Sometimes *ībis* and *tigris*.
3. **īnis** :—*pollis*, flour ; *sanguis*, blood.
4. **īris** :—*glis, glīris*, dormouse.
5. **issis** :—*sēmīs, semissis*, half an as.
6. **itis** :—*lis*, strife ; *Dis, Quīris, Samnis*.

OS.

72. Nouns in **os** form the genitive in **ōris** : *flos, flōris*, flower ; *mos, mōris*, custom.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ōtis** :—*cos, cōtis*, whetstone ; *dos*, dowry ; *nĕpos*, grandson ; *sacerdos*, priest ; and a few Greek words : *rhinocĕros*, the rhinoceros.
2. **ōdis** :—*custos, custōdis*, guardian.
3. **ōis** :—few masc. Greek nouns : *hĕros*, hero ; *Mīnos, Tros*.
4. **ōris** :—*arbo*s for *arbor*, tree.
5. **ossis** :—*os, ossis*, bone (*os*, mouth, regular : *ōris*).
6. **ōvis** :—*bo*s, *bōvis*, ox.

US.

73. Nouns in **us** form the genitive in **ĕris** or **ōris** : *lātus, latĕris*, side ; *corpus, corpōris*, body.

1. *Genitive in ĕris*.—*Acus*, foedus, fūnus, gĕnus, glōmus, lātus, mūnus, ūlus, ōnus, ōpus, pondus, rūdus, scĕlus, sīdus, ulcus, vellus, Vĕnus, viscus, vulnus.

2. *Genitive in ōris*.—*Corpus*, dĕcus, dedĕcus, facinus, fĕnus, frīgus, lĕpus, litus, nĕmus, pectus, pĕcus, pĕnus, pignus, stercus, tempus, tergus.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **uris** :—(1) **ūris** : *crus*, leg ; *jus*, right ; *jus*, soup ; *mus*, mouse ; *pus*, pus ; *rus*, country ; *tus* (thus), incense ; *tellus*, earth.  
—(2) **ŭris** : *Līgus, Līgūris*, Ligurian.
2. **ūtis** :—*juventus*, youth ; *sālus*, safety ; *senectus*, old age ; *servītus*, servitude ; *virtus*, virtue.
3. **udis** :—(1) **ūdis** : *incus*, anvil ; *pālus*, marsh ; *subscus*, dovetail.—  
(2) **ŭdis** : *pĕcus, pecūdis*, a head of cattle.—(3) **audis** : *fraus, fraudis*, fraud ; *laus*, praise.

<sup>1</sup> Greek nouns sometimes have *idos* or even *ios* for *idis* ; *Salamis* has *Salamīnis* ; *Simois*, *Simoentis*.

4. **uis**:—*grus, gruis*, crane; *sus*, swine.
5. **untis**:—a few Greek names of places: *Trapezus, untis*.
6. **ōdis**:—Greek compounds in *pus*: *trīpus, tripōdis*, tripod.
7. **eos**:—Greek nouns in *eus*, when of this declension: *Thēseus, Theseos*.

## YS.

74. Nouns in **ys** form the genitive in **ŷis, ŷos, ys**:  
*Othrys, Othryōs*.

These are of Greek origin; a few of them have *ŷdis*: *chlamys, chlamŷdis*, cloak.

IV. Words ending in *S* preceded by a Consonant.*Genitive in is or tis.*

## BS, MS, PS.

75. Nouns in **bs, ms, and ps** form the genitive by changing **s** into **is**: *urbs, urbis*, city; *hiems, hiēm̃is*, winter; *daps, dāpis*, food.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **īpis**:—nouns in *ceps* from *capiō*: *princeps, princīpis*, prince. Also *ādeps*, fat; *forceps*, forceps.
2. **ūpis**:—*auceps, aucūpis*, fowler.
3. **ŷphis**:—*gryps, grŷphis*, griffin.

## LS, NS, RS.

76. Nouns in **ls, ns, and rs** form the genitive by changing **s** into **tis**: *puls, pultis*, broth; *mens, mentis*, mind; *ars, artis*, art.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

**dis**:—*frons, frondis*, leaf; *glans*, acorn; *juglans*, walnut.

V. Words ending in *X*.—*Genitive in cis or gis.*

## AX.

77. Nouns in **ax** form the genitive in **ācis**: *pax, pācis*, peace.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ācis**:—*fax, fācis*, torch; and a few Greek nouns.
2. **actis**:—few Greek names of men: *Astyānax*.

## EX.

78. Nouns in **ex** form the genitive in **īcis**: *jūdex, judicis*, judge.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ecis**:—(1) *ēcis*: *ālex*, pickle; *vervex*, wether.—(2) *ēcis*: *nex*, murder; *fenīsex*, mower.—(3) *aecis*: *faex*, *faccis*, lees.
2. **egis**:—(1) *ēgis*: *lex*, law; *rex*, king, and their compounds.—(2) *ėgis*: *grex*, flock; *aquīlex*, water-inspector.
3. **ectilis**:—*supellex*, *supellectilis*, furniture.
4. **igis**:—*rīmex*, *remīgis*, rower.
5. **is**:—*sēnex*, *sēnis*, old man.

## IX.

79. Nouns in **ix** form the genitive in **īcis**: *rādix*, *radicis*, root.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **īcis**:—*appendix*, appendix; *cālīx*, cup; *fornīx*, arch; *pīx*, pitch; *sālīx*, willow, and a few others.
2. **igis**:—*strīx*, screech owl; and a few Gallic names: *Dumnōrix*, *Orgetōrix*.
3. **īvis**:—*nīx*, *nīvis*, snow.

## OX.

80. Nouns in **ox** are: *vox*, *vōcis*, voice; *nox*, *noctis*, night.

There are also a few national names which form the genitive in **ōcis** or **ōgis**: *Cappādor*, *Cappadōcis*; *Allībrox*, *Allobrōgis*.

## UX.

81. Nouns in **ux** form the genitive in **ūcis**: *dux*, *dūcis*, leader.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ucis**:—(1) *ūcis*: *lux*, *lūcis*, light; *Pollux*.—(2). **aucis**: *faux* (def.), *faucis*, throat.
2. **ugis**:—(1) *ūgis*: *frux*, *frūgis*, fruit.—(2) *ūgis*: *conjux*, *conjūgis*, spouse.

## YX.

82. Nouns in **yx** are from the Greek, and form the genitive variously: *Erīx*, *Erījēis*, *Eryx*; *bombyx*, *bombījēis*, silkworm; *Styx*, *Stījēis*, *Styx*; *coccyx*, *coccejēis*, cuckoo; *ōnyx*, *onījēis*, *onyx*.

## X PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

83. Nouns in **x** preceded by a consonant change **x** into **cis**: *arx*, *arcis*, citadel.

EXCEPTIONS.—A few Greek nouns form it in *gis*: *phālanx*, *phalangis*, *phalanx*.

### *Dative Singular.*

84. ENDING:—*ī*: *urbs*, *urbī*, city. But

The old dative in *e* also occurs: *acre*, for *acri*.

### *Accusative Singular.*

85. ENDING:—like Nom., *ēm*, *īm*.

I. ENDING:—like nom. in neuters: *māre*, *mare*, sea.

II. ENDING:—*ēm*, in most masculines and feminines: *urbs*, *urbēm*.

III. ENDING:—*īm*, in the following:

1. In names of *rivers* and *places* in *is* not increasing in the genitive: *Tibēris*, *Tibērīm*; *Hispālis*, *Hispālim*.

2. In *amussis*, rule; *būris*, plough-tail; *rāvis*, hoarseness; *sītis*, thirst; *tussis*, cough; *vis*, force.

3. Generally in: *febris*, *pelvis*, *puppis*, *restis*, *secūris*, *turris*; sometimes in: *clāvis*, *messis*, *nāvis*, *pars*.

4. In Greek nouns in *is*, G. *is*, and in many in *is*, G. *idos* or *idis*, though the latter have also the regular *idem*: *poësis*, *poësim*; *Agis* (*Agidis*), *Agim* or *Agidem*. For Greek nouns see also 93.

### *Vocative Singular.*

86. ENDING:—like nominative; *rex*, *rex*. But

Some Greek nouns drop *s*: *Pallas*, *Palla*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*. See 94.

### *Ablative Singular.*

87. ENDING:—*ē*, *ī*.

I. ENDING:—*ē*, in most nouns; *urbis*, *urbe*, city.

II. ENDING:—*ī*, in the following classes of words:

1. In neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: *sedile*, *sedili*, seat; *veetigal*, *veetigāli*, tax; *calcar*, *calcāri*, spur. But

The following have *e*:—(1) Names of towns in *e*; *Praeneste*.—(2) Nouns in *al* and *ar* with *a* short in Gen.: *sal*, *sāle*, salt; *nectar*, *nectāre*, nectar.—(3) *Far*, *farre*, corn.—(4) Generally *rete*, net, and in poetry sometimes *māre*.

2. In adjectives in *er* and *is* used substantively: *September*, *Septembri*, September; <sup>1</sup> *familiāris*, *familiārī*, friend. But

Adjectives used as proper names, and *juvēnis*, youth, have *e*; *Juvenālis*, *Juvenāle*, Juvenal.

<sup>1</sup> Names of months are adjectives used substantively, with *mensis*, month, understood.

3. In nouns in **is** with **im** in the accusative (85): *Tibēris, Tibērīm, Tibēri*; *sītis, sītīm, sīti*.

III. ENDING :—**ē** or **i**; in nouns with **em** or **im** in the Acc.: *turris, turrem* or *turrim*, *turre* or *turri*. But

1. *Restis*, Acc. *restim*, rarely *em*, has *reste*; while *nāvis*, *navem*, rarely *im*, has generally *navi*.

2. *Greek nouns* in *is*, G. *īdis*, generally have *e*, even though the Acc. may have *im*: *Pāris*, Acc. *Parim* or *Paridem*, Abl. *Parīde*.

3. *Some other nouns* occasionally form the Abl. in *i*.—(1) several in *is*: *amnis*, *anguis*, *āvis*, *bilis*, *civis*, *classis*, *collis*, *ignis*, *orbis*, *postis*, *rātis*, *unguis*, and a few others.—(2) some names of towns, to denote the place in which: *Carthagīni*, at Carthage; *Tibūri*, at Tibur.—(3) *imber*, *rus*, *sors*, *supeller*, *vesper*, and a few others.

### *Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural.*

#### 88. ENDING :—**ēs, ā, iā**.

I. ENDING :—**ēs** in masculines and feminines: *urbs, urbes*.

II. ENDING :—**ā, iā** in neuters:

1. **a** in most neuters: *carmen, carmīna*.

2. **ia** in neuters which admit *i* in the ablative (87. II.): *māre, maria*.

III. RARE ENDINGS are

1. *The ancient endings*—**ēis** and **is** in the Acc. Plur. of masculines and feminines with *ium* in the Gen.: *cīvēs, civīs*, for *cives*.

2. *The Greek endings*—**ēs, as, is, e**. See 95 and 98.

3. *Vīs*, force, has Plur.: *vīres, virium, viribus, vīres, vīres, viribus*.

### *Genitive Plural.*

#### 89. ENDING :—**um, ium**.

I. ENDING :—**um** in most nouns: *leo, leōnum*.

II. ENDING :—**ium** in the following classes of words:

1. In neuters with **ia** in the plural, i. e., those in *e*, *al*, and *ar* (*al* and *ar* with *ā* in Gen.); *māre, maria, marium*; *anīmal, animālia, animalium, animal*.

2. In most nouns of more than one syllable in **ns** and **rs**:<sup>1</sup> *cliens, clientium, client*; *cohors, cohortium, cohort*.

3. In many nouns not increasing in the genitive:

1) Most nouns in **es** and **is** not increasing:<sup>2</sup> *nūbes, nubium*; *āvis, avium*.

2) *Cāro*, flesh; *imber*, storm; *linter*, boat; *uter*, leathern sack; *ven-ter*, belly; and generally *Insūber*, Insubrian.

<sup>1</sup> Some of these often have *um* in poetry and sometimes even in prose, as *pārens*, parent, generally has.

<sup>2</sup> But *cānis*, *juvēnis*, *strues*, *vātes*, have *um*; *āpis*, *mensis*, *sēdes*, *volucris*, *um* or *ium*; *compes*, *ium*.



4. In monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a *consonant*<sup>1</sup> and in a few in **s** and **x** preceded by a *vowel*:<sup>2</sup> *urbs*, *urbium*, city; *arx*, *arcium*, citadel; *nox*, *noctium*, night.

5. In many nouns in **as** and **is** (Plur. *ātes* and *ītes*). Thus

1) In names of nations: *Arpīnas*, *Arpinatium*; *Samnis*, *Samnitium*.

2) In *Optimātes* and *Penātes*, and occasionally in other nouns in **as**: *civitas*, *civitātum*, sometimes *civitatium*.

III. RARE ENDINGS.—*Bos* has *boum*: a few Greek words (especially titles of books) *on*: *Metamorphōses*, *Metamorphoscon*.

IV. WANTING.—The Gen. Plur. is often wanting in monosyllables.

### *Dative and Ablative Plural.*

90. ENDING:—**ībūs**: *urbs*, *urbibus*.

RARE ENDINGS are:

1. **is** or **ībus**—in neuters in **a**: *poēma*; D. and A., *poēmātis*, or *poēmatibus*, poem.

2. **ubus**—in *bos*, *būbus* (rare *bōbus* for *bovibus*), ox; *sus*, *sūbus* for *suībus*, swine.

3. **si**, **sin**—in Greek words. See 97.

## GREEK PECULIARITIES.

91. Most Greek nouns of the third declension are entirely regular, but a few retain certain peculiarities of the Greek, and some are entirely indeclinable.

### *Greek Genitive Singular.*

92. ENDING:—sometimes **os** or **i** (rare) for *is*: *Daphnis*, *Daphnīdos* for *Daphnidis*; *Xerxes*, *Xerxi* for *Xerxis*.

1. ENDING:—**os**. (1) Many nouns in **as** and **is** have *ados* and *idos* for *adis* and *idis*: *Pallas*, *Pallādos*.—(2) Those in **ys** may have *yos* or *ys*: *Tēthys*, *Tēthyos*.—(3) Those in **eus** have *cos*: *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*.—(4) *Pan* has *Pānos*.

2. ENDING:—**i**. Proper names in **es**, Gen. *is*, sometimes have *i* for *is*: *Achilles*, *Achilli*.

3. ENDING:—**us**. Greek feminines in **o**, *īcho*, *Dido*, *Sappho*, have regularly *us* in the Gen. and the Greek ending *o* in the other cases, rarely the Latin *ōni*, *ōnem*, *ōne*; *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*.

### *Greek Accusative Singular.*

93. ENDING:—often **a**: sometimes **im**, **in**; sometimes **en** for *em*: *Pericles*, *Periclea*; *poēsis*, *poēsīm*, or *poesin*, poem; *Xerxes*, *Xerxen*.

1. THE ENDING **a** is used—(1) by prose writers in proper names and in *aēr* and *aether*,—(2) by the poets both in proper and in common nouns.

<sup>1</sup> Except (*ops*) *ōpis* and the Greek nouns, *gryps*, *lynx*, *ephynx*.

<sup>2</sup> Namely, *faua*, *glis*, *lis*, *mas*, *nix*, *nox*, *os* (ossis), *ris*, generally *fraus* and *mus*.

2. THE ENDING **im** or **in** is used in Greek nouns in *is*, Gen. *is*, and sometimes in a few in *is*, Gen. *idis*: *poësis*, *poësim*, *poësin*; *Päris* (*Paridis*), *Paridem*, *Parim*, *Parin*.

3. THE ENDING **en** is often used in proper names in *es*, Gen. *is*, and sometimes in a few in *es*, Gen. *ëtis*: *Aeschënes*, *Aeschënen*; *Thäles*, *Thäitem* or *Thalen*.

4. THE ENDING **ym** or **yn**.—Greek nouns in *ys* have *ym* or *yn*: *Othrys*, *Othrym* or *Othryn*.

### *Greek Vocative Singular.*

94. ENDING sometimes drops **s**: *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*. See 86.

1. **S** is dropped,—(1) regularly in nouns in *eus* and *ys*, together with proper names in *as*, Gen. *antis*: *Perseus*, *Perseu*; *Cötys*, *Coty*; *Atlas*, *Atla*,—(2) generally in nouns in *is* and sometimes in proper nouns in *es*: *Daphnis*, *Daphni*; *Socrätes*, *Socrätës*, or *Socräte*.

2. Proper names in **es** shorten the ending to *ës*, when *s* is retained: *Socrätes*, *Socrätës*.

### *Greek Nominative and Vocative Plural.*

95. ENDING:—sometimes *ës* for *ës*, especially in poetry: *Arcädës* for *Arcädës*.

1. THE ENDING **e** is used in a few neuters in *os*: *mëlos*, *mele*, song; these neuters are used only in the Nom. and Acc. *Tempe*, the vale *Tempe*, is plural.

2. THE ENDING **is** for *es* occurs in a few names of cities: *Sardis* for *Sardes*.

### *Greek Genitive Plural.*

96. ENDING:—**on**: only in a few words, almost exclusively titles of books: *Metamorphöses* (title of a poem), *Metamorphoscon*.

### *Greek Dative and Ablative Plural.*

97. ENDING:—**si**, before vowels **sin**, poetic: *Troädës*, *Troäsin*.

### *Greek Accusative Plural.*

98. ENDING:—**as**: *Macedönes*, *Macedönas*.

1. THE ENDING **e** is used in a few neuters in *os*: *mëlos*, *mele*; *Tempe*. See 95. 1.

2. THE ENDING **is** occurs in a few names of cities: *Sardis* for *Sardes*.

## GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. The Gender of nouns of this declension, when not determined by the general rules (35), may be ascertained from their endings, as follows:<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See also 43.

## I. MASCULINE ENDINGS.

**o, or, os, er, es** increasing in the genitive.

O.

100. Nouns in **o** are masculine : *sermo*, discourse.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Feminine*, viz.:

1. Nouns in **o**, Gen. *inis* (i. e., most nouns in *do* and *go*, 61. 2), except *cardo*, *ordo*, *turbo*, masc., *cupido* and *margo*, masc. or fem.
2. *Cūro*, flesh, and the Greek *Argo*, *ēcho*, an echo.
3. Abstract and collective nouns in *io*: *ratio*, reason; *concio*, an assembly; except numeral nouns in *io*, which (except *unio*) are masc.; *ternio*, *quaternio*.

OR.

101. Nouns in **or** are masculine : *dolor*, pain.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine*:—*arbor*, tree.
2. *Neuter*:—*ādor*, spelt; *aequor*, sea; *cor*, heart; *marmor*, marble.

OS.

102. Nouns in **os** are masculine : *mos*, custom.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine*:—*arbo*s, tree; *co*s, whetstone; *do*s, dowry; *eo*s, dawn.
2. *Neuter*:—*o*s, mouth; *o*s, bone; and a few Greek words: *chaos*, *ēpos*, *ēthos*, *mēlos*.

ER.

103. Nouns in **er** are masculine : *agger*, mound.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine*:—*linter*, boat (sometimes masc.).
2. *Neuter*:—(1) *cadāver*, corpse; *iter*, way; *tūber*, tumor; *ūber*, udder; *ver*, spring; *verber*, scourge,—(2) botanical names in **er**, Gen. *ēris*: *ācer*, maple tree; *papāver*, poppy; *pīper*, pepper.

## ES INCREASING IN GENITIVE.

104. Nouns in **es** increasing in the genitive are masculine : *pes*, genitive *pedis*, foot.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine*:—*compes*, fether; *merces*, reward; *merges*, sheaf; *quies*, rest (with its compounds); *sēges*, crop; *tēges*, mat; sometimes also *āles*, bird, and *quadrūpes*, quadruped.
2. *Neuter*:—*aes*, copper.

## II. FEMININE ENDINGS.

**as, is, ys, x, es** not increasing in genitive, **s** preceded by a consonant.

## AS.

105. Nouns in **as** are feminine: *aetas*, age.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—**as**, an as (a coin), *vas*, surety, and Greek nouns in *as*, G. *antis*, as *adāmas*, adamant.
2. *Neuter*:—*vas*, vessel, and Greek nouns in *as*, G. *ātis*, as *erysipēlas*.

## IS.

106. Nouns in **is** are feminine: *nāvis*, ship.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:

1. Nouns in **ālis, ollis, cis, mis, nis, guis, quis**: *natālis*, birthday; *collis*, hill; *fascis*, bundle; *vōmis*, ploughshare; *ignis*, fire; *sanguis*, blood; *torquis*, collar. But a few with these endings are occasionally feminine: *aquālis*, *canālis*, *cānis*, *clūnis*, *amnis*, *cīnis*, *fīnis*, *anguis*, *torquis*.
2. *Axis*, axle; *fustis*, club; *pulvis*, dust; *būris*, plough-tail; *glis*, dormouse; *scrobis* (f.), ditch; *callis* (f.), path;<sup>1</sup> *lāpis*, stone; *sentis*, brier; *cassis*, net; *mensis*, month; *tigris* (f.), tiger; *caulis*, stem; *orbis*, circle; *torris*, brand; *corbis* (f.), basket; *postis*, post; *vectis*, lever.<sup>2</sup> *ensis*, sword;
3. Compounds of **as** (a coin): *sēmis*, *decussis*. Also *Lucretilis*, *mānes* (pl.).

## YS.

107. Nouns in **ys** are feminine: *chlāmys*, cloak.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:—names of mountains, *Othrys*.

## X.

108. Nouns in **x** are feminine: *pax*, peace.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:

1. Greek masculines: *cōrax*, raven; *thōrax*, cuirass.
  2. Nouns in **ex** and **unx**; except the six feminines: *faex*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, (*prer*), *supellex*, and such as are fem. by signification.
35. II.

<sup>1</sup> The examples marked (f.) are sometimes feminine. *Corbis* and *tigris* are often feminine.

<sup>2</sup> For nouns in *is* masculine by signification, see 35. I.

3. Four in **ix**: *cālix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *phoenix*, phoenix; *varix* (f.), swollen vein.
4. One in **ux**: *trādux*, vine-layer.
5. Names of mountains in **yx**, and a few other words in **yx**.
6. Sometimes: *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx.

## ES NOT INCREASING IN GENITIVE.

109. Nouns in **es** not increasing in genitive are feminine: *nūbes*, cloud.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—*acināces*: sometimes *palumbes* and *vepres*.
2. *Neuter*:—a few rare Greek nouns: *cacoëthes*, *hippomānes*

## S PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

110. Nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant are feminine: *urbs*, city.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:

1. *Dens*, tooth, *fons*, fountain, *mons*, mountain, *pons*, bridge; generally *ādeps*, fat, and *rūdens*, cable.
2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally adjectives or participles with a masc. noun understood,—(1) *oriens*, *occīdens* (sol), east, west,—(2) *confluens*, *torrens* (amnis), confluence, torrent,—(3) *bīdens*, *trīdens* (raster), two-pronged hoe, trident,—(4) *sextans*, *quadrans* (as), parts of an as.
3. *Chālybs*, steel, *hydrops*, dropsy, and a few Greek names of animals: *ēpops*, *gryps*, *scps* (f.).
4. Sometimes: *forceps*, forceps; *serpens*, serpent; *stirps*, stock. *Animans*, animal, originally participle, is masc., fem., or neuter.

## III. NEUTER ENDINGS.

**a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.**

A, E, I, Y, C, T, AR.

111. Nouns in **a, e, i, y, c, t, ar** are neuter: *poēma*, poem; *māre*, sea; *lac*, milk; *cāput*, head.

L.

112. Nouns in **l** are neuter: *anīmal*, animal.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:—*mūgil*, mullet; *sal* (also neuter in singular), salt; *sol*, sun.

N.

113. Nouns in **n** are neuter: *carmen*, song.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—*pecten*, comb; *ren*, kidney; *lien*, spleen; and Greek masculines in **an**, **en**, **in**, **on**: *pacan*, paeon; *cănon*, rule.
2. *Feminine*:—*aëdon*, nightingale; *alcyon* (halcyon), kingfisher; *icon*, image; *sinclon*, muslin.

## UR.

114. Nouns in **ur** are neuter: *fulgur*, lightning.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:—*furfur*, bran; *turtur*, turtledove; *vultur*, vulture.

## US.

115. Nouns in **us** are neuter: *corpus*, body.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—*lëpus*, hare; *mus*, mouse; Greek nouns in **pus** and a few others: *tripus*, tripod.
2. *Feminine*:—*tellus*, earth; *fraus*, fraud; *laus*, praise; and nouns in **us**, Gen. **utis** or **udis**: *virtus*, virtue; *pălus*, marsh.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in **us**,—*masculine*; **u**,—*neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, *fruit*.      Cornu, *horn*.      Case-Endings.

## SINGULAR.

N. fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	ūs	ū
G. fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>ūs</b>	ūs	ūs
D. fruct <b>uī</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	uī	ū
A. fruct <b>um</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	um	ū
V. fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	ūs	ū
A. fruct <b>ū</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	ū	ū

## PLURAL.

N. fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>uă</b>	ūs	uă
G. fruct <b>uūm</b>	corn <b>uūm</b>	uūm	uūm
D. fruct <b>ibūs</b>	corn <b>ibūs</b>	ibūs (ūbūs)	ibūs (ūbūs)
A. fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>uă</b>	ūs	uă
V. fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>uă</b>	ūs	uă
A. fruct <b>ibūs</b> .	corn <b>ibūs</b> .	ibūs (ūbūs).	ibūs (ūbūs).

1. Case-Endings.—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings presented in the above table.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus*, song; *currus*, chariot; *cursus*, course; *versus*, verse; *genu*, knee.

3. **Modification of Third Declension.**—The fourth declension is but a modification of the third, produced by contraction: thus *fructus*, in the uncontracted form, was declined like *grus*, *gruis*, of Decl. III.: N. *fructus*, G. *fructuis* = *fructus*; D. *fructui*, A. *fructuem* = *fructum*, V. *fructus*; A. *fructue* = *fructu*: Plur. N. *fructues* = *fructus*, etc.

4. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur:

1) **Ůbs** for *ŭbs*, used regularly in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. of *Acus*, needle; *arcus*, bow; *artus*, joint; *lŭcus*, lake; *partus*, birth; *pŕeu*, cattle; *quercus*, oak; *spŕeus*, den; *tribus*, tribe; *vŕeu*, spit: occasionally in a few other words, as *portus*, *sŭnus*, and *tonŕrus*.

2) **Ůis**, the uncontracted form for *us*, in the Gen.: *fructuis* for *fructus*.

3) **Ů** for *ui*, in the Dat. by contraction: *equitŕtu* for *equitatui*, cavalry.

117. **Second and Fourth Declensions.**—Some nouns are partly of this declension and partly of the second.

1. *Dŏmus*, house, declined as follows:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. domŭs	domŭs
G. domŭs, domŭi	domuŭm, domŏrŭm
D. domŭi (domŏ)	domibŭs
A. domŭm	domŏs, domŭs
V. domŭs	domŭs
A. domŏ (domŭ)	domibŭs.

In this word there is generally a difference of meaning between the forms of the second Decl. and those of the fourth; thus, G. *domus*, of a house; *domŭi*, at home: A. Pl. *domus*, houses; *domŏs*, often, homeward; to homes.

2. Certain names of trees in *us*, as *cupressus*, *fŭcus*, *laurus*, *pŭnus*, though generally of Decl. II., sometimes take those cases of the fourth which end in *us* and *u*: N. *laurus*, G. *laurus*, D. *lauro*, A. *laurum*, V. *laurus*, A. *lauru*, &c. So also *cŏlus*, distaff.

3. A few nouns, especially *senŕtus* and *tumultus*, though regularly of Decl. IV., sometimes take the genitive ending *i* of the second: *senŕti*, *tumulti*.

## 118. GENDER IN FOURTH DECLENSION.

Masculine ending: **us**.

Neuter ending: **u**.

### EXCEPTIONS.

1. **Feminine**:—(1) *ŭcus*, needle; *cŏlus*, distaff; *dŏmus*, house; *mŕnus*, hand; *portŭcus*, portico; *tribus*, tribe,—(2) *ŭdus*, ides; *Quinquŕtrus*, feast of Minerva; generally *pŕnus*, store, when of this decl.; rarely *spŕeus*, den,—(3) a few nouns

Fem. by signification (35. II.): *nūrus*, daughter-in-law ;  
*ficus*, fig tree.<sup>1</sup>

2. *Neuter* :—*sēcus* (*sexus*), sex ; rarely, *spēcus*, den.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **es**,—*femine*, and are declined as follows :

Dies, <i>day</i> .	Res, <i>thing</i> .	Case-Endings.
SINGULAR.		
<i>N.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>G.</i> diēī	rēī	eī
<i>D.</i> diēī	rēī	eī
<i>A.</i> diēm	rēm	ēm
<i>V.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>A.</i> diē	rē	e
PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>G.</i> diērūm	rērūm	ērūm
<i>D.</i> diēbūs	rēbūs	ēbūs
<i>A.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>V.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>A.</i> diēbūs.	rēbūs.	ēbūs.

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings presented in the above table.

*E* in *ei* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Acies*, battle array ; *effigies*, effigy ; *facies*, face ; *series*, series ; *species*, form ; *spes*, hope.

3. **Modification of Third Declension.**—The fifth declension, like the fourth, seems to be a modification of the third. It is produced by contraction (*ees* = *ēs* : *ēbus* = *ēbus*), except in the genitive, where *ei* comes from *eis*, by dropping *s*, and *ērūm* from *eum*, by inserting *r*.

4. **Irregular Endings** :—*ē* or *ī* for *ei* in the Gen. and Dat. : *acie* for *aciei* ; *pernicii* for *perniciēi*.

5. **Defective.**—Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur., and many admit no plural whatever.

### 120. GENDER IN FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine.

**EXCEPTIONS.**—*Masculine* :—*dies*, day, and *meridies*, midday, though *dies* is sometimes feminine in the singular.

<sup>1</sup> Also *Fem.* when it means *fig*.



## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.<sup>1</sup>

## SINGULAR.

Dec. I. Fem.	Dec. II. Masc. Neut.	Dec. III. M. & F. Neut.	Dec. IV. Masc. Neut.	D. V. Fem.
N. <i>ā</i>	ūs — <sup>2</sup> ūm	s (es, is) <sup>3</sup> — ě —	ūs ū	ēs
G. <i>ae</i>	ī ī	īs īs	ūs ūs	ēī
D. <i>ae</i>	ō ō	ī ī	uī ū	ēī
A. <i>ām</i>	ŭm ŭm	ēm (īm) like nom.	ŭm ū	ēm
V. <i>ā</i>	ě — ŭm	like nom. like nom.	ūs ū	ēs
A. <i>ā</i>	ō ō	ě (ī) ě (ī)	ū ū	ē

## PLURAL.

N. <i>ae</i>	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
G. <i>ārūm</i>	ōrūm	ōrūm	ŭm (iŭm)	ŭm (iŭm)	uŭm	uŭm	ērūm
D. <i>īs</i>	īs	īs	ībūs	ībūs	ībūs (ŭbūs)	ībūs (ŭbūs)	ēbūs
A. <i>ās</i>	ōs	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
V. <i>ae</i>	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
A. <i>īs.</i>	īs	īs.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs (ŭbūs)	ībūs (ŭbūs).	ēbūs.

122. By a close analysis it will be found,

1. That the five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of declension.

2. That these varieties have been produced by the union of different final letters in the various stems, with one general system of endings.

123. According to this analysis,

1. The stems in the five declensions end in the following letters:

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
a,	o,	consonant,	u,	e.
		(rarely i).		

2. The general case-endings are as follows:<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

<sup>2</sup> The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting: *er* and *ir* in Decl. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45. 1).

<sup>3</sup> The inclosed endings are less common than the others.

<sup>4</sup> In this table observe,

1) That different endings characteristic of different genders may be found in one and the same declension.

2) That a slight difference of declension is however apparent in the double forms in *īs, ī*; *ēs, ē*; *ām, rūm*; *ībūs, īs*; but that in each of these double forms, the first seems to have been the original ending from which the second was derived.

## SINGULAR.

*Masc. and Fem.**N.* s —*G.* is, ī*D.* ī*A.* ěm, m*V.* like nom.*A.* ě (ī)*Neut.*

ě, m —

is, ī

ī

like nom.

“ “

ě (ī)

## PLURAL.

*N.* ěs, ī*G.* ūm, rūm*D.* ibūs, is*A.* ěs*V.* like nom.*A.* ibūs, is.

ă (iă)

ūm, rūm

ibūs, is

like nom.

“ “

ibūs, is.

3. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems so as to produce the five declensions may be seen in the following

## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF DECLENSIONS.

	I. Mensa.	II. Servo.	III. Reg.	IV. Fructu.	V. Re.
SINGULAR.					
<i>N.</i> {	<i>mensa-</i>	<i>servo-s</i>	<i>reg-s</i>	<i>fructu-s</i>	<i>re-s</i>
	mensā	servūs	rex	fructūs	rēs
<i>G.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i>	<i>servo-i</i>	<i>reg-is</i>	<i>fructu-is</i>	<i>re-i(s)</i>
	mensae	servī	rēgīs	fructūs	rēi
<i>D.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i>	<i>servo-i</i>	<i>reg-i</i>	<i>fructu-i</i>	<i>re-i</i>
	mensae	servō	regī	fructuī	rēi
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-m</i>	<i>servo-m</i>	<i>reg-em</i>	<i>fructu-(e)m</i>	<i>re-(e)m</i>
	mensām	servūm	regēm	fructūm	rēm
<i>V.</i> {	<i>mensa-</i>	<i>servo-e</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>reg-s</i>	<i>fructu-s</i>	<i>re-s</i>
	mensā	servē	rex	fructūs	rēs
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-e</i>	<i>servo-e</i>	<i>reg-e</i>	<i>fructu-e</i>	<i>re-e</i>
	mensā	servō	regē	fructū	rē
PLURAL.					
<i>N.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i>	<i>servo-i</i>	<i>reg-es</i>	<i>fructu-es</i>	<i>re-es</i>
	mensae	servī	regēs	fructūs	rēs
<i>G.</i> {	<i>mensa-um</i>	<i>servo-um</i>	<i>reg-um</i>	<i>fructu-um</i>	<i>re-um</i>
	mensārūm	servōrūm	regūm	fructuūm	rērūm
<i>D.</i> {	<i>mensa-is</i>	<i>servo-is</i>	<i>reg-ibus</i>	<i>fructu-ibus</i>	<i>re-ibus</i>
	mensīs	servīs	regībūs	fructībūs	rēbūs
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-es</i>	<i>servo-es</i>	<i>reg-es</i>	<i>fructu-es</i>	<i>re-es</i>
	mensās	servōs	regēs	fructūs	rēs
<i>V.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i>	<i>servo-i</i>	<i>reg-es</i>	<i>fructu-es</i>	<i>re-es</i>
	mensae	servī	regēs	fructūs	rēs
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-is</i>	<i>servo-is</i>	<i>reg-ibus</i>	<i>fructu-ibus</i>	<i>re-ibus</i>
	mensīs.	servīs.	regībūs.	fructībūs.	rēbūs.

<sup>1</sup> Nouns in *us* of Dec. II. have *e* instead of *s*.

## 124. GENERAL TABLE OF GENDER.

I. Gender independent of ending.<sup>1</sup> Common to all declensions.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Names of MALES, of RIVERS, WINDS, and MONTHS.	Names of FEMALES, of COUNTRIES, TOWNS, ISLANDS, and TREES.	INDECLINABLE NOUNS, and WORDS and CLAUSES used as <i>Indeclinable Nouns</i> .

II. Gender determined by Nominative Ending.<sup>2</sup>

## DECLENSION I.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
as, es.	a, e.	

## DECLENSION II.

er, ir, us, os.		um, on.
-----------------	--	---------

## DECLENSION III.

o, or, os, er, es increasing in the genitive.	as, is, ys, æ, es not increasing in the genitive, s preceded by a consonant.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
---	--	-------------------------------------

## DECLENSION IV.

us.		u.
-----	--	----

## DECLENSION V.

	es.	
--	-----	--

## DECLENSION OF COMPOUND AND IRREGULAR NOUNS.

## COMPOUND NOUNS.

125. Compounds present in general no peculiarities of declension. But

1. If two nominatives unite, they are both declined: *respublica* = *res publica*, republic, the public thing; *jusjurandum* = *jus jurandum*, oath.

2. If a nominative unites with an oblique case, only the nominative is declined: *paterfamilias* = *pāter familias* (42. 3), or *pāter familiae*, the father of a family.

<sup>1</sup> For exceptions, see 36.

<sup>2</sup> For exceptions, see under the several declensions.

## 126. PARADIGMS.

## SINGULAR.

N. <i>respublica</i>	<i>jusjurandū</i>	<i>pāterfamiliās</i>
G. <i>rēpublicae</i>	<i>jūrisjurandī</i>	<i>patrisfamilias</i>
D. <i>rēpublicae</i>	<i>jurijurandō</i>	<i>patrifamilias</i>
A. <i>republicām</i>	<i>jusjurandū</i>	<i>patremfamilias</i>
V. <i>respublicā</i>	<i>jusjurandū</i>	<i>paterfamilias</i>
A. <i>rēpublicā</i>	<i>jurejurandō</i>	<i>patrēfamilias</i>

## PLURAL.

N. <i>respublicae</i>	<i>jurajurandā</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
G. <i>rērumpublicārū</i>		<i>patrumfamilias</i>
D. <i>rēbuspublicīs</i>		<i>patribusfamilias</i>
A. <i>respublicās</i>	<i>jurajurandā</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
V. <i>respublicae</i>	<i>jurajurandā.</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
A. <i>rēbuspublicīs.</i>		<i>patribusfamilias.</i>

1. The parts which compose these and similar words are often and perhaps more correctly written separately : *res publica* ; *pāter familias* or *familias*.

2. The parts of *respublica* are *res* of the 5th Decl. and *publica* of the 1st.

3. The parts of *jusjurandum* are *jus* of the 3d Decl. and *jurandum* of the 2d. *Jusjurandum* wants the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur.

4. The parts of *paterfamilias* are *pāter* of the 3d Decl. and *familias* (42. 3), the old Gen. of *familia*, of the 1st. Sometimes, though rarely, the Gen. *familiārū* is used in the plural : *patresfamiliārū* for *patres familias*.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

127. Irregular nouns may be divided into four classes :

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS have but one form for all cases.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS want certain parts.

III. HETEROCLITES (*heteroclita*<sup>1</sup>) are partly of one declension and partly of another.

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS (*heterogenea*<sup>2</sup>) are partly of one gender and partly of another.

## I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

128. The Latin has but few indeclinable nouns.

1. The principal examples are :

1) *Fas*, right ; *nēfas*, wrong ; *īstar*, equality ; *māne*, morning ; *nihil*, nothing ; *pondo*, pound ; *secus*, sex.<sup>1</sup>

2) The letters of the alphabet, *a, b, c, alpha, beta*, etc.

3) Foreign words : *Jacob, Illeberri* ; though these are often declined :

<sup>1</sup> From *ἑτερος*, another, and *κλίσις*, inflection, i. e., of different declensions.

<sup>2</sup> From *ἑτερος*, another, and *γένος*, gender, i. e., of different genders.

*Jacobus, Jacōbi*; *Illeberis, Illeberri*. *Jēsus* has *Jesum* in the accusative and *Jesu* in the other cases.

2. Some indeclinable nouns are also defective: *māne* wants the Gen. and Dat.; *fas* and *nēfas*, the Gen., Dat., and Abl.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

129. Nouns may be defective in *Number*, in *Case*, or in both *Number* and *Case*.

### I. Nouns defective in Number.

130. **Plural wanting.**—Many nouns from the nature of their signification want the plural: *Rōma*, Rome; *justitia*, justice; *aurum*, gold.

1. The principal nouns of this class are:

- 1) Proper names (except those used only in the plural): *Cicēro*, *Rōma*.
- 2) Abstract Nouns: *fīdes*, faith; *justitia*, justice.
- 3) Names of materials: *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.
- 4) A few others: *meridies*, midday; *specimen*, example; *supellex*, furniture; *ver*, spring; *vespēra*, evening, etc.

2. Proper names admit the plural to designate *families*, *classes*; names of materials, to designate *pieces* of the material or *articles* made of it; and abstract nouns, to designate *instances*, or *kinds*, of the quality; *Scipiōnes*, the Scipios; *aera*, vessels of copper; *avaritiæ*, instances of avarice; *odia*, hatreds.

In the poets, the *plur.* of abstracts occurs in the sense of the sing.

131. **Singular wanting.**—Many nouns want the singular.

1. The most important of these are:

- 1) Certain personal appellatives applicable to classes: *majōres*, forefathers; *postēri*, descendants; *gemīni*, twins; *libēri*, children, etc.
- 2) Many names of cities: *Athēnae*, Athens; *Thēbae*, Thebes; *Delphi*, Delphi; *Argi*, Argos, though the Sing. *Argos* occurs in Nom. and Acc.
- 3) Many names of festivals: *Bacchanalia*, *Olympia*, *Saturnalia*.
- 4) Many names not included in these classes. Such are:

*Arma*, arms; *divitiæ*, riches; *exsequiæ*, funeral rites; *exuviae*, spoils; *īdus*, ides; *indutiæ*, truce; *insidiæ*, ambushade; *mānes*, shades of the dead; *mīnae*, threats; *moenia*, walls; *munia*, duties; *nuptiæ*, nuptials; *reliquiæ*, remains.

2. An individual member of a class designated by these plurals may be denoted by *unus ex* with the plural: *unus ex libēris*, one of the children, or a child.

3. The plural in names of cities may have reference to the several parts of the city, especially as ancient cities were often made up of separate villages. So in the names of festivals, the plural may refer to the various games and exercises which together constituted the festival.

132. **Plural with Change of Meaning.**—Some nouns have one signification in the singular and another in the plural: Thus

#### SINGULAR.

*Aedes*, temple;  
*Aqua*, water;

#### PLURAL.

*aedes*, (1) temples, (2) a house.<sup>1</sup>  
*aquae*, (1) waters, (2) mineral springs.

<sup>1</sup> *Aedes* and some other words in this list, it will be observed, have in the plural two significations, one corresponding to that of the singular, and the other distinct from it.

Auxilium, *help* ;  
 Bōnum, *a good thing, blessing* ;  
 Carcer, *prison, barrier* ;  
 Castrum, *castle, hut* ;  
 Comitium, *name of a part of the Roman forum* ;  
 Cōpia, *plenty, force* ;  
 Facultas, *ability* ;  
 Fīnis, *end* ;  
 Fortūna, *fortune* ;  
 Gratia, *gratitude, favor* ;  
 Hortus, *garden* ;  
 Impedimentum, *hindrance* ;

Littēra, *letter of alphabet* ;

Lūdus, *play, sport* ;  
 Mos, *custom* ;  
 Natālis (dies), *birth-day* ;  
 Opēra, *work, service* ;  
 Pars, *part* ;  
 Rostrum, *beak of ship* ;

Sal, *salt* ;

auxilia, *auxiliaries*.  
 bona, *riches, goods*.  
 carcēres, *barriers of a race-course*.  
 castra, *camp*.  
 comitia, *the assembly held in the comitium*.  
 copiae, (1) *stores*, (2) *troops*.  
 facultates, *wealth, means*.  
 fines, *borders, territory*.  
 fortunae, *possessions, wealth*.  
 gratiae, *thanks*.  
 horti, (1) *gardens*, (2) *pleasure grounds*.  
 impedimenta, (1) *hindrances*, (2) *baggage*.  
 litterae, (1) *letters of alphabet*, (2) *epistle, writing, letters, literature*.  
 ludi, (1) *plays*, (2) *public spectacle*.  
 mōres, *manners, character*.  
 natales, *pedigree, parentage*.  
 operae, *workmen*.  
 partes, (1) *parts*, (2) *a party*.  
 rostra, (1) *beaks*, (2) *the rostra or tribune in Rome (adorned with beaks)*.  
 sāles, *witty sayings*.

## II. Nouns defective in Case.

### 133. Some nouns are defective in case. Thus

1. Some want the *nominative, dative, and vocative singular* : (Ops), ōpis, *help* ; (vix or vicis), vicis, *change*.

2. Some want the *nominative and vocative singular* : (Daps), dāpis, *food* ; (ditio), ditiōnis, *sway* ; (frux), frūgis, *fruit* ; (internecio), interneciōnis, *destruction* ; (pollis), pollinis, *flour*.

3. Some want the *genitive, dative, and ablative plural* : thus most nouns of the fifth declension. See 119. 5.

So also many neuters : *far, fel, mel, pus, rus, tus* ; especially Greek neuters in *os*, which want these cases in the singular also : *ēpos, mēlos*.

4. Some want the *genitive plural* : thus many nouns otherwise entire, especially monosyllables : *nex, pax, pix* ; *cor, eos, ros* ; *sal, sol, lux*.

## III. Nouns defective in Number and Case.

134. Some nouns want one entire number and certain cases of the other : *fors*, chance, has only *fors* and *forte* ; *lues*, pestilence, has *lues*, *luem*, *lue*. Many verbal nouns in *u* have only the ablative singular : *jussu*, by order ; *mandātu*, by command ; *rogātu*, by request.

## III. HETEROCLITES.—TWO CLASSES.

I. Heteroclites with one form in the nominative singular.

II. Heteroclites with different forms in the nominative singular.

*Class First.*

**135.** Of DECLENSIONS II. and IV. are a few nouns in *us*. See 117.

**136.** Of DECLENSIONS II. and III. are

1. *Jugĕrum*, an acre; regularly of the second Decl., except in the Gen. Plur., which is *jugĕrum*, according to the third. Other forms of the third are rare.

2. *Vas*, a vessel; of the third Decl. in the Sing., and of the second in the Plur.: *vas*, *vāsis*; plural, *vāsa*, *vasōrum*.

3. Plural names of festivals in *alia*: *Bacchanalia*, *Saturnalia*; which are regularly of the third Decl., but sometimes form the Gen. Plur. in *ōrum* of the second. *Ancile*, a shield, and a few other words also occur.

**137.** Of DECLENSIONS III. and V. are

1. *Requies*, rest; which is regularly of the third Decl., but also takes the forms *requiem* and *reque* of the fifth.

2. *Fāmes*, hunger; regularly of the third Decl., except in the ablative, *famē*, of the fifth (not *famē*, of the third).

*Class Second.*<sup>1</sup>

**138.** FORMS IN *ia* AND *ies*.—Many words of four syllables have one form in *ia* of Decl. I., and one in *ies* of Decl. V.: *barbaria*, *barbaries*, barbarism; *duritia*, *durities*, hardness; *luxuria*, *luxuries*, luxury; *materia*, *materies*, material; *mollitia*, *mollities*, softness.

**139.** FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Many nouns derived from verbs have one form in *us* of Decl. IV., and one in *um* of Decl. II.: *conātus*, *conātum*, an attempt; *eventus*, *eventum*, event; *praetextus*, *praetextum*, pretext.

**140.** Many other Examples might be added. Many words which have but one approved form in prose, admit another in poetry: *juventus* (ūtis), youth; poetic, *juventa* (ae): *senectus* (ūtis), old age; poetic, *senecta* (ae): *paupertas* (ātis), poverty; poetic, *pauperies* (ei).

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.—TWO CLASSES.

I. With one form in the nominative singular.

II. With different forms in the nominative singular.

*Class First.*

**141.** MASCULINE AND NEUTER.—Some *masculines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

*Jocus*, a jest; plur., *joci* and *joca*.

*Locus*, place; “ *loci*, topics, passages in books, places; *loca*, places. *Sibilus*, hissing; “ *sibili*; poetic, *sibila*.

**142.** FEMININE AND NEUTER.—Some *feminines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes called *Redundant nouns*, or *abundantia*.

*Carbāsus*, linen; plural, *carbasi* and *carbasa*, sails, &c.  
*margarīta*, pearl; " *margaritae* and *margarita*, *ōrum*.  
*ostrea*, oyster; " *ostreae* and *ostrea*, *ōrum*.

143. NEUTER AND MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—Some *neuters* take in the plural a different gender; thus

1. Some *neuters* become *masculine* in the plural:  
*Coelum*, heaven; plural, *coeli*.
2. Some *neuters* generally become *masculine* in the plural, but sometimes remain *neuter*:  
*Frēnum*, bridle; plur., *freni*, sometimes *frena*.  
*rastrum*, rake; " *rastri*, " *rastra*.
3. Some *neuters* become *feminine* in the plural:  
*Epŭlum*, public feast; plur., *epulae*, meal, banquet.

*Class Second.*

144. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Some nouns of the second declension have one form in *us* masculine and one in *um* neuter: *clipeus*, *clipeum*, shield; *commentarius*, *commentarium*, commentary; *cubitus*, *cubitum*, cubit; *jugŭlus*, *jugŭlum*, throat.

145. HETEROGENEOUS HETEROCLITES.—Some heteroclites are also heterogeneous: *conātus* (*us*), *conātum* (*i*), effort; *menda* (*ae*), *mendum* (*i*), fault.

## CHAPTER II.

### ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bŏnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

#### I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:



Masc., Dec. II.

Fem., Dec. I.

Neut., Dec. II.

us<sup>1</sup>—,

a,

um.

They are declined as follows:

*Bonus, good.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bon <b>ŭs</b>	bon <b>ă</b>	bon <b>ŭm</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	bon <b>ī</b>	bon <b>ae</b>	bon <b>ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	bon <b>ō</b>	bon <b>ae</b>	bon <b>ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	bon <b>ŭm</b>	bon <b>ăm</b>	bon <b>ŭm</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	bon <b>ē</b>	bon <b>ă</b>	bon <b>ŭm</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	bon <b>ō</b>	bon <b>ă</b>	bon <b>ō</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	bon <b>ī</b>	bon <b>ae</b>	bon <b>ă</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	bon <b>ōrŭm</b>	bon <b>ărŭm</b>	bon <b>ōrŭm</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	bon <b>īs</b>	bon <b>īs</b>	bon <b>īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	bon <b>ōs</b>	bon <b>ās</b>	bon <b>ă</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	bon <b>ī</b>	bon <b>ae</b>	bon <b>ă</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	bon <b>īs</b>	bon <b>īs</b>	bon <b>īs</b> .

*Liber, free.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	lib <b>ēr</b>	lib <b>ēră</b>	lib <b>ērŭm</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	lib <b>ērī</b>	lib <b>ēr<b>ae</b></b>	lib <b>ērī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	lib <b>ērō</b>	lib <b>ēr<b>ae</b></b>	lib <b>ērō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	lib <b>ērŭm</b>	lib <b>ērăm</b>	lib <b>ērŭm</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	lib <b>ēr</b>	lib <b>ēră</b>	lib <b>ērŭm</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	lib <b>ērō</b>	lib <b>ēră</b>	lib <b>ērō</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	lib <b>ērī</b>	lib <b>ēr<b>ae</b></b>	lib <b>ēră</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	lib <b>ērōrŭm</b>	lib <b>ērărŭm</b>	lib <b>ērōrŭm</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	lib <b>ērīs</b>	lib <b>ērīs</b>	lib <b>ērīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	lib <b>ērōs</b>	lib <b>ērās</b>	lib <b>ēră</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	lib <b>ērī</b>	lib <b>ēr<b>ae</b></b>	lib <b>ēră</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	lib <b>ērīs</b>	lib <b>ērīs</b>	lib <b>ērīs</b> .

<sup>1</sup> The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 43. 1.

## Aeger, sick.

## SINGULAR.

Nom.	aegĕr	aegră	aegrŭm
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
Dat.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
Acc.	aegrŭm	aegrŭm	aegrŭm
Voc.	aeger	aegră	aegrŭm
Abl.	aegrō	aegră	aegrō ;

## PLURAL.

Nom.	aegrī	aegrae	aegră
Gen.	aegrōrŭm	aegrārŭm	aegrōrŭm
Dat.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrōs	aegrās	aegră
Voc.	aegrī	aegrae	aegră
Abl.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs.

1. *Donus* is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45. 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45. 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*, but the following in *er* and *ur* are declined like *liber* :

1) *Asper*, rough; *lacer*, torn; *miser*, wretched; *prosper*, prosperous; *tener*, tender; but *asper* sometimes drops the *e*, and *dexter*, right, sometimes retains it : *dexter*, *dextera* or *dextra*.

2) *Satur*, satiated; *satur*, *satūra*, *satŭrum*.

3) Compounds in *fer* and *ger* : *mortifer*, deadly; *aliger*, winged.

149. Irregularities.—These nine adjectives have in the singular *iūs* in the genitive and *ī* in the dative :

*Alius*, another; *nullus*, no one; *solus*, alone; *totus*, whole; *ullus*, any; *unus*, one; *alter*, -*tĕra*, -*tĕrum*, the other; *ūter*, -*tra*, -*trum*, which (of two); *neuter*, -*tra*, -*trum*, neither.

1. The Regular Forms occasionally occur in some of these adjectives : *aliae*, *nullī*, for *alius*, *nullius*; *altĕro*, *altĕrae*, for *alteri*.

2. *I* in *iūs* in poetry is sometimes short; generally so in *alterius*.

3. *Alius* has *aliud* for *alium* in the neuter, and shortens the genitive *alius* into *alius*.

4. Like *uter* are declined its compounds : *uterque*, *utervis*, *uterlibet*, *utercunque*. In *alterūter* sometimes both parts are declined, as *alterius utrŭs*; and sometimes only the latter, as *alterutrŭs*.

## II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

151. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS of this declension have in the nominative singular :

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<b>er,</b>	<b>is,</b>	<b>e.</b>

They are declined as follows :

*Acer, sharp.*

## SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N. ācēr</i>	<i>ācrīs</i>	<i>ācrē</i>
<i>G. acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>
<i>D. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>
<i>A. acrēm</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>V. acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>A. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī ;</i>

## PLURAL.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>G. acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>
<i>D. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>
<i>A. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>V. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>A. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs.</i>

1. Like *Acer* are declined :

1) *Alācer*, lively; *campester*, level; *celēber*, famous; *cēler*,<sup>1</sup> swift; *equester*, equestrian; *paluster*, marshy; *pedester*, pedestrian; *pūter*, putrid; *salūber*, healthful; *silvester*, woody; *terrester*, terrestrial; *volācer*, winged.

2) Adjectives in *er* designating the months : *Octōber*, *bris*.<sup>2</sup>

2. The Masculine in *is*, like the Fem., also occurs : *salūbris*, *silvestris*, for *salūber*, *silvester*.

<sup>1</sup> This retains *e* in declension: *celer*, *celēris*, *celēre*; and has *um* in the Gen. Plur.

<sup>2</sup> See also 87. 2.

3. These forms in **er** are analogous to those in *er* (whether nouns or adjectives) of Dec. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and in inserting *e* before *r*. Thus *ager*, originally *agrus*, drops *us*, giving *agr*, and then inserts *e* to facilitate pronunciation, giving *ager*; so *acer*, originally *acris*, drops *is* and inserts *e*; *acr*, *acer*.

152. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS have in the nominative singular:

M. and F.	Neut.	
1. <b>is</b>	<b>e</b> ,	for positives.
2. <b>ior (or)</b>	<b>ius (us)</b> ,	for comparatives.

They are declined as follows:

**Tristis, sad.**

**Tristior, more sad.<sup>1</sup>**

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. trist <b>is</b>	trist <b>ē</b>	N. tristior	tristi <b>ūs</b>
G. trist <b>is</b>	trist <b>is</b>	G. tristior <b>is</b>	tristi <b>ōris</b>
D. trist <b>i</b>	trist <b>i</b>	D. tristior <b>i</b>	tristi <b>ōri</b>
A. trist <b>ēm</b>	trist <b>ē</b>	A. tristior <b>ēm</b>	tristi <b>ūs</b>
V. trist <b>is</b>	trist <b>ē</b>	V. tristior	tristi <b>ūs</b>
A. trist <b>i</b>	trist <b>i</b> ;	A. tristior <b>ē (i)</b>	tristi <b>ōrē (i)</b> ;

PLURAL.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. trist <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ā</b>	N. tristior <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ōrā</b>
G. trist <b>iūm</b>	tristi <b>ūm</b>	G. tristior <b>ūm</b>	tristi <b>ōrūm</b>
D. trist <b>ibūs</b>	tristi <b>būs</b>	D. tristior <b>ibūs</b>	tristi <b>ōribūs</b>
A. trist <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ā</b>	A. tristior <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ōrā</b>
V. trist <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ā</b>	V. tristior <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ōrā</b>
A. trist <b>ibūs</b>	tristi <b>būs</b> .	A. tristior <b>ibūs</b>	tristi <b>ōribūs</b> .

153. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.—All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *i* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

**Felix, happy.**

**Prudens, prudent.**

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. fel <b>ix</b>	fel <b>ix</b>	N. prudens	prudens
G. fel <b>icis</b>	fel <b>icis</b>	G. prud <b>entis</b>	prud <b>entis</b>
D. fel <b>ici</b>	fel <b>ici</b>	D. prud <b>enti</b>	prud <b>enti</b>

<sup>1</sup> Comparative. For the declension of *Plus*, see 165. 1.

A. felicēm	felix	A. prudentēm	prudens
V. felix	felix	V. prudens	prudens
A. felicē, or ī	felicē, or ī;	A. prudentē, or ī	prudentē, or ī;

## PLURAL.

N. felicēs	feliā	N. prudentēs	prudentiā
G. feliciūm	feliciūm	G. prudentiūm	prudentiūm
D. felicibūs	felicibūs	D. prudentibūs	prudentibūs
A. felicēs	feliā	A. prudentēs	prudentiā
V. felicēs	feliā	V. prudentēs	prudentiā
A. felicibūs	felicibūs.	A. prudentibūs	prudentibūs.

## FORMATION OF CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

154. Adjectives of the third declension form their cases in general like nouns of the same endings, but present the following peculiarities:

## I. Genitive Singular.

155. This presents a few irregularities, but in general the same as in nouns (58-83). Thus

- The following in **ēs** form the genitive not in the regular **itis**, but in
  - ētis**:—*hēbes, indigēs, praepes, tēres.*
  - idis**:—*dēses, rēses.*
- The following in **ēs** form it in
  - ēdis**:—compounds of *pes*, foot, as, *alīpes, bīpes, trīpes.*
  - ēris**:—*pūbes, impūbes* (sometimes *is*).
  - ētis**:—*inquies, locūples.*
- Adjectives in **ceps** form it in
  - cīpis**, if compounded of **capio**: *princeps, principis.*
  - cīpitis**, if compounded of **cāput**: *anceps, ancipitis.*
- Four in **or** form it in **ōris**:—*mēmor, immēmor, bicorpor, tricorpor.*
- Other examples.—(1) *Compos* and *impos* form it in **ōtis**.—(2) Compounds in *cors* from *cor* have *cordis*: *concors, discors*.—(3) *Caelebs* has *caclibis*; *dis, ditis*; *intercus, intercūtis*; *praecox, praecōcis*; *vētus, vetēris*.

## II. Ablative Singular.

156. I. ENDING:—**ē** or **ī**, in comparatives and adjectives of one ending: *tristiōrē* or *rī*; *audācē* or *cī*.

II. “ **ī**, in other adjectives: *acrī, tristī*.

- Comparatives generally have *e*, and adjectives of one ending, generally *i*; but participles in *ans* and *ens* have only *e*, except when used adjectively.

2. The Ablative in **e** in many adjectives of one ending cannot be verified from ancient authors.—The ablative in **i** is in general preferable.

3. Some have only **e** in general use.—(1) *Pauper, paupĕre*, poor; *pūbes, pubĕre*, mature;—(2) those in **es**, G. *ītis* or *īdis*: *āles, dĕses, dīves, sospes, superstes*;—(3) *caelebs, compos, impos, princeps*.

4. The Ablative in **e** sometimes occurs in poetry in positives of more than one ending: *cognomĕne* for *cognomĭnī*, like named.

### III. Nominative, Accusative and Vocative Plural of Neuters.

157. I. ENDING:—**iā** in positives: *acriā, tristiā*.

II. “ **ā** in comparatives: *tristiōrā*.

1. *Vetus*, old, has *vetĕrā*; *complĕres*, several, has *compluriā* or *complūrā*.

2. The neuter plural is wanting in most adjectives of one ending, except those in *as, us, rs, ax, ix, ox*, and numerals in *plex*.

### IV. Genitive Plural.

158. I. ENDING: **iūm** in positives: *acrium, tristium*.

II. “ **ūm** in comparatives: *tristiōrum*.

1. Some adjectives want the genitive plural.

2. *Plūres*, more, and *complĕres*, several, have **iūm**.

3. The following have **ūm**:

1) Adjectives of one ending with only **e** in the ablative singular (156).

3): *pauper, paupĕrum*.

2) Those with the genitive in **ĕris, ōris, ūris**: *vĕtus, vetĕrum*, old; *mēmōr, memōrum*, mindful; *cicūr, cicūrum*, tame.

3) Those in **ceps**: *anceps, ancĕpitum*, doubtful.

4) Those compounded with substantives which have **ūm**: *inops* (ops, *ōpum*), *inŏpum*, helpless.

### IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

159. Irregular adjectives may be

I. Indeclinable: *frūgi*, frugal, good; *nĕquam*, worthless; *mille*, thousand.

II. Defective: (cĕtĕrus) *cĕtĕra, cĕtĕrum*, the other, the rest; (sons) *sontis*, guilty.

III. Heteroclitics.—Many adjectives have two distinct forms, one in *us, a, um*, of the first and second declensions, and one in *is* and *e* of the third: *hilārus* and *hilāris*, joyful; *exānimus* and *exānimis*, lifeless.

1. The Latin has but few indeclinable adjectives, except numerals (175).

2. Some adjectives want

1) The nominative singular masculine: (cĕtĕrus) *cĕtĕra, cĕtĕrum*, the other; (ludĭcer) *ludĭcra, ludĭcrum*, sportive.

2) One or more cases in full: (semĭnex) *semĭnĕcis*, half dead, defective in the nominative; *exspes*, hopeless, only used in the nominative; *exlex*, law-

less, only in nominative and accusative; *pernox*, through the night, only in nominative and ablative.

3) The neuter gender or genitive plural. See 157. 2 and 158. 1.

4) The singular: *pauci*, *ae*, *a*, few; *plerique*, the most; the latter wants also the genitive plural, supplied by *plurimi*. The singular of *plerique* occurs, but is very rare. In good prose *exterus* wants the singular; and *infērus*, *supērus*, and *postērus* are used in the singular only in particular expressions: *mare infērum*, the lower sea, i. e., south of Italy; *mare supērum*, the upper sea, i. e., north of Italy, the Adriatic; *postērus* in expressions of time: *diem postērum*, the following day; *nocte postēra*, on the following night.

3. In most heteroclitics only one form is in common use in classic prose; in a few, as in the examples under 159. III., both forms are approved.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms to denote different degrees of quality. They are usually called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*, high, higher, highest.

Comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very*, instead of *more* and *most*: *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, or too learned; *doctissimus*, most learned, or very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison*—by endings.

II. *Adverbial Comparison*—by adverbs.

### I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimū,	issimā,	issimū.

#### EXAMPLES.

*Altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*: *high*, *higher*, *highest*.

*lēvis*, *levior*, *levissimus*: *light*, *lighter*, *lightest*.

### *Irregular Terminational Comparison.*

163. *Irregular Superlatives.*—Many adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives. Thus

1. Adjectives in **er** add **rĭmus** to the positive: *acer*, *acrior*, *acerrĭmus*, sharp.

*Vetus* has *veterrĭmus*; *matŭrus*, both *maturrĭmus* and *maturissĭmus*; *dexter*, *dextrĭmus*.

2. Six in **ĭlis** add **lĭmus** to the stem:

*Facilis*, *difficilis*; *easy*, *difficult*.  
*similis*, *dissimilis*; *like*, *unlike*.  
*gracilis*, *humilis*; *slender*, *low*;

thus: *facilis*, *facilior*, *facillĭmus*. *Imbecillis* has *imbecillĭmus*, but *imbecillus* is regular.

3. Four in **rus** have two irregular superlatives:

*Extĕrus*, *exterior*, *extrĕmus* and *extĭmus*, *outward*.  
*infĕrus*, *inferior*, *infĭmus* and *imŭs*, *lower*.  
*supĕrus*, *superior*, *suprĕmus* and *summus*, *upper*.  
*postĕrus*, *posterior*, *postrĕmus* and *postŭmus*, *next*.

164. Compounds in *dicus*, *ficus*, and *volus* are compared with the endings **entior** and **entissĭmus**, as if from forms in *ens*:

*Maledĭcus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissĭmus*, *slanderous*.  
*munificus*, *munificentior*, *munificentissĭmus*, *liberal*.  
*benevŏlus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissĭmus*, *benevolent*.

1. *Egĕnus* and *provĭdus* (needy and prudent), form the comparative and superlative from *egens* and *providens*: hence *egentior*, *egentissĭmus*, etc.

2. *Mirificissĭmus* occurs as the superlative of *mirificus*, wonderful.

3. Many adjectives in *dicus* and *ficus* want the comparative and superlative.

165. Special Irregularities of Comparison.

*Bŏnus*, *melior*, *optĭmus*, *good*.  
*mālus*, *pĕjor*, *pessĭmus*, *bad*.  
*magnus*, *mājor*, *maxĭmus*, *great*.  
*parvus*, *mĭnor*, *minĭmus*, *small*.  
*multus*, *plus*, *plurĭmus*, *much*.

1. *Plus* is neuter, and has in the singular only N. and A. *plus*, and G. *plŭris*. In the plural it has N. and A. *plŭres* (m. and f.), *plŭra* (n.), G. *plurĭum*, D. and A. *plurĭbus*.

2. *Dives*, *frŭgi*, *nequam*:

*Dives*, { *divitior*, *divitissĭmus*, } *rich*.  
{ *ditior*, *ditissĭmus*, }  
*frŭgi*, *frugalior*, *frugalissĭmus*, *frugal*.  
*nĕquam*, *nequior*, *nequissĭmus*, *worthless*.

### Defective Terminational Comparison.

166. Positive Wanting:

<i>Cĭterior</i> ,	<i>cĭtĭmus</i> ,	<i>nearer</i> .	<i>prior</i> ,	<i>prĭmus</i> ,	<i>former</i> .
<i>dĕterior</i> ,	<i>dĕterrĭmus</i> ,	<i>worse</i> .	<i>propior</i> ,	<i>proxĭmus</i> ,	<i>nearer</i> .
<i>ĭterior</i> ,	<i>ĭtĭmus</i> ,	<i>inner</i> .	<i>ulterior</i> ,	<i>ultĭmus</i> ,	<i>farther</i> . <sup>1</sup>
<i>ocior</i> ,	<i>ocissĭmus</i> ,	<i>swifter</i> .			

<sup>1</sup> These adjectives are formed from *citra*, *de*, *intra*, Greek *ἐκτός*, *prae* or *pro*, *prope*, *ultra*.



### 167. Comparative Wanting.—The comparative is wanting

1. In a few participles used adjectively: *meritus*, *meritissimus*, deserv-  
ing.

2. In these adjectives:

Diversus,	diversissimus,	<i>different.</i>	nōvus,	novissimus,	<i>new.</i>
falsus,	falsissimus,	<i>false.</i>	sācer,	sacerrimus,	<i>sacred.</i>
inclŭtus,	inclŭtissimus,	<i>renowned.</i>	vētus,	veterrimus,	<i>old.</i>

### 168. Superlative Wanting.—The superlative is wanting

1. In most verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*: *docilis*, *docilior*, *docile*; *optabilis*, *optabilior*, desirable. But of these

Some are compared in full: *amabilis*, *facilis*, *fertilis*, *mobilis*, *nobilis*, *utilis*, etc.

2. In many adjectives in *ālis* and *ilis*: *capitalis*, *capitalior*, *capital*; *civilis*, *civilior*, *civil*.

3. Three adjectives supply the superlative thus:

Adolescens,	adolescentior,	minimus nātu, <sup>1</sup>	<i>young.</i>
juvēnis,	junior,	minimus nātu,	<i>young.</i>
sēnex,	senior,	maximus nātu, <sup>1</sup>	<i>old.</i>

4. A few other adjectives want the superlative: *agrestis*, *alūccr*, *caccus*, *diuturnus*, *infinitus*, *longinquus*, *optimus*, *proclivis*, *propinquus*, *salutāris*, *supīnus*, *surdus*, *tēres*, *vulgāris*.

### 169. Both Comparative and Superlative Wanting.—Many adjectives have no terminational comparison:

1. Many from the nature of their signification, admitting no comparison; especially such as denote *material*, *possession*, or the relations of *place* and *time*: *aureus*, golden; *adamantīnus*, adamantine; *paternus*, paternal; *Romānus*, Roman; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *aestivus*, of summer; *hibernus*, of winter.

2. Many others.—Thus

1) Those in *us* preceded by a vowel, except those in *quus*: *idoneus*, suitable; *noxius*, hurtful. But a few in *uus* have the superlative: *assiduus*, *strenuus*. Other exceptions occur, especially in the poets: *pīus*, *pīissimus*; *egregius*, *egregiissimus*.

2) Many derivatives and compounds, especially (1) derivatives in *ālis*, *ilis*, *ulus*, *icus*, *inus*, *orus*: *mortālis* (*mors*), mortal; (2) compounds of verbs or of nouns: *particeps* (*capio*), sharing; *magnānimus* (*ānimus*), magnanimous.

3) Also *albus*, *almus*, *cadācus*, *fērus*, *fessus*, *gnārus*, *lassus*, *mīrus*, *mutīlus*, *nāvus*, *nefastus*, *rūdis*, etc.

## II.—ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison, form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive:

<sup>1</sup> Smallest or youngest in age; greatest or eldest in age. *Nātu* is sometimes omitted.

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus, *arduous*.

1. Other adverbs are sometimes used with the positive to denote different degrees of the quality: *admōdum*, *valde*, *oppīdo*, very; *imprimis*, *apprime*, in the highest degree; *minus*, less; *minime*, least: *valde magna*, very great. *Per* and *prae* in composition with adjectives have the force of *very*; *perdifficilis*, very difficult; *praeclārus*, very illustrious.

2. Strengthening Particles are sometimes used.—(1) With the comparative: *etiam*, even, *multo*, *longe*, much, far: *etiam diligentior*, even more diligent; *multo diligentior*, much more diligent.—(2) With the superlative: *multo*, *longe*, much, by far; *quam*, as possible: *multo* or *longe diligentissimus*, by far the most diligent; *quam diligentissimus*, as diligent as possible.

## NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

### I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: *singūli*, one by one; *binī*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

173. To these may be added

1. MULTIPLICATIVES.—These are adjectives in *plex*, G. *plīcis*, denoting so many fold: *simplex*, single; *duplex*, double; *triplex*, three-fold.

2. PROPORTIONALS.—These are declined like *bōnus*, and denote so many times as great: *duplus*, twice as great; *tripplus*, three times as great.

### 174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnus, una, unum,	primus, <sup>1</sup> <i>first</i> ,	singūli, <i>one by one</i> .
2. duo, duae, duo,	secundus, <sup>1</sup> <i>second</i> ,	binī, <i>two by two</i> .
3. tres, tria,	tertius, <i>third</i> ,	ternī (trini).
4. quattuor,	quartus, <i>fourth</i> ,	quaternī.
5. quinque,	quintus, <i>fifth</i> ,	quīni.
6. sex,	sextus,	sēni.
7. septem,	septīmus,	septēni.
8. octo,	octāvus,	octōni.
9. novem,	nōnus,	novēni.
10. dēcem,	decīmus,	dēni.
11. undēcim,	undecīmus,	undēni.

<sup>1</sup> *Prior* is used in speaking of two, and *alter* is often used for *secundus*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
12. duodēcim,	duodecīmus,	duodēni.
13. tredēcim or decem et tres,	tertius decīmus, <sup>6</sup>	terni dēni.
14. quattuordēcim,	quartus decīmus,	quaterni dēni.
15. quindēcim,	quintus decīmus,	quīni dēni.
16. sedēcim or sexdē- cim, <sup>1</sup>	sextus decīmus,	sēni dēni.
17. septendēcim, <sup>1</sup>	septīmus decīmus,	septēni dēni.
18. duodeviginti, <sup>2</sup>	duodevicesīmus, <sup>7</sup>	duodevicēni.
19. undeviginti, <sup>2</sup>	undevicesīmus, <sup>7</sup>	undevicēni.
20. viginti,	vicesīmus, <sup>8</sup>	vicēni.
21. { viginti ūnus, ūnus et viginti, <sup>3</sup>	vicesīmus prīmus, ūnus et vicesīmus, <sup>3</sup>	vicēni singŭli. singŭli et vicēni.
22. { viginti duo, duo et viginti,	vicesīmus secundus, alter et vicesīmus,	vicēni bīni. bīni et vicēni.
30. triginta,	tricesīmus, <sup>8</sup>	tricēni.
40. quadraginta,	quadragesīmus,	quadragēni.
50. quinquaginta,	quingagesīmus,	quingagēni.
60. sexaginta,	sexagesīmus,	sexagēni.
70. septuaginta,	septuagesīmus,	septuagēni.
80. octoginta,	octogesīmus,	octogēni.
90. nonaginta,	nonagesīmus,	nonagēni.
100. centum,	centesīmus,	centēni.
101. { centum ūnus, centum et ūnus, <sup>4</sup>	centesīmus prīmus, centesīmus et prīmus	centēni singŭli. centēni et singŭli.
200. ducenti, ae, a,	ducentesīmus,	ducenti.
300. trecenti,	trecentesīmus,	trecenti.
400. quadringenti,	quadringentesīmus,	quadringēni.
500. quingenti,	quingentesīmus,	quingēni.
600. sexcenti,	sexcentesīmus,	sexcenti.
700. septingenti,	septingentesīmus,	septingēni.
800. octingenti,	octingentesīmus,	octingēni.
900. nongenti,	nongentesīmus,	nongēni.
1,000. mille,	millesīmus,	singŭla millia.
2,000. duo millia, <sup>5</sup>	bis millesīmus,	bīna millia.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes with the parts separated: *decem et sex*; *decem et septem*.

<sup>2</sup> Literally two from twenty, one from twenty, by subtraction; but these numbers may be expressed by addition: *decem et octo*; *decem et novem*; so 23, 29; 35, 39, etc., either by subtraction from *triginta*, etc., or by addition to *viginti*; *duodetriginta* or *octo et viginti*.

<sup>3</sup> If the tens precede the units, *et* is omitted, otherwise it is generally used. So in English cardinals, twenty-one, one and twenty.

<sup>4</sup> In compounding numbers above 100, units generally follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; but the connective *et* is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations: *mille centum viginti* or *mille et centum viginti*, 1,120.

<sup>5</sup> Sometimes *bīna millia* or *bis mille*.

<sup>6</sup> Sometimes *decīmus* precedes with or without *et*: *decīmus et tertius* or *decīmus tertius*.

<sup>7</sup> Sometimes expressed by addition, like the corresponding cardinals: *octāvus decīmus* and *nonus decīmus*.

<sup>8</sup> Sometimes written with *q*: *vigesīmus*; *trigesīmus*.

CAEDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTREBUTIVES.
10,000. <i>dēcem millia</i> ,	<i>decies millesīmus</i> ,	<i>dēna millia</i> .
100,000. <i>centum millia</i> ,	<i>centies millesīmus</i> ,	<i>centēna millia</i> .
1,000,000. <i>decies centēna mil-</i> <i>lia</i> , <sup>1</sup>	<i>decies centies mille-</i> <i>sīmus</i> ,	<i>decies centēnamillia</i> .

1. *Ordinals with Pars*, part, expressed or understood, may be used to express fractions: *tertia pars*, a third part, a third; *quarta pars*, a fourth; *duae tertiae*, two thirds.

2. *Distributives* are used

1) To show the *number* of objects taken at a time, often best rendered by adding to the cardinal *each* or *apiece*; *ternos denarios accepērunt*, they received *each* three denarii, or three apiece. Hence

2) To express *Multiplication*: *decies centēna millia*, ten times a hundred thousand, a million.

3) Instead of *Cardinals*, with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *bīna castra*, two camps. Here for *singūli* and *terni*, *ūni* and *trīni* are used: *unae littērae*, one letter; *trīnae littērae*, three letters.

4) Sometimes in reference to objects spoken of in pairs: *bīni scyphi*, a pair of goblets; and in the poets with the force of cardinals: *bīna hastilia*, two spears.

3. Poets use numeral adverbs (181) very freely in compounding numbers: *bis sex*, for ducedēcim; *bis septem*, for quattuordēcim.

4. *Sexcenti* and *mille* are sometimes used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* is in English.

#### DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. On the declension of cardinals observe

1. That the units, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.
2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum* are indeclinable.
3. That the hundreds are declined.
4. That *mille* is sometimes declined.

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

1. *Unus*, *one*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>N.</i>	<i>ūnūs</i> ,	<i>ūnā</i> ,	<i>ūnūm</i> ,	<i>ūnī</i> ,	<i>ūnac</i> ,	<i>ūnā</i> ,
<i>G.</i>	<i>unīūs</i> ,	<i>unīūs</i> ,	<i>unīūs</i> ,	<i>unōrūm</i> ,	<i>unārūm</i> ,	<i>unōrūm</i> ,
<i>D.</i>	<i>unī</i> ,	<i>unī</i> ,	<i>unī</i> ,	<i>unīs</i> ,	<i>unīs</i> ,	<i>unīs</i> ,
<i>A.</i>	<i>unūm</i> ,	<i>unām</i> ,	<i>unūm</i> ,	<i>unōs</i> ,	<i>unās</i> ,	<i>unā</i> ,
<i>V.</i>	<i>unē</i> ,	<i>unā</i> ,	<i>unūm</i> ,			
<i>A.</i>	<i>unō</i> ,	<i>unā</i> ,	<i>unō</i> ;	<i>unīs</i> ,	<i>unīs</i> ,	<i>unīs</i> .

2. *Duo*, *two*.

3. *Tres*, *three*.

<i>N.</i>	<i>duō</i> ,	<i>duac</i> ,	<i>duō</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> , <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>triā</i> , <i>n.</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>duōrūm</i> ,	<i>duārūm</i> ,	<i>duōrūm</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>triūm</i> ,	<i>triūm</i> ,

<sup>1</sup> Literally ten times a hundred thousand; the table might be carried up to any desired number by using the proper numeral adverb with *centēna millia*: *centies centēna millia*, 10,000,000; sometimes in such combinations *centēna millia* is understood and only the adverb is expressed, and sometimes *centum millia* is used.

<sup>2</sup> *Duōrum* and *duārūm* are sometimes shortened to *duum*.

D. duōbūs, duābūs, duōbūs,	tribūs,	tribūs,
A. duōs, duō, duās, duō,	trēs,	triā,
A. duōbūs, duābūs, duōbūs.	tribūs,	tribūs.

1. The plural of *unus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun; *uni Ubii*, the Ubii alone; but in the strict numeral sense of *one*, it is used only with such nouns as, though plural in form, are singular in sense: *una castra*, one camp; *unae littæ*, one letter.

2. Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, both.

3. *Multi*, many, and *plurimi*, very many, are indefinite numerals, and as such generally want the sing. But in the poets the sing. occurs in the sense of *many a*: *multa hostia*, many a victim.

177. Hundreds, *ducenti*, *trecenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bonus*: *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

178. *Mille* is used both as an adjective and as a substantive. As an adjective it is indeclinable; as a substantive it is used in the singular only in the nominative and accusative, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *māre* (50): *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*.

With the substantive *Mille*, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the genitive: *mille hominum*, a thousand men (of men); but it is in the same case as *mille*, if a declined numeral intervenes: *tria millia trecenti milites*, three thousand three hundred soldiers.

179. Ordinals are declined like *bonus* and distributives like the plural of *bonus*, but the latter often have *um* for *orum* in the genitive; *vinum* for *vinorum*.

## 180. NUMERAL SYMBOLS.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
1.	I.	16.	XVI.	101.	CI.
2.	II.	17.	XVII.	200.	CC.
3.	III.	18.	XVIII.	300.	CCC.
4.	IV.	19.	XIX.	400.	CCCC.
5.	V.	20.	XX.	500.	IO, or D.
6.	VI.	21.	XXI.	600.	DC.
7.	VII.	22.	XXII.	700.	DCC.
8.	VIII.	30.	XXX.	800.	DCCC.
9.	IX.	40.	XL.	900.	DCCCC.
10.	X.	50.	L.	1,000.	CIO, or M.
11.	XI.	60.	LX.	2,000.	CIOCIO, or MM.
12.	XII.	70.	LXX.	10,000.	CCCCIO.
13.	XIII.	80.	LXXX.	100,000.	CCCCIOOO.
14.	XIV.	90.	XC.	1,000,000.	CCCCIOOOOO.
15.	XV.	100.	C.		

1. Latin Numeral Symbols are combinations of: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; IO or D = 500; CIO or M = 1,000.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Thousands are sometimes denoted by a line over the symbol:  $\overline{\text{II}}$  = 2,000;  $\overline{\text{V}}$  = 5,000.

2. In the Combination of these symbols, except IO, observe

1) That the repetition of a symbol doubles the value: II = 2; XX = 20; CC = 200.

2) That any symbol standing before one of greater value, subtracts its own value, but that after one of greater value, it adds its own value: V = 5; IV = 4 (5-1); VI = 6 (5+1).

3. In the Combination of IO observe

1) That each O (inverted C) after IO increases the value ten-fold: IO = 500; IOO = 500 × 10 = 5,000; IOOO = 5,000 × 10 = 50,000.

2) That these numbers are doubled by placing C the same number of times before I as O stands after it: IO = 500; CIO = 500 × 2 = 1,000; IOO = 5,000; CCIOO = 5,000 × 2 = 10,000.

3) That smaller symbols standing after these add their value: IO = 500; IOC = 600; IOCC = 700.

## II. NUMERAL ADVERBS.

181. To numerals belong also numeral adverbs. For convenience of reference we add the following table:

1. s̄mel, <i>once</i>	15. { quinquiesdecies	80. octogies
2. bis, <i>twice</i>	{ quindecies	90. nonagies
3. ter, <i>three times</i>	16. { sexiesdecies	100. centies
4. quāter	{ sedecies	101. centies semel
5. quinquies	17. septiesdecies	200. ducenties
6. sexies	18. { duodevicies	300. trecenties
7. septies	{ octiesdecies	400. quadringenties
8. octies	19. { undevicies	500. quingenties
9. novies	{ noviesdecies	600. sexcenties
10. dēcies	20. vicies	700. septingenties
11. undecies	21. s̄mel et vicies	800. octingenties
12. duodecies	22. bis et vicies	900. noningenties <sup>1</sup>
13. { terdecies	30. tricies	1,000. millies
{ tredecies	40. quadragies	2,000. bis millies
14. { quaterdecies	50. quinquagies	10,000. decies millies
{ quattuordecies	60. sexagies	100,000. centies millies
	70. septuagies	1,000,000. millies millies.

1. In Compounds of units and tens, the unit with *et* generally precedes, as in the table: *bis et vicies*; the tens however with or without *et* sometimes precede: *vicies et bis* or *vicies bis*, but not *bis vicies*.

2. Another Class of numeral adverbs in *um* or *o* is formed from the ordinals: *pr̄imum*, *pr̄imo*, for the first time, in the first place; *tert̄ium*, *tert̄io*, for the third time.

<sup>1</sup> Also written *nongenties*.

<sup>2</sup> *Millies* is often used indefinitely like the English *a thousand times*.

## CHAPTER III.

## PRONOUNS.

182. THE Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgo*, I; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ĕgo*, I; *tu*, thou; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself.

They are declined as follows:

## SINGULAR.

N. <i>ĕgō</i>	<i>tū</i>	
G. <i>meī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>sui</i>
D. <i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
A. <i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i>
V.	<i>tū</i>	
A. <i>mē</i> ;	<i>tē</i> ;	<i>sē</i> ;

## PLURAL.

N. <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
G. <i>nostrū</i> }	<i>vestrū</i> }	<i>sui</i>
<i>nostrī</i> <sup>1</sup> }	<i>vestrī</i> <sup>1</sup> }	
D. <i>nōbīs</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sibi</i>
A. <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>
V.	<i>vōs</i>	
A. <i>nōbīs</i> .	<i>vōbīs</i> .	<i>sē</i> .

1. **Substantive Pronouns.**—Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. **Reflexive Pronoun.**—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of *himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

<sup>1</sup> On the use of these two forms see 446. 3.

3. **Emphatic Forms** in *met* occur, except in the Gen. Plur.: *egōmet*, I myself; *mihīmet*, *tēmet*, etc. But the Nom. *tu* has *tūte* and *tutēmet*, for *tūmet*.

4. **Reduplicated Forms**:—*sēsē*, *tētē*, *mēmē*, for *se*, *te*, *me*.

5. **Ancient and Rare Forms**:—*mis* for *mei*; *tis* for *tui*; *mī* and *mē* for *mihi*; *mehē*, *med*, and *mepte* for *me*; *ted* for *te*.

6. **Cum**, when used with the *ablative* of these pronouns, is appended to them: *mēcum*, *tēcum*.

## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

<i>meus</i> , <i>my</i> ,	<i>noster</i> , <i>our</i> ,
<i>tuus</i> , <i>thy</i> , <i>your</i> ,	<i>vester</i> , <i>your</i> ,
<i>suus</i> , <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i> ,	<i>suus</i> , <i>their</i> .

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions: *meus*, *mea*, *meum*; *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

1. **Emphatic Forms**, in *pte* and *met* occur, especially in the Abl. Sing.: *suapte*, *suāmet*.

2. **The Patrials**, *nostras*, of our country, and *vestras*, of your country, are also possessives. They have the genitive in *ātis*, and are declined as adjectives of Decl. III., but are little used.

3. **Cujus and Cujas**.—*Cujus* (a, um, whose?) and the patrial *cujas* (*ātis*, of what country?) also belong to possessives, though, not like other possessives, formed from personal pronouns, but from the interrogative *quis*, *cujus*. See 188.

## III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. **Demonstrative Pronouns**, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

*Hic*, *ille*, *iste*, *ipse*, *is*, *idem*.

They are declined as follows:

*Hic*, *this*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>G.</i> hujūs	hujūs	hujūs	hōrūm	hārūm	hōrūm
<i>D.</i> huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>A.</i> hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> hōc	hāc	hōc;	hīs	hīs	hīs.



Illĕ, *he or that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> illĕ	illă	illŭd	illi	illae	illă
<i>G.</i> illiŭs	illiŭs	illiŭs	illŏrŭm	illărŭm	illŏrŭm
<i>D.</i> illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>A.</i> illŭm	illăm	illŭd	illŏs	illăs	illă
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> illŏ	illă	illŏ;	illis	illis	illis.

Istĕ, *that.*

Istĕ, *that*, is declined like *illĕ*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

Ipsĕ, *self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsŭm	ipsi	ipsae	ipsă
<i>G.</i> ipsiŭs	ipsiŭs	ipsiŭs	ipsŏrŭm	ipsărŭm	ipsŏrŭm
<i>D.</i> ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>A.</i> ipsŭm	ipsăm	ipsŭm	ipsŏs	ipsăs	ipsă
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> ipsŏ	ipsă	ipsŏ;	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis.

Is, *he, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> is	eă	id	iī	cae	eă
<i>G.</i> ejŭs	ejŭs	ejŭs	eŏrŭm	eărŭm	eŏrŭm
<i>D.</i> ei	ei	ei	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
<i>A.</i> eŭm	eăm	id	eŏs	eăs	eă
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> eŏ	eă	eŏ;	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs).

Idem, *the same.*

Idem, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *idem* to *īdem* and *iddem* to *īdem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*; thus:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> idēm	eădēm	īdēm	īdēm	caedēm	eădēm
<i>G.</i> ejusdēm	ejusdēm	ejusdēm	eŏrundēm	eărundēm	eŏrundēm
<i>D.</i> eidēm	eidēm	eidēm	iisdēm	iisdēm	iisdēm <sup>1</sup>
<i>A.</i> eundēm	eandēm	īdēm	eŏsdēm	eăsdēm	eădēm
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> eŏdēm	eădēm	eŏdēm;	iisdēm	iisdēm	iisdēm. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes *eisdēm* in all genders. *Idem* and *iisdēm* are in poetry dissyllables, and are sometimes written *idem* and *isdem*.

1. **Emphatic Forms** in *ce* occur in the several cases of *hic* and sometimes in other demonstratives: *hicce, hæcce, hocce* (also *hice, hæce* or *hæc*, etc.), *hujusce, hosce, hisce; harumce, harunce* (*m* changed to *n*), *hârunc* (*e* dropped). Before the interrogative *ne*, *ce* becomes *ci*: *hiccine, hoscine*.

2. **Illic** and **istic** or **isthic** for *ille* and *iste* occur. They are declined alike, and are used only in certain cases. Thus

Sing., Nom. *illīc, illāc, illōc* or *illūc*,

Acc. *illunc, illanc, illōc*,

Abl. *illōc, illāc, illōc*;

Plur. *illaec, generally Neut., sometimes Fem.*

### 3. Ancient and Rare Forms:

1) Of **ILLE** and **ISTE**: *illi, illae, illi*, Gen. for *illius*; *isti, istae, isti* for *istius*; *illae* and *istae*, Dat. Fem. for *illi* and *isti*; also forms from *ollus* for *ille*: *olli, olla, ollos*, etc.

2) Of **IPSE**, compounded of *is* and *pse* (*is-pse* = *ipse*); the uncontracted forms: Acc. *eumpse, campse*, Abl. *eopse, eapse*; with *re*: *re eapse, reapse* for *re ipsa*, in reality; also *ipsus, a, um*, etc., for *ipse, a, um*.

3) Of **IS**: *ei, eae, eii*, Dat. for *ei*; *iibus (ibus), eābus, iibus (ibus)* for *iis*.

4) **SYNCPATED FORMS**, compounded of *ecce* or *en*, lo, see, and some cases of demonstratives, especially the Acc. of *ille* and *is*; *eccum* for *ecce eum*; *eccam* for *ecce eam*; *eccos* for *ecce eos*; *eccillum, ecce illum, eccillam, ecce illam*; *ellum, en illum*; *ellam, en illam*.

4. **Demonstrative Adjectives**: *tālis, e, such; tantus, a, um, so great; tōt, so many; tōtus, a, um, so great. Tōt* is indeclinable; the rest regular.

For *tālis*, the Gen. of a demonstrative with *mōdi* (Gen. of *modus*, measure, kind) is often used: *hujusmōdi, ejusmōdi*, of this kind, such; *illiusmōdi, istiusmōdi*, of that kind, such.

## IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quōd</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
G. <i>cujūs</i>	<i>cujūs</i>	<i>cujūs</i>	<i>quōrūm</i>	<i>quārūm</i>	<i>quōrūm</i>
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>
A. <i>quē</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quōd</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
V.					
A. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i> ;	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i> .

1. **Ancient and Rare Forms**: *quojus* and *quoi* for *cujus* and *cui*; *quī* for *quo*, *qua*, *quo*; *quīs* (*qucis*) for *quibus*.

2. **Cum**, when used with the *ablative* of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

3. **Cujus**, *a, um, whose*, as a possessive formed from the genitive *cujus*, sometimes occurs.

4. **Quicunque** and **Quisquis**, *whoever*, are called from their signification *general relatives*. *Quicunque* (*quicumque*) is declined like *quī*. *Quisquis* is rare except in the forms: *quisquis, quidquid* (*quicquid*), *quōquō*; but an old genitive *cuiqui* for *cujuscujus* occurs.

5. **Compounds resolved**.—*Quicunque* and similar compounds are sometimes resolved and their parts separated by one or more words: *qua re cunque*.

6. *Uter* and *Utercunque*, *whichever* and *whichever*, also occur with the force of relatives.

7. **Relative Adjectives:** *quālis*, e, such as; *quantus*, a, um, so great; *quōt*, as many as; *quōtus*, a, um, of which number; and the double and compound forms: *quālisquālis*, *qualiscunque*; *quantusquantus*, *quantuscunque*; *quotquot*, *quocunque*; *quotuscunque*.

\* *Quotquot* is indeclinable; in the other double forms both parts are declined; in the forms in *cunque*, of course only the first part is declined.

For *Quālis* the genitive of the relative with *mōdi* is often used: *cujusmōdi* (sometimes *cuiūmōdi*), *ejuscemōdi*, of what kind, such as; *cujuscunquemōdi*, *cuiuscunquemōdi* (for *cujuscujusmōdi*, 4), of whatever kind.

## V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

*Quis* and *qui* with their compounds.

*Quis* (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quis	quae	quid	qui	quae	quae
G. cuius	cujus	cuius	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
D. cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
A. quēm	quā	quid	quōs	quās	quae
V.					
A. quō	quā	quō;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

*Qui* (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the *relative qui*.

1. *Quis* and *Quem* sometimes occur as feminine forms.

2. *Qui* as an *ablative* with an adverbial force in the sense of *how?* sometimes occurs. The other ancient forms are the same as in the relative, 187. 1.

3. **Compounds** of *quis* and *qui* are declined like the simple pronouns: *quisnam*, *quīnam*, *ecquis*, etc. But *ecquis* has sometimes *ecqua* for *ecquae*.

4. **Interrogative Adjectives:** (1) *Quālis*, e, what? *quantus*, a, um, how great? *quōt*, how many? *quōtus*, a, um, of what number? *ūter*, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two)? See 149. (2) The Possessive interrogative, *cujus*, a, um, whose? and the Patrial *cujas*, *ātis*, of what country?

*Cujus* is defective and little used. It has the Nom. and Acc. Sing., and in the feminine also the Abl. Sing. and the Nom. and Accus. Plur.

## VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

*Quis* and *qui* with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.

1. *Quis* and *Qui* are generally used after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*; *si quis*, *si qui*. But they also occur without such accompaniment.

2. *Qua* for *Quae*.—After *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*, the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. have *quae* or *qua*: *si quae*, *si qua*.

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites*:

*aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid* or *aliquid*, *some, some one*.  
*quispiam*, *quaequam*, *quidpiam*<sup>1</sup> or *quodpiam*, *some, some one*.  
*quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* or *quoddam*, *certain, certain one*.  
*quisquam*, *quaequam* *quidquam*,<sup>1</sup> *any one*.

II. *The General Indefinites*:

*quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque*<sup>2</sup> or *quodque*, *every, every one*.  
*quīvis*, *quaevis*, *quidvis* or *quodvis*, *any one you please*.  
*quilibet*, *quaelibet*, *quidlibet* or *quodlibet*, *any one you please*.

1. **Declension**.—It may be remarked

1) That these compounds are generally declined like the simple *quis* and *qui*, but have in the Neut. Sing. both *quod* and *quid*, the former used *adjectively*, the latter *substantively*.

2) That *aliquis* has *aliqua* instead of *aliquae* in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. *Aliquī* for *aliquis* occurs.

3) That *quidam* generally changes *m* to *n* before *d*: *quemdam* for *quendam*.

4) That *quisquam* generally wants the Fem. and the Plur.

5) That *unus* prefixed to *quisque* does not affect its declension: *unusquisque*, *unaquaeque*, etc.

2. **Other Indefinites** are: *alius*, *alter*, *uter*, *alteruter*, *neuter*, *ullus*, *nulus*, *nemo*.

3. **Other General Indefinites** may be formed from *uter*: *uterque*, both, each; *uterque*, *uterlibet*, either you please.

4. **Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives**: *qualislibet*, *qualelibet*, of any sort; *aliquantus*, a, um, of some size; *aliquot* (indeclinable), several.

For *qualislibet* the Gen. of an indefinite pronoun with *modi* may be used: *cujusdammodi*, of some kind.

## CHAPTER IV.

### VERBS.

192. **VERBS** in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *legit*, he reads.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes written respectively, *quippiam* and *quicquam*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes written *quicque*.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes :

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,—which admit a direct object of their action : *servum verbērat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,—which do not admit such an object : *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person*.

### I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices :

I. The ACTIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acting or existing : *pāter filium amat*, the father loves his son ; *est*, he is.

II. The PASSIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing : *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

1. **Passive Wanting.**—Intransitive Verbs generally have only the active voice, but are sometimes used impersonally in the passive. See 301. 3.

2. **Active Wanting.**—Deponent Verbs<sup>1</sup> are Passive in form, but not in sense : *lōquor*, to speak. But see 221.

### II. MOODS.

196. Moods are either Definite or Indefinite :

I. The Definite or Finite Moods make up the Finite Verb ; they are :

1. The INDICATIVE MOOD,—which either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the fact : *lēgit*, he is reading ; *legitne*, is he reading ?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,—which expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may, can*, etc. : *lēgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The IMPERATIVE MOOD,—which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty* : *lēge*, read thou.

II. The Indefinite Moods express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives ; they are :

---

<sup>1</sup> So called from *depōno*, to lay aside, as they dispense, in general, with the active form and the passive meaning.

1. The **INFINITIVE**,—which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb without any necessary reference to person or number : *legere*, to read.

2. The **GERUND**,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in **ING** : *amandi*, of loving ; *amandi causa*, for the sake of loving.

3. The **SUPINE**,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular* : *amatum*, to love, for loving ; *amatu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The **PARTICIPLE**,—which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles : two in the Active, the Present and Future—*amans*, loving ; *amaturus*, about to love ;—and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future—*amatus*, loved ; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

### III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses :

#### I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION :

1. Present : *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect : *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future : *amābo*, I shall love.

#### II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION :

1. Perfect : *amāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect : *amavēram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect : *amavēro*, I shall have loved.

### 198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **Present Perfect and Historical Perfect**.—The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect* or *Perfect Definite* ; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect* or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. **Principal and Historical**.—Tenses are also distinguished as

- 1) *Principal* :—Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.
- 2) *Historical* :—Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.**—The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

#### IV. NUMBERS.

199. There are two numbers: SINGULAR and PLURAL.<sup>1</sup>

#### V. PERSONS.

200. There are three persons: FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.<sup>1</sup>

#### CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

##### INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.

**āre,**

Conj. II.

**ēre,**

Conj. III.

**ĕre,**

Conj. IV.

**ire.**

202. **Principal Parts.**—Four forms of the verb,—the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine,—are called from their importance the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. **Entire Conjugation.**—In any regular verb

1. The PRESENT STEM<sup>2</sup> may be found by dropping the infinitive ending: *amāre*; stem, *am*.

2. The PRINCIPAL PARTS may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.

3. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of proper endings.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> As in Nouns. See 87.

<sup>2</sup> For fuller treatment of stems, see 241. 242.

<sup>3</sup> In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sum, *I am*.

*Sum* is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
sūm,	essē,	fuī,	—.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sūm,	<i>I am,</i>	sūmūs,	<i>we are,</i>
ēs,	<i>thou art,</i> <sup>1</sup>	estīs,	<i>you are,</i>
est,	<i>he is;</i>	sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I was.*

ērām,	<i>I was,</i>	ērāmūs,	<i>we were,</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast,</i>	erātīs,	<i>you were,</i>
erāt,	<i>he was;</i>	erant,	<i>they were.</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be.*

ērō,	<i>I shall be,</i>	ērīmūs,	<i>we shall be,</i>
erīs,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	erītīs,	<i>you will be,</i>
erit,	<i>he will be;</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I have been, was.*

fuī,	<i>I have been,</i>	fuīmūs,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuistī,	<i>thou hast been,</i>	fuistīs,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuīt,	<i>he has been;</i>	fuērunt, fuērē,	} <i>they have been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been.*

fuērām,	<i>I had been,</i>	fuērāmūs,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuērātīs,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuērāt,	<i>he had been;</i>	fuērant,	<i>they had been.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been.*

fuērō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you will have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he will have been;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Or *you are*; *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse; in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
šim,	<i>I may be,</i>	šimūs,	<i>we may be,</i>
šis,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	šitis,	<i>you may be,</i>
šit	<i>he may be ;</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be.*

essēm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essēmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	essētīs,	<i>you might be,</i>
essēt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I may or can have been.*

fuērīm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuērit,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been.*

fuissēm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissēmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissētīs,	<i>you might have been.</i>
fuissēt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. šs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estě,	<i>be ye,</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,<sup>1</sup></i>	estōtě,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be<sup>1</sup>;</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essě,	<i>to be,</i>	
PERF. fuissě,	<i>to have been,</i>	
FUT. fūtūrūs <sup>2</sup> essě,	<i>to be about to</i>	FUT. fūtūrūs <sup>2</sup> <i>about to be.</i>
	<i>be.</i>	

1. **Rare Forms** are: *fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrēt, fōrent, and fōrě*, for *essem, esses, esset, essent, and fūtūrus esse*. See 297. III. 2.

2. **Antiquated Forms** are: *siēm, siēs, siēt, sient*, for *sim, sis, sit, sint*; also *fuām, fuās, fuāt, fuant*, for the same.

<sup>1</sup> The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres. or with *let*: *be thou ; let him be.*

<sup>2</sup> *Fūtūrus* is declined like *bonus*. So in the Infinitive: *fūtūrus, a, um esse*.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
ăm <sup>o</sup> ,	ăm <sup>ā</sup> rē,	ăm <sup>ā</sup> vī,	ăm <sup>ā</sup> tūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I love, am loving, do love.*

## SINGULAR.

ăm <sup>o</sup> ,	<i>I love,</i>
ăm <sup>ās</sup> ,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
ăm <sup>āt</sup> ,	<i>he loves ;</i>

## PLURAL.

ăm <sup>āmūs</sup> ,	<i>we love,</i>
ăm <sup>ātīs</sup> ,	<i>you love,</i>
ăm <sup>ant</sup> ,	<i>they love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love.*

ăm <sup>ābām</sup> ,	<i>I was loving,</i>
ăm <sup>ābās</sup> ,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
ăm <sup>ābāt</sup> ,	<i>he was loving ;</i>

ăm <sup>ābāmūs</sup> ,	<i>we were loving,</i>
ăm <sup>ābātīs</sup> ,	<i>you were loving,</i>
ăm <sup>ābant</sup> ,	<i>they were loving.</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will love.*

ăm <sup>ābō</sup> ,	<i>I shall love,</i>
ăm <sup>ābīs</sup> ,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
ăm <sup>ābīt</sup> ,	<i>he will love ;</i>

ăm <sup>ābīmūs</sup> ,	<i>we shall love,</i>
ăm <sup>ābītīs</sup> ,	<i>you will love,</i>
ăm <sup>ābunt</sup> ,	<i>they will love.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I loved, have loved.*

ăm <sup>āvī</sup> ,	<i>I have loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvistī</sup> ,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvīt</sup> ,	<i>he has loved ;</i>

ăm <sup>āvīmūs</sup> ,	<i>we have loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvistīs</sup> ,	<i>you have loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvērānt, ērē</sup> ,	<i>they have loved</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved.*

ăm <sup>āvērām</sup> ,	<i>I had loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvērās</sup> ,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvērāt</sup> ,	<i>he had loved ;</i>

ăm <sup>āvērāmūs</sup> ,	<i>we had loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvērātīs</sup> ,	<i>you had loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvērānt</sup> ,	<i>they had loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have loved.*

ăm <sup>āvērō</sup> ,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvērīs</sup> ,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvērīt</sup> ,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>

ăm <sup>āvērīmūs</sup> ,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvērītīs</sup> ,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
ăm <sup>āvērīnt</sup> ,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can love.*

## SINGULAR.

<b>ămēm,</b>	<i>I may love,</i>
<b>ămēs,</b>	<i>thou mayst love,</i>
<b>ămēt,</b>	<i>he may love ;</i>

## PLURAL.

<b>ămēmūs,</b>	<i>we may love,</i>
<b>ămētīs,</b>	<i>you may love,</i>
<b>ăment,</b>	<i>they may love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should love.*

<b>ămārēm,</b>	<i>I might love,</i>
<b>ămārēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst love,</i>
<b>ămārēt,</b>	<i>he might love ;</i>

<b>ămārēmūs,</b>	<i>we might love,</i>
<b>ămārētīs,</b>	<i>you might love,</i>
<b>ămārent,</b>	<i>they might love.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I may or can have loved.*

<b>ămāvērīm,</b>	<i>I may have loved,</i>
<b>ămāvērīs,</b>	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>
<b>ămāvērīt,</b>	<i>he may have loved ;</i>

<b>ămāvērīmūs,</b>	<i>we may have loved,</i>
<b>ămāvērītīs,</b>	<i>you may have loved,</i>
<b>ămāvērīnt,</b>	<i>they may have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have loved.*

<b>ămāvissēm,</b>	<i>I might have loved,</i>
<b>ămāvissēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst have loved,</i>
<b>ămāvissēt,</b>	<i>he might have loved ;</i>

<b>ămāvissēmūs,</b>	<i>we might have loved,</i>
<b>ămāvissētīs,</b>	<i>you might have loved,</i>
<b>ămāvissent,</b>	<i>they might have loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. **ămā,** *love thou ;***ămātē,** *love ye.*FUT. **ămātō,** *thou shalt love,*  
**ămātō,** *he shall love ;***ămātōtē,** *ye shall love,*  
**ămāntō,** *they shall love.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. **ămārē,** *to love.*PERF. **ămāvissē,** *to have loved.*FUT. **ămātūrūs** <sup>2</sup> **essē,** *to be about to love.*

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. **ămans,**<sup>1</sup> *loving.*FUT. **ămātūrūs,**<sup>2</sup> *about to love.*

## GERUND.

Gen. <b>ămandī,</b>	<i>of loving,</i>
Dat. <b>ămandō,</b>	<i>for loving,</i>
Acc. <b>ămandūm,</b>	<i>loving,</i>
Abl. <b>ămandō,</b>	<i>by loving.</i>

## SUPINE.

Acc. <b>ămātūm,</b>	<i>to love,</i>
Abl. <b>ămātū.</b>	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Decline like *prudens*, 153.<sup>2</sup> Decline like *bonus*, 143.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

ămōr,

Pres. Inf.

ămārī,

Perf. Ind.

ămātūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am loved.*

## SINGULAR.

ămōr

ămārīs, or rē

ămātūr;

## PLURAL.

ămāmūr

ămāmīnī

ămantūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was loved.*

ămābār

ămābārīs, or rē

ămābātūr;

ămābāmūr

ămābāmīnī

ămābantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be loved.*

ămābōr

ămābērīs, or rē

ămābītūr;

ămābīmūr

ămābīmīnī

ămābuntūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was loved.*ămātūs sūm<sup>1</sup>

ămātūs ēs

ămātūs est;

ămātī sūmūs

ămātī estīs

ămātī sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*ămātūs ērām<sup>1</sup>

ămātūs ērās

ămātūs ērāt;

ămātī ērāmūs

ămātī ērātīs

ămātī ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.*ămātūs ērō<sup>1</sup>

ămātūs ērīs

ămātūs ērīt;

ămātī ērīmūs

ămātī ērītīs

ămātī ērunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Fui, fuisti*, etc., are sometimes used for *sum, es*, etc., thus, *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fuēram, fuēras*, etc., for *ēram, ēras*, etc.; also *fuēro, fuēris*, etc., for *ēro, ēris*, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be loved.*

## SINGULAR.

ămēr  
ămērīs, or rē  
ămētūr;

## PLURAL.

ămēmūr  
ămēmīnī  
ămentūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be loved.*

ămārēr  
ămārērīs, or rē  
ămārētūr;

ămārēmūr  
ămārēmīnī  
ămārentūr.

## PERFECT.

*I may have been loved.*

ămătūs sīm<sup>1</sup>  
ămătūs sīs  
ămătūs sīt;

ămătī sīmūs  
ămătī sītīs  
ămătī sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been loved.*

ămătūs essēm<sup>1</sup>  
ămătūs essēs  
ămătūs essēt;

ămătī essēmūs  
ămătī essētīs  
ămătī essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămārē, *be thou loved;*ămămīnī, *be ye loved.*FUT. ămătōr, *thou shalt be loved,*ămătōr, *he shall be loved;*ămantōr, *they shall be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. ămārī, *to be loved.*PERF. ămătūs essē<sup>1</sup>, *to have been loved.*PERF. ămătūs, *having been loved.*FUT. ămătūm irī, *to be about to be loved.*FUT. ămandūs, *to be loved.*

<sup>1</sup> *Fuērīm, fuērīs, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sīm, sīs, etc.* So also *fuiſsem, fuiſſes, etc.*, for *essem, esses, etc.*; rarely *fuiſſe* for *esse*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnērē,	mōnuī,	mōnītūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneō	mōnēmūs
mōnēs	mōnētīs
mōnēt;	mōnent.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising.*

mōnēbām	mōnēbāmūs
mōnēbās	mōnēbātīs
mōnēbāt;	mōnēbant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*

mōnēbō	mōnēbīmūs
mōnēbīs	mōnēbitīs
mōnēbīt;	mōnēbunt.

## PERFECT.

*I advised or have advised.*

mōnuī	mōnuīmūs
mōnuistī	mōnuistīs
mōnuīt;	mōnuērunt, or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*

mōnuērām	mōnuērāmūs
mōnuērās	mōnuērātīs
mōnuērāt;	mōnuērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.*

mōnuērō	mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērīs	mōnuērītīs
mōnuērīt;	mōnuērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can advise.*

## SINGULAR.

mōncām

mōncās

mōncāt;

## PLURAL.

mōncāmūs

mōncātis

mōncant.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should advise.*

mōnērēm

mōnērēs

mōnērēt;

mōnērēmūs

mōnērētis

mōnērent.

## PERFECT.

*I may have advised.*

mōnuērīm

mōnuērīs

mōnuērīt;

mōnuērīmūs

mōnuērītis

mōnuērint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have advised.*

mōnuissēm

mōnuissēs

mōnuissēt;

mōnuissēmūs

mōnuissētis

mōnuissent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnē, *advise thou;* | mōnētē, *advise ye.*FUT. mōnētō, *thou shalt advise,* | mōnētōtē, *ye shall advise,*  
mōnētō, *he shall advise;* | mōnentō, *they shall advise.*

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnērē; *to advise.*PERF. mōnuissē, *to have advised.*FUT. mōnītūrās *essē, to be*  
*about to advise.*PRES. mōnens, *advising.*FUT. mōnītūrās, *about to advise.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen. mōnendī, *of advising,*Dat. mōnendō, *for advising,*Acc. mōnendūm, *advising,*Abl. mōnendō, *by advising.*Acc. mōnītūm, *to advise,*Abl. mōnītū, *to advise, be advised.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneōr,	mōnēri,	mōnitūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am advised.*

## SINGULAR.

mōneōr  
mōnērīs, or rē  
mōnētūr;

## PLURAL.

mōnēmūr  
mōnēmīnī  
mōnentūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*

mōnēbār  
mōnēbārīs, or rē  
mōnēbātūr;

mōnēbāmūr  
mōnēbāmīnī  
mōnēbantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.*

mōnēbōr  
mōnēbērīs, or rē  
mōnēbītūr;

mōnēbīmūr  
mōnēbīmīnī  
mōnēbuntūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was advised.*

mōnitūs sūm<sup>1</sup>  
mōnitūs ēs  
mōnitūs est;

mōnitī sūmūs  
mōnitī estīs  
mōnitī sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*

mōnitūs ērām<sup>1</sup>  
mōnitūs ērās  
mōnitūs ērāt;

mōnitī ērāmūs  
mōnitī ērātīs  
mōnitī ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*

mōnitūs ērō<sup>1</sup>  
mōnitūs ērīs  
mōnitūs ērīt;

mōnitī ērimūs  
mōnitī ērītīs  
mōnitī ērunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be advised.*

## SINGULAR.

mōn**eār**  
 mōn**eārīs**, or **rē**  
 mōn**eātūr** ;

## PLURAL.

mōn**eāmūr**  
 mōn**eāmīnī**  
 mōn**eantūr**.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be advised.*

mōn**ērēr**  
 mōn**ērērīs**, or **rē**  
 mōn**ērētūr** ;

mōn**ērēmūr**  
 mōn**ērēmīnī**  
 mōn**ērentūr**.

## PERFECT.

*I may have been advised.*

mōn**ītūs sīm** <sup>1</sup>  
 mōn**ītūs sīs**  
 mōn**ītūs sīt** ;

mōn**ītī sīmūs**  
 mōn**ītī sītīs**  
 mōn**ītī sint**.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been advised.*

mōn**ītūs essēm** <sup>1</sup>  
 mōn**ītūs essēs**  
 mōn**ītūs essēt** ;

mōn**ītī essēmūs**  
 mōn**ītī essētīs**  
 mōn**ītī essent**.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōn**ērē**, *be thou advised* ; | mōn**ēmīnī**, *be ye advised*.

FUT. mōn**ētōr**, *thou shalt be advised*,

mōn**ētōr**, *he shall be advised* ;

mōn**entōr**, *they shall be advised* .

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōn**ērī**, *to be advised*,

PERF. mōn**ītūs essē** <sup>1</sup>, *to have been advised*,

FUT. mōn**ītūm irī**, *to be about to be advised*.

PERF. mōn**ītūs**, *advised*,

FUT. mōn**endūs**, *to be advised*.

---

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
regō,	regere,	rexī,	rectū.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I rule.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
regō		regimūs
regis		regitis
regit ;		regunt.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling.*

regēbam		regēbāmūs
regēbas		regēbātis
regēbat ;		regēbant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will rule.*

regām		regēmūs
regēs		regētis
regēt ;		regent.

## PERFECT.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

rexī		reximūs
rexistī		rexistis
rexit ;		rexerunt, or ērō.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

rexērām		rexērāmūs
rexērās		rexērātis
rexērāt ;		rexērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have ruled.*

rexērō		rexērīmūs
rexērīs		rexērītis
rexērīt ;		rexerint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can rule.*

## SINGULAR.

rĕgā**m**rĕgā**s**rĕgā**t** ;

## PLURAL.

rĕgā**mūs**rĕgā**tīs**rĕgā**nt**.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*rĕgĕrĕ**m**rĕgĕrĕ**s**rĕgĕrĕ**t** ;rĕgĕrĕ**mūs**rĕgĕrĕ**tīs**rĕgĕrĕ**nt**.

## PERFECT.

*I may have ruled.*rĕxĕrĭ**m**rĕxĕrĭ**s**rĕxĕrĭ**t** ;rĕxĕrĭ**mūs**rĕxĕrĭ**tīs**rĕxĕrĭ**nt**.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*rĕxissĕ**m**rĕxissĕ**s**rĕxissĕ**t** ;rĕxissĕ**mūs**rĕxissĕ**tīs**rĕxissĕ**nt**.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rĕgĕ, rule thou ;

rĕgĭ**tĕ**, rule ye.FUT. rĕgĭ**tō**, thou shalt rule,  
rĕgĭ**tō**, he shall rule ;rĕgĭ**tōtĕ**, ye shall rule,  
rĕg**untō**, they shall rule.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. rĕgĕrĕ, to rule.

PERF. rĕxissĕ, to have ruled.

FUT. rĕct**ūrūs** **essĕ**, to be about  
to rule.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rĕg**ens**, ruling.FUT. rĕct**ūrūs**, about to rule.

## GERUND.

Gen. rĕg**endī**, of ruling,Dat. rĕg**endō**, for ruling,Acc. rĕg**endūm**, ruling,Abl. rĕg**endō**, by ruling.

## SUPINE.

Acc. rĕct**ūm**, to rule,Abl. rĕct**ū**, to rule, be ruled.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

rēgōr,

Pres. Inf.

rēgī,

Perf. Ind.

rectūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am ruled.*

## SINGULAR.

rēgōr

rēgēris, or rē

rēgitūr;

## PLURAL.

rēgimūr

rēgimīnī

rēguntūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruled.*

rēgēbār

rēgēbāris, or rē

rēgēbātūr;

rēgēbāmūr

rēgēbāmīnī

rēgēbantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

rēgār

rēgēris, or rē

rēgētūr;

rēgēmūr

rēgēmīnī

rēgentūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was ruled.*rectūs sūm<sup>1</sup>

rectūs es

rectūs est;

rectī sūmūs

rectī estis

rectī sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*rectūs ērām<sup>1</sup>

rectūs ērās

rectūs ērāt;

rectī ērāmūs

rectī ērātis

rectī ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*rectūs ērō<sup>1</sup>

rectūs ēris

rectūs ērit;

rectī ērimūs

rectī ēritis

rectī ērunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgār	rēgāmūr
rēgārīs, or rē	rēgāmīnī
rēgātūr ;	rēgantūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

rēgērēr	rēgērēmūr
rēgērērīs, or rē	rēgērēmīnī
rēgērētūr ;	rēgērentūr.

## PERFECT.

*I may have been ruled.*

rectūs sīm <sup>1</sup>	rectī sīmūs
rectūs sīs	rectī sītīs
rectūs sīt ;	rectī sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

rectūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	rectī essēmūs
rectūs essēs	rectī essētīs
rectūs essēt ;	rectī essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, be thou ruled ;	rēgīmīnī, be ye ruled.
FUT. rēgītōr, thou shalt be ruled,	
rēgītōr, he shall be ruled ;	rēguntōr, they shall be ruled.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgī, to be ruled.	
PERF. rectūs essē <sup>1</sup> , to have been ruled.	PERF. rectūs, ruled.
FUT. rectūm irī, to be about to be ruled.	FUT. rēgendūs, to be ruled.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audi <b>ō</b> ,	audir <b>ě</b> ,	audiv <b>ī</b> ,	audit <b>ū</b> m.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I hear.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audi <b>ō</b>	audim <b>us</b>
audis	auditis
audit ;	audiunt.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing.*

audi <b>eb</b> ām	audi <b>eb</b> ām <b>us</b>
audi <b>eb</b> ās	audi <b>eb</b> ātis
audi <b>eb</b> āt ;	audi <b>eb</b> ant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*

audi <b>ā</b> m	audi <b>ē</b> m <b>us</b>
audi <b>ēs</b>	audi <b>ēt</b> is
audi <b>ēt</b> ;	audi <b>ent</b> .

## PERFECT.

*I heard or have heard.*

audiv <b>ī</b>	audiv <b>im</b> us
audiv <b>ist</b> ī	audiv <b>ist</b> is
audiv <b>it</b> ;	audiv <b>ēr</b> unt, or <b>ērē</b> .

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*

audiv <b>ēr</b> ām	audiv <b>ēr</b> ām <b>us</b>
audiv <b>ēr</b> ās	audiv <b>ēr</b> ātis
audiv <b>er</b> āt ;	audiv <b>ēr</b> ant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have heard.*

audiv <b>ēr</b> ō	audiv <b>ēr</b> im <b>us</b>
audiv <b>ēr</b> is	audiv <b>ēr</b> itis
audiv <b>er</b> it ;	audiv <b>ēr</b> int.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can hear.*

## SINGULAR.

aud*i*āmaud*i*āsaud*i*āt ;

## PLURAL.

aud*i*āmūsaud*i*ātīsaud*i*ant.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*aud*i*rēmaud*i*rēsaud*i*rēt ;aud*i*rēmūsaud*i*rētīsaud*i*rent.

## PERFECT.

*I may have heard.*aud*i*vērīmaud*i*vērīsaud*i*vērīt ;aud*i*vērīmūsaud*i*vērītīsaud*i*vērīnt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*aud*i*vissēmaud*i*vissēsaud*i*vissēt ;aud*i*vissēmūsaud*i*vissētīsaud*i*vissent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. aud*i*, hear thou ;aud*i*tē, hear ye.FUT. aud*i*tō, thou shalt hear,aud*i*tō, he shall hear ;aud*i*tōtē, ye shall hear,aud*i*untō, they shall hear.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. aud*i*rē, to hear.PRES. aud*i*ens, hearing.PERF. aud*i*vissē, to have heard.FUT. aud*i*tūrus essē, to be  
about to hear.FUT. aud*i*tūrus, about to hear.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen. aud*i*endi, of hearing.Dat. aud*i*endō, for hearing.Acc. aud*i*endūm, hearing.Abl. aud*i*endō, by hearing.Acc. aud*i*tūm, to hear.Abl. aud*i*tū, to hear, be heard.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiōr,	audiri,	auditus sum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am heard.*

## SINGULAR.

audiōr  
audiōris, or rē  
audītūr ;

## PLURAL.

audimūr  
audimīnī  
audiuntūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*

audiēbār  
audiēbāris, or rē  
audiēbātūr ;

audiēbāmūr  
audiēbāmīnī  
audiēbantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*

audiār  
audiēris, or rē  
audiētūr ;

audiēmūr  
audiēmīnī  
audiēntūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been heard.*

auditus sum<sup>1</sup>  
auditus es  
auditus est ;

auditi sumus  
auditi estis  
auditi sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

auditus eram<sup>1</sup>  
auditus eras  
auditus erat ;

auditi erāmus  
auditi erātis  
auditi erant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*

auditus erō<sup>1</sup>  
auditus eris  
auditus erit ;

auditi erimūs  
auditi eritis  
auditi erunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be heard.*

## SINGULAR.

**audiār**  
**audiārīs, or rē**  
**audiātūr ;**

## PLURAL.

**audiāmūr**  
**audiāmīnī**  
**audiantūr.**

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

**audīrēr**  
**audīrērīs, or rē**  
**audīrētūr ;**

**audīrēmūr**  
**audīrēmīnī**  
**audīrentūr.**

## PERFECT.

*I may have been heard.*

**auditūs sīm<sup>1</sup>**  
**auditūs sīs**  
**auditūs sīt ;**

**auditī sīmūs**  
**auditī sītīs**  
**auditī sint.**

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

**auditūs essēm<sup>1</sup>**  
**auditūs essēs**  
**auditūs essēt ;**

**auditī essēmūs**  
**auditī essētīs**  
**auditī essent.**

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. **audīrē,** *be thou heard ;* | **audīmīnī,** *be ye heard.*

FUT. **auditōr,** *thou shalt be heard,* | **audiuntōr,** *they shall be heard.*  
**auditōr,** *he shall be heard ;*

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. **audīrī,** *to be heard.*

PERF. **auditūs essē<sup>1</sup>,** *to have been heard.*

FUT. **auditūm irī,** *to be about to be heard.*

PERF. **auditūs,** *heard.*

FUT. **audiendūs,** *to be heard.*

---

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.

## VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation, and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows:

## ACTIVE VOICE.

214. *Capio, I take.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
cāpiō,	cāpērē,	cēpi,	captūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

cāpiō, cāpis, cāpit;

## PLURAL.

| cāpimūs, cāpitīs, cāpiunt.

## IMPERFECT.

cāpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt;

| cāpiēbāmūs, -iēbātīs, -iēbant.

## FUTURE.

cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;

| cāpiēmūs, -ietīs, -ient.

## PERFECT.

cēpi, -istī, -it;

| cēpimūs, -istīs, -erunt, or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt;

| cēpērāmūs, -ērātīs, -erant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

cēpērō, -ērīs, -ērīt;

| cēpērīmūs, -ērītīs, -erint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

cāpiām, -iās, -iāt;

| cāpiāmūs, -iātīs, -iant.

## IMPERFECT.

cāpērēm, -ērēs, -ērēt;

| cāpērēmūs, -ērētīs, -erent.

## PERFECT.

cēpērīm, -ērīs, -ērīt;

| cēpērīmūs, -ērītīs, -erint.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt;

| cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.

## IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
PRES. cǎpě ;		cǎpītě.
FUT. cǎpītō,		cǎpītōtě,
cǎpītō ;		cǎpiuntō.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. cǎpěřě.		PRES. cǎpiens.
PERF. cǎpissě.		
FUT. captūrūs essě.		FUT. captūrūs.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen. cǎpiendī.		
Dat. cǎpiendō.		
Acc. cǎpiendūm.		Acc. captūm.
Abl. cǎpiendō.		Abl. captū.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
cǎpiōr,	cǎpī,	captūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

cǎpiōr, cǎpěris, cǎpītūr ;		cǎpīmūr, cǎpīmīnī, cǎpiuntūr.
----------------------------	--	-------------------------------

## IMPERFECT.

cǎpiebār, -iebārīs, -iebātūr ;		cǎpiebāmūr, -iebāmīnī, -iebantūr.
--------------------------------	--	-----------------------------------

## FUTURE.

cǎpiār, -ierīs, -ietūr ;		cǎpiēmūr, -iemīnī, -ientur.
--------------------------	--	-----------------------------

## PERFECT.

captūs sūm, ēs, est ;		captī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.
-----------------------	--	---------------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

captūs ērām, ērās, ērāt ;		captī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant.
---------------------------	--	------------------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

captūs ērō, ērīs, ērīt ;		captī ērīmūs, ērītīs, ērunt.
--------------------------	--	------------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

căpiăr, -iărīs, -iătūr;

## PLURAL.

| căpiāmūr, -iāmīnī, -iantūr.

## IMPERFECT.

căpērēr, -ērērīs, -ērētūr;

| căpērēmūr, -ērēmīnī, -ērentūr.

## PERFECT.

captūs sīm, sīs, sīt;

| captī sīmūs, sītīs, sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;

| captī essēmūs, essētīs, essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. căpērē;

| căpīmīnī.

FUT. căpītōr,

căpītōr;

| căpiuntōr.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. căpī.

PERF. captūs essē.

| PERF. captūs.

FUT. captūm irī.

| FUT. căpiendūs.

## SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

## 216. FIRST CONJUGATION.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

ămō, ămărē, ămāvī, ămătūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.<sup>1</sup>

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> ămō	ămēm	ămā	ămărē	ămans.
<i>Imp.</i> ămābām	ămārēm			
<i>Fut.</i> ămābō		ămătō	ămătūrūs essē	ămătūrūs.
<i>Perf.</i> ămāvī	ămāvērīm		ămāvissē	
<i>Plup.</i> ămāvērām	ămāvissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> ămāvērō				

*Gerund*, ămandī, dō, etc. *Supine*, ămătūm, ū.

<sup>1</sup> These tables, it will be observed, are so arranged as to exhibit not only the synopsis of each mood through the different tenses, as, *INDIC. amo, amābam*, etc., but also the synopsis of each tense through the different moods, as, *PRES. amo, amem, ama*, etc. The pupil should make himself so familiar with the verbs, as they occur in his reading lessons, as to be able to give the synopsis of any mood through all the tenses, or of any tense through all the moods.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

ămōr, ămāri, ămātūs sūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> ămōr	ămēr	ămārē	ămārī	
<i>Imp.</i> ămābār	ămārēr			
<i>Fut.</i> ămābōr		ămātōr	ămātūm irī	ămandūs.
<i>Perf.</i> ămātūs sūm	ămātūs sīm		ămātūs essē	ămātūs.
<i>Plup.</i> ămātūs ērām	ămātūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> ămātūs ērō				

## 217. SECOND CONJUGATION.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> mōneō	mōneām	mōnē	mōnērē	mōnens.
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbām	mōnērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbō		mōnētō	mōnītūrūs essē	mōnītūrūs.
<i>Perf.</i> mōnuī	mōnuērīm		mōnuissē	
<i>Plup.</i> mōnuērām	mōnuissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> mōnuērō				

*Gerund*, mōnendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, mōnītūm, ū.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneor, mōnērī, mōnītūs sūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> mōneor	mōneār	mōnērē	mōnērī	
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbār	mōnērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbōr		mōnētōr	mōnītūm irī	mōnendūs.
<i>Perf.</i> mōnītūs sūm	mōnītūs sīm		mōnītūs essē	mōnītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> mōnītūs ērām	mōnītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> mōnītūs ērō				

## 218. THIRD CONJUGATION.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> rēgō	rēgām	rēgē	rēgērē	rēgens.
<i>Imp.</i> rēgēbām	rēgērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> rēgām		rēgītō	rectūrūs essē	rectūrūs.
<i>Perf.</i> rexī	rexērīm		rexissē	
<i>Plup.</i> rexērām	rexissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> rexērō				

*Gerund*, regendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, rectūm, ū.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgōr, rēgī, rectūs sūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> rēgōr	rēgār	rēgērē	rēgī	
<i>Imp.</i> rēgēbār	rēgērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> rēgār		rēgītōr	rectūm īrī	rēgendūs.
<i>Perf.</i> rectūs sūm	rectūs sīm		rectūs essē	rectūs.
<i>Plup.</i> rectūs ērām	rectūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> rectūs ērō				

## 219. VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpī, captūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> cāpiō	cāpiām	cāpē	cāpērē	cāpiens.
<i>Imp.</i> cāpiēbām	cāpērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> cāpiām		cāpītō	captūrūs essē	cāptūrūs.
<i>Perf.</i> cēpī	cēpērīm		cēpissē	
<i>Plup.</i> cēpērām	cēpissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> cēpērō				

*Gerund*, cāpiendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, captūm, ū.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

cāpiōr,      cāpī,      captūs sūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	cāpiōr	cāpiār	cāpērē	cāpī	cāpiendūs. captūs.
<i>Imp.</i>	cāpiebār	cāpērēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	cāpiār		cāpītōr	captūm irī	
<i>Perf.</i>	captūs sūm	captūs sīm		captūs essē	
<i>Plup.</i>	captūs ērām	captūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	captūs ērō				

## 220. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiō,      audirē,      audivī,      auditūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i>	audiō	audiām	audi	audirē	audiens.
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbām	audirēm			auditūrūs.
<i>Fut.</i>	audiām		auditō	auditūrūs essē	
<i>Perf.</i>	audivī	audivērīm		audivissē	
<i>Plup.</i>	audivērām	audivissēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	audivērō				

*Gerund*, audiendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, auditūm, ū.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiōr,      audirī,      auditūs sūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i>	audiōr	audiār	audirē	audirī	audiendūs. auditūs.
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbār	audirēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiār		auditōr	auditūm irī	
<i>Perf.</i>	auditūs sūm	auditūs sīm		auditūs essē	
<i>Plup.</i>	auditūs ērām	auditūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	auditūs ērō				

## DEPONENT VERBS.

221. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The Future passive participle generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect passive; *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

## SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### 222. Hortor, *I exhort.*

##### I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortör, hortārī, hortātūs sūm.

##### II. MOODS AND TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	hortör <sup>1</sup>	hortēr	hortārē	hortārī	hortans.
<i>Imp.</i>	hortābār	hortārēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	hortābōr		hortātōr	hortātūrūs essē	{ hortātūrūs. hortandūs. hortātūs.
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātūs sūm	hortātūs sīm		hortātūs essē	
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātūs ērām	hortātūsessēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	hortātūs ērō				

*Gerund*, hortandī, dō, etc. *Supine*, hortātūm, ū.

### SECOND CONJUGATION.

#### 223. Vereor, *I fear.*

##### I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

vēreōr, vērerī, vēritūs sūm.

##### II. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> vēreōr	vēreār	vērērē	vērērī	vērens.
<i>Imp.</i> vērebār	vērērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> vērebōr		vērētōr	vērītūrūs essē	{ vēritūrūs. vērendūs. vēritūs.
<i>Perf.</i> vēritūs sūm	vērītūs sīm		vērītūs esse	
<i>Plup.</i> vēritūs ērām	vērītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> vēritūs ērō				

*Gerund*, vērendī, dō. *Supine*, vēritūm, ū.

<sup>1</sup> The tenses are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers; *hortör*, *hortārīs*, *hortātūr*, *hortāmūr*, *hortāminī*, *hortantūr*.

All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort*, *I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Part. in dūs*, which has the passive force, *about to be exhorted*, *to be exhorted*. From its passive force this *Part.* cannot be used in intransitive *Dep.* verbs, except in an impersonal sense. See 301, 2 and 3.



## THIRD CONJUGATION.

224. Sequor, *I follow*.

## I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

sēquōr,                      sēquī,                      sēcūtūs sūm.

## II. MOODS AND TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	sēquōr	sēquār	sēquērē	sēquī	sēquens.
<i>Imp.</i>	sēquēbār	sēquērēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	sēquār		sēquitōr	sēcūtūrūs essē	{ sēcūtūrūs. sēcūendūs.
<i>Perf.</i>	sēcūtūs sūm	sēcūtūs sīm		sēcūtūs essē	sēcūtūs.
<i>Plup.</i>	sēcūtūs ērām	sēcūtūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	sēcūtūs ērō				

*Gerund*, sēcūendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, sēcūtūm, ū.

225. Patior, *I suffer*.

## I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

pātiōr,                      pāti,                      passūs sūm.

## II. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i>	pātiōr	pātiār	pātērē	pāti	pātiens.
<i>Imp.</i>	pātiēbār	pātērēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	pātiār		pātitōr	passūrūs essē	{ passūrūs. pātiendūs.
<i>Perf.</i>	passūs sūm	passūs sīm		passūs essē	passūs.
<i>Plup.</i>	passūs ērām	passūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	passūs ērō				

*Gerund*, pātiendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, passūm, ū.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

226. Blandiōr, *I flatter*.

## I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

blandiōr,                      blandirī,                      blandītūs sūm.

## II. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i>	blandiōr	blandiār	blandirē	blandirī	blandiens.
<i>Imp.</i>	blandiēbār	blandirēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	blandiār		blandi- tōr	blandītūrūs es- sē	{ blandītūrūs blandiendūs
<i>Perf.</i>	blandītūs sūm	blandītūs sīm		blandītūs essē	blandītūs.
<i>Plup.</i>	blandītūs ērām	blandītūs es- sēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	blandītūs ērō				

*Gerund*, blandiendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, blanditūm, ū.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

227. The Latin has also two Periphrastic conjugations, formed respectively from the two regular future participles combined with the various tenses of the auxiliary *sum*.

228. The First or Active Periphrastic conjugation, compounded of the Future Active participle and *sum*, expresses an intended or future action or state: *amatūrus sum*, I am about to love; *monitūrus sum*, I am about to advise.

229. The Second or Passive Periphrastic conjugation, compounded of the Future Passive participle and *sum*, expresses necessity or duty: *amandus sum*, I must be loved.

## I. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

230. *Amatūrus sum, I am about to love.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	āmātūrūs sūm <sup>1</sup>	āmātūrūs sūa	āmātūrūs essē.
<i>Imp.</i>	āmātūrūs ērīm	āmātūrūs essēm	
<i>Fut.</i>	āmātūrūs ērō		
<i>Perf.</i>	āmātūrūs fuī	āmātūrūs fuērīm	āmātūrūs fuissē.
<i>Plup.</i>	āmātūrūs fuērām	āmātūrūs fuissēm	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	āmātūrūs fuērō <sup>1</sup>		

## II. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

231. *Amandus sum, I must be loved.*<sup>2</sup>

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	āmandūs sūm	āmandūs sūm	āmandūs essē.
<i>Imp.</i>	āmandūs ērām	āmandūs essēm	
<i>Fut.</i>	āmandūs ērō		
<i>Perf.</i>	āmandūs fuī	āmandūs fuērīm	āmandūs fuissē.
<i>Plup.</i>	āmandūs fuērām	āmandūs fuissēm	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	āmandūs fuērō		

232. The Periphrastic Conjugation, in the widest sense of the term, includes all forms compounded of participles with *sum*: *amans est*, he is loving; *amatūrus est*, he is about to love; *amatus est*, he has been loved; *amandus est*, he is to be loved, or must be loved. But as the Pres. Part. with *sum* is equivalent to the Pres. Ind. (*amans est* = *amat*), and is accordingly seldom used, and as the Perf. Part. with *sum* is, in the strictest sense, an integral part of the regular conjugation, the term *Periphrastic* is generally limited to the two conjugations above given.

233. The First Periphrastic conjugation may be formed from either transitive or intransitive verbs; the Second from transitive verbs only, except in an impersonal sense. See 301. 2.

<sup>1</sup> The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *amatūrus sum, es, est*. The Fut. Perf. is exceedingly rare.

<sup>2</sup> Or, *I deserve* (ought) *to be loved*.

## CONTRACTIONS AND PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION.

**234.** Perfects in *āvi*, *ēvi*, *īvi*, and the tenses derived from them, sometimes drop *v* and suffer contraction before *s* and *r*. Thus

**A-i** and **a-e** become *ā*: *amavisti* (*amaisti*), *amasti*; *amavēram* (*amacram*), *amāram*; *amavisse* (*amaisse*), *amasse*.

**E-i** and **e-e** become *ē*: *nēvi* (to spin), *nevisti* (*neisti*), *nesti*; *nevērunt*, (*neerunt*), *nērunt*.

**I-i** becomes *ī*: *audivisti* (*audiisti*), *audisti*; *audivissem* (*audiissem*), *audissem*.

1. Perfects in *īvi* sometimes drop *v* in any of their forms, but generally without contraction, except before *s*: *audīvi*, *audīi*, *audīit*, *audīēram*; *audīvisti*, *audīisti* or *audīsti*.

2. Perfects in *ōvi*.—The perfect of *nosco*, to know, and *mōveo*, to move, sometimes drops *v* and suffers contraction before *r* and *s*: *novisti*, *nostī*.

3. Perfects in *si* and *xi* sometimes drop *is*, *iss*, or *sis*: *scripsisti*, *scripsisti*; *dixisse*, *dixē*; *accessistis*, *accestitis*.

**235.** *Erē* for *ērunt*, as the ending of the third Pers. Pl. of the Perf. Ind. Act., is common in the historians.

The form in *ēre* does not drop *v*. In poetry *ērunt* occurs.

**236.** *Re* for *ris* in the ending of the second Pers. of the Pass. is rare in the Pres. Indic.

**237.** *Dic*, *duc*, *fac*, and *fer*, for *dice*, *dūce*, *fūce*, and *fēre*, are the Imperatives of *dico*, *duco*, *facio*, and *fero*, to say, lead, make, and bear.

1. *Dice*, *dūce*, and *fūce* occur in poetry.

2. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *facio* which change *a* into *i*: *confīce*.

**238.** *Undus* and *undi* for *endus* and *endi* occur as the endings of the Fut. Pass. Part. and of the Gerund of Conj. III. and IV.: *dicundus* from *dico*, to say; *pōtiundus*, from *pōtior*, to obtain.

**239.** ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS.—Various other forms, belonging in the main to the earlier Latin, occur in the poets, even of the classical period, and occasionally also in prose, to impart to the style an air of antiquity or solemnity. Thus forms in

1. *ībam* for *iēbam*, in the Imp. Ind. of Conj. IV.: *scībam* for *sciēbam*. See Imp. of *eo*, to go, 295.

2. *ībo*, *ībor*, for *iam*, *iar*, in the Fut. of Conj. IV.: *scrībō* for *serviam*; *opperībō* for *opperiar*. See Fut. of *eo*, 295.

3. *im* for *am* or *em*, in the Pres. Subj.: *edim*, *edis*, etc., for *edam*, *as*, etc.; *duim* (from *duo*, for *do*), for *dem*.—In *sim*, *velim*, *nolim*, *malim* (204 and 293), *im* is the common ending.

4. *asso*, *esso*, and *so*, in the Fut. Perf., and *assim*, *essim*, and *sim*, in the Perf. Subj. of Conj. I. II. III. : *fazo* (facso) for *fecĕro* (from *facio*) ; *faxim* for *fecĕrim* ; *ausim*, for *ausus sim* (for *ausĕrim*, from *audeo*). Rare examples are : *levasso* for *levavĕro* ; *prohibesso* for *prohibuĕro* ; *capso* for *cepĕro* ; *axo* for *egĕro* ; *jusso* for *jussĕro* ; *occisit* for *occiderit* ; *taxis* for *tetigĕris*.

5. *to* and *mĭno* for *tor*, the former in both numbers, the latter in the singular of the Fut. Imp. Pass. and Dep. : *arbitrĕto*, *arbitramĭno* for *arbitrĕtor* ; *utunto* for *utuntor*.

6. *ier* for *i* in the Pres. Pass. Infin. : *amarier* for *amĕri* ; *viderier* for *vidĕri*.

## FORMATION OF THE VARIOUS PARTS OF THE VERB.

240. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that the Principal Parts are formed in the four conjugations with the following endings :<sup>1</sup>

I.	o,	āre,	āvi,	ātum.
II.	1. <i>In a few verbs :</i>			
	eo,	ēre,	ēvi,	ētum.
	2. <i>In most verbs :</i>			
	eo,	ēre,	ui,	ītum.
III.	1. <i>In consonant stems :</i>			
	o,	ēre,	si,	tum.
	2. <i>In vowel stems :</i>			
	o,	ēre,	i,	tum.
IV.	io,	īre,	īvi,	ītum.

### EXAMPLES.

I.	Amo,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum,	to love.
II.	1. Deleo,	delēre,	delēvī,	delētum,	to destroy.
	2. Moneo,	monēre,	monuī,	monitum,	to advise.
III.	1. Carpo,	carpēre,	carpsi,	carptum,	to pluck.
	2. Acuo,	acuēre,	acui,	acūtum,	to sharpen.
IV.	Audio,	audire,	audivi,	audītum,	to hear.

241. ENTIRE CONJUGATION.—Again, from an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that all the forms of any regular verb, through all the moods and tenses of both voices, arrange themselves in three distinct groups or systems of forms :

<sup>1</sup> The forms in *ĕvi* and *ĕtum* of Conj. II. do not occur in the paradigms given above, but belong to the regular forms of those conjugations. For a fuller statement of the formation of the *Principal Parts with Exceptions*, see 246-260.

I. The PRESENT SYSTEM, with the Present Infinitive as its basis, comprises

1. The *Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative*—Active and Passive.
2. The *Present and Imperfect Subjunctive*—Active and Passive.
3. The *Imperative*—Active and Passive.
4. The *Present Infinitive*—Active and Passive.
5. The *Present Active and Future Passive Participle*.
6. The *Gerund*.

These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem*, found in the Present Infinitive of the several conjugations, by dropping the endings—*āre, ēre, ĕre, ĭre* of the Active, or—*ārī, ērī, ĭ, ĭrī*, of the Passive: *amāre*, present stem, AM; *monēre*, MON; *regēre*, REG; *audire*, AUD.

II. The PERFECT SYSTEM, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, comprises in the Active voice

1. The *Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative*.
2. The *Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive*.
3. The *Perfect Infinitive*.

These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem*, found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping *i*; *amāvi*, perfect stem AMAV; *monui*, MONU.

III. The SUPINE SYSTEM, with the Supine as its basis, comprises

1. The *Supines* in *um* and *u*, the former of which with *iri* forms the *Future Infinitive Passive*.
2. The *Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles*, the former of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive*, and the latter of which with the proper parts of the auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active belong to the *Perfect System*.

These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem*, found in the Supine by dropping *um*: *amātum*, supine stem, AMAT; *monitum*, MONIT.

242. VERB STEM.—The true basis of all verbal inflections is the *Verb Stem*; but this is generally identical with the Present Stem. Accordingly in nearly all verbs the Present Stem is also the Verb Stem. Thus AM, the Present Stem of *amo*, is also its Verb Stem.

1. In a few verbs the Present Stem has assumed one or more letters not found in the Verb Stem. Thus in *fundo*, *vinco*, the Verb Stems are *fud*, *vic*, but the Present Stems are *fund*, *vinc*, strengthened by assuming *n*.

2. We add the following table of verbal inflections.

# TABLE OF PRESENT SYSTEM.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

ām	-ō	-ās,	-āt ;	-āmūs,	-ātīs,	-ant.
mōn	-eō,	-ēs,	-ēt ;	-ēmūs,	-ētīs,	-ent.
rēg	-ō	-īs,	-īt ;	-īmūs,	-ītīs,	-unt.
aud	-iō,	-īs,	-īt ;	-imūs,	-ītīs,	-iunt.

#### IMPERFECT.

ām	-ābām,	-ābās,	-ābāt ;	-ābāmūs,	-ābātīs,	-ābant.
mōn	-ēbām,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt ;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbātīs,	-ēbant.
rēg	-ēbām,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt ;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbātīs,	-ēbant.
aud	-iēbām,	-iēbās,	-iēbāt ;	-iēbāmūs,	-iēbātīs,	-iēbant.

#### FUTURE.

ām	-ābō,	-ābīs,	-ābīt ;	-ābīmūs,	-ābītīs,	-ābunt.
mōn	-ēbō,	-ēbīs,	-ēbīt ;	-ēbīmūs,	-ēbītīs,	-ēbunt.
rēg	-ām,	-ēs,	-ēt ;	-ēmūs,	-ētīs,	-ent.
aud	-iām,	-iēs,	-iēt ;	-iēmūs,	-iētīs,	-ient.

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### PRESENT.

ām	-ēm,	-ēs,	-ēt ;	-ēmūs,	-ētīs,	-ent.
mōn	-eām,	-eās,	-eāt ;	-eāmūs,	-eātīs,	-eant.
rēg	-ām,	-ās,	-āt ;	-āmūs,	-ātīs,	-ant.
aud	-iām,	-iās,	-iāt ;	-iāmūs,	-iātīs,	-iant.

#### IMPERFECT.

ām	-ārēm,	-ārēs,	-ārēt ;	-ārēmūs,	-ārētīs,	-ārent.
mōn	-ērēm,	-ērēs,	-ērēt ;	-ērēmūs,	-ērētīs,	-ērent.
rēg	-ērēm,	-ērēs,	-ērēt ;	-ērēmūs,	-ērētīs,	-ērent.
aud	-irēm,	-irēs,	-irēt ;	-irēmūs,	-irētīs,	-irent.

### IMPERATIVE.

#### PRESENT.

	SING.	PLUR.
ām	-ā,	-ātē ;
mōn	-ē,	-ētē ;
rēg	-ē,	-itē ;
aud	-i,	-itē ;

#### FUTURE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ām	-ātō,	-ātōtē,
mōn	-ētō,	-ētōtē,
rēg	-itō,	-itōtē,
aud	-itō,	-iuntō.

#### PRES. INFINITIVE.

ām	-ārē ;
mōn	-ērē ;
rēg	-ērē ;
aud	-irē ;

#### PARTICIPLE.

-ans ;
-ens ;
-ens ;
-iens ;

#### GERUND.

-andi.
-endi.
-endi.
-iendi.

Verbs in *io* of Conj. III. have certain endings of Conj. IV. See 213.

## VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

## PRESENT SYSTEM.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

ăm	-ör,	-ăris or ärē,	-ătūr;	-ămūr,	-ămīnī,	-antūr.
mön	-eör,	-ērīs or ērē,	-ētūr;	-ēmūr,	-ēmīnī,	-entūr.
rēg	-ör,	-ērīs or ērē,	-ītūr;	-īmūr,	-īmīnī,	-untūr.
aud	-iör,	-irīs or irē,	-itūr;	-imūr,	-imīnī,	-iuntūr.

## IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ābăr,	-ābāris or ābārē,	-ābātūr;	-ābāmūr,	-ābāmīnī,	-ābantūr.
mön	-ēbăr,	-ēbāris or ēbārē,	-ēbātūr;	-ēbāmūr,	-ēbāmīnī,	-ēbantūr.
rēg	-ēbăr,	-ēbāris or ēbārē,	-ēbātūr;	-ēbāmūr,	-ēbāmīnī,	-ēbantūr.
aud	-iēbăr,	-iēbāris or iēbārē,	-iēbātūr;	-iēbāmūr,	-iēbāmīnī,	-iēbantūr.

## FUTURE.

ăm	-ābör,	-ābērīs or ābērē,	-ābītūr;	-ābīmūr,	-ābīmīnī,	-ābuntūr.
mön	-ēbör,	-ēbērīs or ēbērē,	-ēbītūr;	-ēbīmūr,	-ēbīmīnī,	-ēbuntūr.
rēg	-ār,	-ērīs or ērē,	-ētūr;	-ēmūr,	-ēmīnī,	-entūr.
aud	-iār,	-irīs or irē,	-iētūr;	-iēmūr,	-iēmīnī,	-ientūr.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

ăm	-ēr,	-ērīs or ērē,	-ētūr;	-ēmūr,	-ēmīnī,	-entūr.
mön	-eär,	-eāris or eārē,	-eātūr;	-eāmūr,	-eāmīnī,	-eantūr.
rēg	-ār,	-āris or ärē,	-ātūr;	-āmūr,	-āmīnī,	-antūr.
aud	-iär,	-iāris or iārē,	-iātūr;	-iāmūr,	-iāmīnī,	-iantūr.

## IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ārēr,	-ārērīs or ārērē,	-ārētūr;	-ārēmūr,	-ārēmīnī,	-ārentūr.
mön	-ērēr,	-ērērīs or ērērē,	-ērētūr;	-ērēmūr,	-ērēmīnī,	-ērentūr.
rēg	-ērēr,	-ērērīs or ērērē,	-ērētūr;	-ērēmūr,	-ērēmīnī,	-ērentūr.
aud	-irēr,	-irērīs or irērē,	-irētūr;	-irēmūr,	-irēmīnī,	-irentūr.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

SING.	PLUR.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ăm	-ārē,	-ātör,	— antör.
mön	-ērē,	-ētör,	— entör.
rēg	-ērē,	-ītör,	— untör.
aud	-irē,	-itör,	— iuntör.

## PRES. INFINITIVE.

## FUT. PARTICIPLE.

ăm	-ārī;	-andūs.
mön	-ērī;	-endūs.
rēg	-ī;	-endūs.
aud	-irī;	-iendūs.

# TABLE OF PERFECT SYSTEM.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-ī,	-istī,	-īt ;	-īmūs,	-istīs,	-ērunt, -ēre.
------------------------------	-----	--------	-------	--------	---------	---------------

#### PLUPERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-ērām,	-ērās,	-ērāt ;	-ērāmūs,	-ērātīs,	-ērant.
------------------------------	--------	--------	---------	----------	----------	---------

#### FUTURE PERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-ērō,	-ērīs,	-ērīt ;	-ērīmūs,	-ērītīs,	-ērint.
------------------------------	-------	--------	---------	----------	----------	---------

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### PERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-ērīm,	-ērīs,	-ērīt ;	-ērīmūs,	-ērītīs,	-ērint.
------------------------------	--------	--------	---------	----------	----------	---------

#### PLUPERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-issēm,	-issēs,	-issēt ;	-issēmūs,	-issētīs,	-issent.
------------------------------	---------	---------	----------	-----------	-----------	----------

#### INFINITIVE PERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-issē.
------------------------------	--------

### SUPINE SYSTEM.

INFINITIVE FUT.	PART. FUT.	SUPINE.
ămāt mōnīt rect audīt	-ūrūs essē.	-ūrūs.
		-ūm, -ū.



## VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

## SUPINE SYSTEM.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs <sup>1</sup>					
mônît	-ūs	sūm,	ēs,	est;	sūmūs,	estīs,
rect	-ūs					sunt.
audit	-ūs					

## PLUPERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mônît	-ūs	ērām,	ērās,	ērāt;	ērāmūs,	ērātīs,
rect	-ūs					ērant.
audit	-ūs					

## FUTURE PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mônît	-ūs	ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt;	ērīmūs,	ērītīs,
rect	-ūs					ērunt.
audit	-ūs					

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mônît	-ūs	sīm,	sīs,	sīt;	sīmūs,	sītīs,
rect	-ūs					sint.
audit	-ūs					

## PLUPERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mônît	-ūs	essēm,	essēs,	essēt;	essēmūs,	essētīs,
rect	-ūs					essent.
audit	-ūs					

## INFINITIVE PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs	
mônît	-ūs	
rect	-ūs	essē.
audit	-ūs	

## INFINITIVE FUT.

ămăt	
mônît	
rect	-ūm irī.
audit	

## PART. PERF.

ămăt	
mônît	
rect	-ūs.
audit	

---

<sup>1</sup> In the plural, -us becomes -i: -i sumus, etc.

## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

243. The Four Conjugations, it will be seen from this table, differ from each other only in the formation of the *Principal Parts* and in the endings of the *Present System*.

244. But by a close analysis it will be found

1. That even these differences in a great measure disappear, and that the four conjugations become only varieties of one general system of conjugation.

2. That these varieties have been produced by the union of different final letters in the various stems with one general system of endings.

245. According to this analysis

1. The stems in the four conjugations end in the following letters:

I.	II.	III.	IV.
a,	e,	consonant or u, <sup>1</sup>	i.

2. The general endings are

1) *For Principal Parts*:

o,	ĕre,	si (i), vi,	tum.
----	------	-------------	------

2) *For Other Parts*:—the endings given above for the third conjugation, but in the Future, *bo* and *bor* are regular endings as well as *am* and *ar*, and in the Infinitive Passive, *ĕri* as well as *i*.

3. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems may be seen in the following

## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

I.	{ <i>Ama-o</i> Amo, <sup>2</sup>	<i>ama-ĕre</i> amāre,	<i>ama-vi</i> amāvi,	<i>ama-tum</i> amātum.
II.	{ <i>Mone-o</i> Monco,	<i>mone-ĕre</i> monĕre,	{ <i>mone-vi</i> <i>mon-vi</i> monui,	<i>mone-tum</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>mon-tum</i> monitum. <sup>4</sup>
III.	{ <i>Reg-o</i> Rego,	<i>reg-ĕre</i> regĕre,	<i>reg-si</i> rexī,	<i>reg-tum</i> rectum.
IV.	{ <i>Audi-o</i> Audio,	<i>audi-ĕre</i> audire,	<i>audi-vi</i> audīvi,	<i>audi-tum</i> auditum.

<sup>1</sup> Rarely o.

<sup>2</sup> By contraction: *ama-o* = *amo*.

<sup>3</sup> Like *deleo*, *delĕre*, *delĕvi*, *delētum*. See 240. II.

<sup>4</sup> For changes see 247. 1.

PRESENT SYSTEM.—*Active Voice.*<sup>1</sup>

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
1.	{ <i>ama-o</i> amo	{ <i>mone-o</i> moneo	{ <i>reg-o</i> rego	{ <i>audi-o</i> audio
2.	{ <i>ama-is</i> amās	{ <i>mone-is</i> monēs	{ <i>reg-is</i> regis	{ <i>audi-is</i> audīs
3.	{ <i>ama-it</i> amat	{ <i>mone-it</i> monet	{ <i>reg-it</i> regit	{ <i>audi-it</i> audit
1.	{ <i>ama-īmus</i> amāmus	{ <i>mone-īmus</i> monēmus	{ <i>reg-īmus</i> regimus	{ <i>audi-īmus</i> audimus
2.	{ <i>ama-ītis</i> amātis	{ <i>mone-ītis</i> monētis	{ <i>reg-ītis</i> regitis	{ <i>audi-ītis</i> auditis
3.	{ <i>ama-unt</i> amant.	{ <i>mone-unt</i> monent.	{ <i>reg-unt</i> regunt.	{ <i>audi-unt</i> audiunt.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>ama-ēbam</i> amābam.	<i>mone-ēbam</i> monēbam.	<i>reg-ēbam</i> regēbam.	<i>audi-ēbam</i> audiebam.
----------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------

## FUTURE.

<i>ama-ēbo</i> amābo.	<i>mone-ēbo</i> monēbo.	<i>reg-am</i> regam.	<i>audi-am</i> audiam.
--------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>ama-am</i> amem. <sup>2</sup>	<i>mone-am</i> moneam.	<i>reg-am</i> regam.	<i>audi-am</i> audiam.
-------------------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------

## IMPERFECT.

<i>ama-ērem</i> amārem	<i>mone-ērem</i> monērem.	<i>reg-ērem</i> regērem.	<i>audi-ērem</i> audirem.
---------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

S.	{ <i>ama-e</i> ama	{ <i>mone-e</i> mone	{ <i>reg-e</i> rege	{ <i>audi-e</i> audi
P.	{ <i>ama-īte</i> amāte.	{ <i>mone-īte</i> monēte.	{ <i>reg-īte</i> regite.	{ <i>audi-īte</i> audite.

<sup>1</sup> The Passive has the same changes as the Active: *ama-or* = *amor*; *ama-ēris* = *amāris*; *mone-ēris* = *monēris*; *audi-ēris* = *audiris*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> A changed to e, so throughout; *ama-as* = *ames*, etc.

## FUTURE.

2 S.	{ <i>ama-ĭto</i> <i>amāto</i>	{ <i>mone-ĭto</i> <i>monĕto</i>	{ <i>reg-ĭto</i> <i>regĭto</i>	{ <i>audi-ĭto</i> <i>audito</i>
3 S.	{ <i>ama-ĭto</i> <i>amāto</i>	{ <i>mone-ĭto</i> <i>monĕto</i>	{ <i>reg-ĭto</i> <i>regĭto</i>	{ <i>audi-ĭto</i> <i>audito</i>
2 P.	{ <i>ama-ĭtōte</i> <i>amatōte</i>	{ <i>mone-ĭtōte</i> <i>monĕtōte</i>	{ <i>reg-ĭtōte</i> <i>regĭtōte</i>	{ <i>audi-ĭtōte</i> <i>auditōte</i>
3 P.	{ <i>ama-unto</i> <i>amanto.</i>	{ <i>mone-unto</i> <i>monento.</i>	{ <i>reg-unto</i> <i>regunto.</i>	{ <i>audi-unto</i> <i>audiunto.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>ama-ĕre</i> <i>amāre.</i>	{ <i>mone-ĕre</i> <i>monĕre.</i>	{ <i>reg-ĕre</i> <i>regĕre.</i>	{ <i>audi-ĕre</i> <i>audire.</i>
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

<i>ama-ens</i> <i>amans.</i>	{ <i>mone-ens</i> <i>monens.</i>	{ <i>reg-ens</i> <i>regens.</i>	{ <i>audi-ens</i> <i>audiens.</i>
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

## GERUND.

<i>ama-cndi</i> <i>amandi.</i>	{ <i>mone-cndi</i> <i>monendi.</i>	{ <i>reg-cndi</i> <i>regendi.</i>	{ <i>audi-cndi</i> <i>audiendi.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--

## FORMATION OF PRINCIPAL PARTS.

246. The general rule for obtaining these forms has already been given (240), but as they are the basis of all verbal inflections, a fuller treatment of the subject is desirable. We notice

*I. Regular Formations.**II. Irregular Formations.*

## I. REGULAR FORMATIONS.

247. The Principal Parts of verbs in the four conjugations are formed with the following endings:<sup>1</sup>

I.	o,	āre,	āvi,	ātum.
II.	{ 1. In a few verbs :			
	eo,	ĕre,	ēvi,	ētum.
	{ 2. In most verbs :			
	eo,	ĕre,	ui,	ītum.
III.	{ 1. In consonant stems :			
	o,	ĕre,	si,	tum.
	{ 2. In vowel stems :			
	o,	ĕre,	i,	tum.
IV.	io,	ire,	ivi,	ītum.

<sup>1</sup> For examples, see 240.

1. The ENDINGS *ui* and *itum* are only shortened forms of *ēvi* and *ētum*: thus the full forms in *moneo* would be, *monēvi*, *monētum*; by dropping *e*, we have *monvi*, *montum*; but to facilitate pronunciation, the consonant *v* after *n* is changed into its corresponding vowel *u*; *monui* (for *monvi*), and the two successive consonants in *montum* are separated by a short *i*; *monitum* (for *montum*).

2. ANALYSIS OF ENDINGS.—If we analyze the endings of the Perfect, we shall find that the final *i* is the ending of the first person, the preceding *v* the tense-sign of the Perfect, and the preceding vowel the characteristic of the conjugation. In the ending *si*, *s* is the tense-sign, while in the ending *i* the tense-sign is wanting.

3. The SUPINE ENDING is properly *tum* (245. 2), as the preceding vowels, *ā*, *ē*, and *ī*, are the characteristics of the conjugation, and *i* in Conj. III. is the connecting vowel. Practically, however, it is more convenient and simple to treat these vowels as a part of the endings.

### *Euphonic Changes in the Regular Formation.*

248. Before *si* and *tum* in the Principal Parts of the Third Conjugation, certain euphonic changes take place.

#### I. BEFORE **si** OF THE PERFECT.

1. A **k-sound** (*c*, *g*, *qu*) or **h**<sup>1</sup> generally<sup>2</sup> unites with the *s* and forms *x*:<sup>3</sup> *dūco*, *duxi* (ducsi); *rēgo*, *rexī* (regsi); *cōquo*, *coxi* (coqusi); *trāho*, *traxi* (trahsi).

2. A **t-sound** (*d*, *t*) is generally dropped:<sup>4</sup> *claudo*, *clausi* (claudsi); *mitto*, *misi* (mittsi).

3. **B** is changed to *p*: *scribo*, *scripsi* (scribsi).

4. **M** is sometimes assimilated and sometimes strengthened with *p*: *præmo*, *pressi* (premsi); *sūmo*, *sumpsi* (sumsi).

5. **R** is sometimes assimilated: *gëro*, *gersi* (gersi).

#### II. BEFORE **tum** OF THE SUPINE.

1. A **k-sound** (*c*, *g*, *qu*) or **h**<sup>5</sup> becomes *c*: *rēgo*, *rectum* (regtum); *cōquo*, *coctum* (coqutum); *trāho*, *tractum* (trahtum).

2. **B** becomes *p*, as in the perfect: *scribo*, *scriptum* (scribtum).

3. **M** is strengthened with *p*:<sup>6</sup> *sūmo*, *sumptum* (sumtum).

4. **N** is often dropped: *vīnco*, *victum* (vinctum). See 242. 253. 2.

5. **R** sometimes becomes *s*: *gëro*, *gestum* (gertum).

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes also *gu* or *v*: *exstinguo*, *exstinxi*; *viro*, *vixi*.

<sup>2</sup> But is sometimes dropped: *mergo*, *mersi* (for *mergsi*, *merxi*): *parco*, *parsi*.

<sup>3</sup> *Fluo*, *fluvi*, and *struo*, *struxi*, form their perfects in *xi* as if from a stem in a *k-sound*.

<sup>4</sup> Sometimes assimilated: *cedo*, *cessi* (cedsi).

<sup>5</sup> Sometimes also *gu* or *v*: *exstinguo*, *exstinctum*; *viro*, *victum*. But *v* is often changed into its corresponding vowel *u*: *solvo*, *solūtum* (solvum).

<sup>6</sup> But dropped in *rumpo*, *raptum* (rumpum).

## II. IRREGULAR FORMATIONS.

## I. Present Indicative.

249. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **io, ior**, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. These are

1. The following with their compounds:

*Căpio*, to take; *căpio*, to desire; *făcio*, to make; *fordio*, to dig; *făgio*, to flee; *jăcio*, to throw; *părio*, to bear; <sup>1</sup> *quătio*, to shake; *răpio*, to seize; *săpio*, to be wise.

2. The compounds of the obsolete *lăcio*, to entice, and *spēcio*, to look; *allicio*, *elicio*, *illicio*, *pellicio*, etc.; *aspicio*, *conspicio*, etc.

3. The Deponent Verbs: *grădior*, to go; *mōrior*, to die; *pătior*, to suffer.

## II. Present Infinitive.

250. *Do, dăre*, to give, is irregular in having *ăre*, instead of *ăre*.

## III. Perfect Indicative Active.

251. The Perfect presents three distinct Irregularities.

252. **First Irregularity.**—*Formation after the Analogy of other conjugations.*—A few verbs in each conjugation form the Perfect according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations:

Săno,	sonăre,	sonui (2d),	to sound.
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi ( <i>augsi</i> , 3d),	to increase.
Păto,	petēre,	petivi (4th),	to seek.
Vincio,	vincire,	vinxi ( <i>vincsi</i> , 3d),	to bind.

1. EXPLANATION.—*Săno*, it will be observed, though a verb of the first conjugation, forms its perfect in *ui*, after the analogy of the second; *augeo*, of the second, forms its perfect in *si* (*xi = gsi*) after the analogy of the third; *păto*, of the third, follows the analogy of the fourth, and *vincio*, of the fourth, the analogy of the third. Strictly speaking, such verbs are partly of one conjugation and partly of another, but they are generally classed with the conjugation to which the infinitive belongs.

2. In the FIRST CONJUGATION, a few verbs<sup>2</sup> follow the analogy of the SECOND: *dămo*, *domăre*, *domui*, to tame.

3. In the SECOND, a few<sup>2</sup> follow the analogy of the THIRD: *augeo*, *augēre*, *auxi* (*augsi*), to increase.

<sup>1</sup> Compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

<sup>2</sup> For lists, see under Classification of Verbs, 261, sqq.

4. In the THIRD, a few follow the analogy of the FIRST, SECOND, or FOURTH: *sterno, sterněre, strāvi* (1), to strew; *frēmo, frēměre, fremui* (2), to rage; *pěto, petěre, petivi* (4), to seek.

5. In the FOURTH, a few follow the analogy of the SECOND or THIRD: *āpěrio, apērěre, aperui* (2), to open; *vīcio, vīcěre, vīxi* (3), to bind.

**253. Second Irregularity.—Stem-vowel lengthened.**—A few verbs in each conjugation form the Perfect in **i**, but lengthen the stem-vowel:

Jūvo,	jūvāre,	jūvi,	to assist.
Vīdeo,	vīdēre,	vīdi,	to see.
Edo,	ēdēre,	ēdi,	to eat.
Vēnio,	venīre,	vēni,	to come.

1. VOWEL CHANGED.—The stem-vowels *ā* and (in compounds) *i* often become *ē*: *fācio, fēcī*, to make; *efficio, effēcī*, to effect.

2. *M* OR *N* DROPPED.—The Present Stem in a few of these verbs is strengthened by the insertion of *M* or *N*, which disappears in the Perfect: *rumpo, rūpi* (rumpi), to break; *vinco, vīci* (vinci), to conquer. See 242. 1.

**254. Third Irregularity.—Reduplication.**—A few verbs of the First, Second, and Third conjugations form the Perfect in **i**, but reduplicate the stem:

Do,	dāre,	dēdi,	to give.
Mordeo,	mordēre,	mōmordi,	to bite.
Curro,	currēre,	cūcurri,	to run.

1. The REDUPLICATION consists of the initial consonant (or consonants) of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*,—generally with the following vowel, if that vowel is *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*, otherwise with *e*; see examples above.

2. VOWEL CHANGED.—The stem-vowel is often changed: *cado, cēcīdi* (for *cecādī*), to fall.

3. *N* DROPPED.—*N* is sometimes dropped, because it does not belong to the Verb Stem, but has been inserted in the Present: *tundo, tūtūdi*, to beat.

4. REDUPLICATION WITH *Sp* OR *St*.—In verbs beginning with *sp* or *st*, the reduplication retains both consonants, but the stem drops the *s*: *spondeo, spōspondi* (for *spospondi*), to promise; *sto, stēti* (for *stesti*), to stand.

5. In COMPOUNDS the reduplication is generally dropped, but it is retained in the compounds of *do*, to give; *sto*, to stand; *disco*, to learn; *posco*, to demand; and sometimes in the compounds of *curro*, to run; *re-spondeo, re-spondi* (redup. dropped), to answer; *circum-do, circum-dēdi* (redup. retained); *circum-sto, circum-stēti*, to encircle. The compounds of *do* which are of the third conjugation change *e* of the reduplication into *i*: *ad-do, ad-dīdi* (for *ad-dēdi*), to add.

#### IV. Supine.

**255.** The Supine presents two principal Irregularities.

**256. First Irregularity.—Formation after the Analogy of other conjugations.**—A few verbs in each conjugation

form the Supine according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations :

Sōno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonitum (2d),	to sound.
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum (3d),	to increase.
Pēto,	petēre,	petivi,	petitum (4th),	to seek.
Vincio,	vincire,	vinxi,	vinctum (3d),	to bind.

1. In the FIRST CONJUGATION, a few verbs<sup>1</sup> follow the analogy of the SECOND or THIRD: *dōmo, domāre, domui, domitum* (2d), to tame; *sēco, secāre, secui* (2d), *sectum* (3d), to cut.

2. In the SECOND, a few follow the analogy of the THIRD: *augeo, augēre, auxi, auctum*, to increase.

3. In the THIRD, a few follow the analogy of the SECOND or FOURTH: *fremō, fremēre, fremui, fremitum* (2d), to rage; *cūpio, cupēre, cupivi, cupitum* (4th), to desire.

4. In the FOURTH, a few follow the analogy of the THIRD: *vēnio, venīre, vēni, ventum*, to come.

**257. Second Irregularity.—Ending Sum.**—Some verbs of the Second conjugation, many in the Third, and a very few in the Fourth form the Supine in *sum* :

Māneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	to remain.
Claudo,	claudēre,	clausi,	clausum,	to close.
Sentio,	sentire,	sensi,	sensum,	to perceive.

1. EUPHONIC CHANGES are the same in supines in *sum* as in perfects in *si* (248. I.): *claudio, clausi, clausum* (248. I. 2); *mergo, mersi, mersum* (248. I. 1), to merge; *flecto, flexi* (for *flectsi*, for *flectsi*, 248. I. 1 and 2), *flexum* (for *flectsum*, for *flectsum*, 248. I. 1 and 2), to turn.

2. In the FOURTH CONJUGATION, only *raucio*, to be hoarse, and *sentio*, to perceive, with its compounds, have *sum*.

**258.** The several modes above described for the formation of the Perfect and Supine may be presented for convenience of reference in the following table :

## FORMATION OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE.

### I. PERFECT.

#### 1. REGULAR PERFECT.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
<b>āvī</b>	<b>ēvi.</b> <b>ui.</b>	<b>si.</b> <b>i.</b>	<b>ivī</b>

#### 2. IRREGULAR PERFECT.

##### *First Irregularity.*

analogy of Conj. II.	analogy of Conj. III.	analogy of Conj. I., II. or IV.	analogy of Conj. II. or III.
-------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------

<sup>1</sup> For lists, see under *Classification of Verbs*, 261, sqq.



*Second Irregularity.*

Conj. I. stem-vowel lengthened.	Conj. II. stem-vowel lengthened.	Conj. III. stem-vowel lengthened (and often changed).	Conj. IV. stem-vowel lengthened.
---------------------------------------	--	--	--

*Third Irregularity.*

reduplication.	reduplication.	reduplication.
----------------	----------------	----------------

II. SUPINE.

1. REGULAR SUPINE.

ātum.	ētum. itum.	tum.	itum.
-------	----------------	------	-------

2. IRREGULAR SUPINE.

*First Irregularity.*

analogy of Conj. II. or III.	analogy of Conj. III.	analogy of Conj. II. or IV.	analogy of Conj. III.
---------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------

*Second Irregularity.*

sum.	sum.	sum.
------	------	------

PRINCIPAL PARTS IN COMPOUND VERBS.

259. I. Compound verbs generally form their principal parts like simple verbs :

Mōneo,	monēre,	monui,	monitum,	<i>to advise.</i>
Ad-mōneo,	admonēre,	admonui,	admonitum,	<i>to admonish.</i>

260. II. But compounds of verbs with dissyllabic supines generally change the stem-vowel in forming the principal parts :

1. *When the Present of the compound has i for e of the simple verb :*

1) The Perfect and Supine generally resume the **e** :

Rēgo,	regēre,	rexī,	rectum,	<i>to rule.</i>
Di-rigo,	dirigēre,	direxī,	directum,	<i>to direct.</i>

2) But sometimes only the Supine resumes the **e** :

Tēneo,	tenēre,	tenui,	tentum,	<i>to hold.</i>
De-tīneo,	detinēre,	detinui,	detentum,	<i>to detain.</i>

2. *When the Present of the compound has i for a of the simple verb :*

1) The Perfect generally resumes the vowel of the simple perfect and the supine takes **e**, sometimes **a** :

Cāpio,	capēre,	cēpi,	captum,	<i>to take.</i>
Ac-cīpio,	accipēre,	accēpi,	acceptum,	<i>to accept.</i>

2) But sometimes the Perfect retains **i** and the Supine takes **e**:

Răpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	to seize.
Di-rĭpio,	diripĕre,	diripui,	direptum,	to tear asunder.

For *Reduplication in compounds*, see 254. 5; other peculiarities of compounds will be noticed under the separate conjugations.

## CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS

### *According to the Perfect-Formation.*<sup>1</sup>

#### FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION.

#### 261. Principal Parts in: **o, āre, āvi, ātum.**

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation: the following are examples:

Amo,	āmāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	to love.
Cūro,	curāre,	curāvi,	curātum,	to care for.
Dōno,	donāre,	donāvi,	donātum,	to bestow.
Hābito,	habitāre,	habitāvi,	habitātum,	to dwell.
Hōnōro,	honorāre,	honorāvi,	honorātum,	to honor.
Libĕro,	liberāre,	liberāvi,	liberātum,	to free.
Nōmīno,	nomināre,	nomināvi,	nominātum,	to name.
Pugno,	pugnāre,	pugnāvi,	pugnātum,	to fight.
Sperō,	sperāre,	sperāvi,	sperātum,	to hope.
Voco,	vocāre,	vocāvi,	vocātum,	to call.

#### CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.<sup>2</sup>—Three Irregularities.

262. **First Irregularity.**—*Perfect (and generally Supine) after the Analogy of the Second Conjugation.*

Principal Parts in: **o, āre, ui, ĭtum** (generally).

Crĕpo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepĭtum,	to creak.
<i>Incrĕpo, āre, ui (āvi), ĭtum, (ātum); discrĕpo, āre, ui (āvi) —.</i>				

Cūbo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubĭtum,	to recline. <sup>3</sup>
Dōmo,	domāre,	domui,	domĭtum,	to tame.
Enĕco,	enecāre,	enēcui,	enectum,	to kill. <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Perfect-Formation is selected as the special basis of this classification, because the irregularities of the other principal parts are less important and can be readily associated with this formation.

<sup>2</sup> The lists contain all the simple verbs which belong to this class and such compounds as deviate in any important particular from their simple verbs.

<sup>3</sup> Compounds which insert *m*, as *accumbo*, etc., are of Conj. III. See 276. II. 1.

<sup>4</sup> The simple *nĕco* is regular, and even in the compound the forms in *āvi* and *ātum* occur.

Fricō,	fricāre,	fricui,	{ frictum, fricātum,	to rub.
Mīco,	micāre,	micui,	_____	to glitter.

*Dimīco, āre, āvi (ui), ātum; emīco, āre, ui, ātum.*

Plicō,	plicāre,	{ plicui, plicāvi,	{ plicitum, plicātum,	to fold.
--------	----------	-----------------------	--------------------------	----------

*Duplicō, multiplicō, replicō, and supplicō are regular: āre, āvi, ātum.*

Sēco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	to cut.
-------	---------	--------	---------	---------

Participle, *secatūrus*.

Sōno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonitum,	to sound.
-------	---------	--------	----------	-----------

Participle, *sonatūrus*. Most compounds want Sup. *Resōno* has Perf. *reso-*  
*nāvi*.

Tōno,	tonāre,	tonui,	(tonitum),	to thunder.
Vēto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetitum,	to forbid.

1. *Pōto, āre, āvi, ātum*, to drink, has also *pōtum* in the supine.

2. The Passive Participles *coenātus* and *jurātus* (*coeno*, to dine, and *jūro*, to swear) are active in signification, *having dined*, etc. *Pōtus*, from *pōto*, is also sometime active.

## 263. Second Irregularity.—Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.

Principal Parts in : **o, āre, i, tum.**

Jūvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	to assist.
-------	---------	-------	--------	------------

Participle *juvatūrus*, but in compounds *jutūrus* is also used.

Lāvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	{ lautum, lotum, lavātum,	to wash.
-------	---------	-------	---------------------------------	----------

In poetry this is sometimes of Conj. III.: *lāvo, lavēre, lāvi*, etc.

## 264. Third Irregularity.—Perfect Reduplicated.

Principal Parts in : **o, āre, i, tum.**

Do,	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	to give.
Sto,	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	to stand.

1. In *do* the characteristic *i* is short by exception: *dābam, dābo, dārem*, etc. Four compounds of *do*, *circumdo, pessumdo, satiso* and *venumdo*, are conjugated like the simple verb; the rest are dissyllabic and of the third Conj. (250).

2. Compounds of *sto* are conjugated like the simple verb, if the first part is a dissyllable, otherwise they take *stēti* for *stēti*: *adsto, adstāre, adstēti, adstātum*. *Dis*to wants Perf. and Sup.

## 265. DEPONENT VERBS.

In this conjugation deponent verbs are entirely regular. Thus,

Cōnor,	conāri,	conātus sum,	to endeavor.
Hōtor,	hortāri,	hortātus sum,	to exhort.
Mīror,	mirāri,	mirātus sum,	to admire.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION.

266. Principal Parts in: { I. eo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.<sup>1</sup>  
 II. eo, ēre, ui, itum.  
 III. eo, ēre, ui, tum or sum.

I. eo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Compleo, complēre, complēvi, completum, to fill.

So other compounds of *pleo*; as *expleo*, *impleo*.

Dēleo, delēre, delēvi, delētum, to destroy.

Fleo, flēre, flēvi, flētum, to weep.

Neo, nēre, nēvi, nētum, to spin.

1. *Abōleo*, *abolēre*, *abolēvi*, *abolitum*, to destroy, is compounded of *ab* and *oleo* (not used). The other compounds of *oleo* generally end in *esco*, and are of the third conjugation. See *abōlesco*, 276. II. 1.

2. *Vieo*, *viēre*, *viētum*, to weave, bend, is rare, except in the participle *viētus*.

II. eo, ēre, ui, itum.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples:

Cāreo, carēre, carui, caritum, to be without.

Dēbeo, debēre, debui, debitum, to owe.

Hābeo, habēre, habui, habitum, to have.

Mōneo, monēre, monui, monitum, to advise.

Nōceo, nocēre, noeui, noeitum, to hurt.

Pāreo, parēre, parui, paritum, to obey.

Plāceo, placēre, placui, placitum, to please.

Tāceo, tacēre, tacui, tacitum, to be silent.

III. eo, ēre, ui, tum or sum.

These endings, slightly irregular in the Supine, belong to the following verbs:

Censeo, censēre, censui, censum, to think.

Perf. Part. *census* and *censitus*.—*Percenseo* wants Sup.; *recenseo* has *recensum* and *recensitum*.

Dōceo, docēre, docui, doctum, to teach.

Misceo, miscēre, miscui, { mistum, to mix.

Tēneo, tenēre, tenui, { mixtum, to hold.

*Detīneo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *detentum*; so *obtīneo* and *retīneo*; other compounds seldom have Sup.

Torreo, torrēre, torrui, tostum, to roast.

<sup>1</sup> We class *ēvi* and *ētum*, though belonging to but few verbs, with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *ui* and *itum* are derived. See 247. 1.

**267. SUPINE WANTING.**—Many verbs, regular in the Perfect, want the Supine: the following are the most important:

Aceo, <i>to be sour.</i>	Mādeo, <i>to be wet.</i>	Sordeo, <i>to be sordid.</i>
Calleo, <i>to be skilled.</i>	Nīteo, <i>to shine.</i>	Splendeo, <i>to shine.</i>
Candeo, <i>to shine.</i>	Oleo, <i>to smell.</i>	Stūdeo, <i>to study.</i>
Egeo, <i>to want.</i>	Palleo, <i>to be pale.</i>	Stūpeo, <i>to be amazed</i>
Emīneo, <i>to stand forth.</i>	Pāteo, <i>to be open.</i>	Timeo, <i>to fear.</i>
Flōreo, <i>to bloom.</i>	Rīgeo, <i>to be stiff.</i>	Torpeo, <i>to be torpid.</i>
Frondeo, <i>to bear leaves.</i>	Rūbeo, <i>to be red.</i>	Tūmeo, <i>to swell.</i>
Horreo, <i>to shudder.</i>	Sīleo, <i>to be silent.</i>	Vīgeo, <i>to flourish.</i>
Lāteo, <i>to be hid.</i>	Sorbeo, <i>to swallow.</i>	Vīreo, <i>to be green.</i>

**268. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.**—Some verbs, derived mostly from adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine: the following are the most important:

Albeo, <i>to be white.</i>	Hēbeo, <i>to be blunt.</i>	Polleo, <i>to be powerful.</i>
Aveo, <i>to covet.</i>	Hūmeo, <i>to be moist.</i>	Renīdeo, <i>to shine.</i>
Calveo, <i>to be bald.</i>	Immīneo, <i>to threaten.</i>	Scāteo, <i>to gush forth.</i>
Cāneo, <i>to be gray.</i>	Lacteo, <i>to suck.</i>	Squāleo, <i>to be filthy.</i>
Flāveo, <i>to be yellow.</i>	Līveo, <i>to be livid.</i>	Vēgeo, <i>to be lively.</i>
Foeteo, <i>to be fetid.</i>	Maereo, <i>to be sad.</i>	

## CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.—Three Irregularities.

**269. First Irregularity.**—Perfect in *si* (rarely *i*) after the Analogy of the Third Conjugation:

Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, si (i), tum or sum.**

Algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	—	<i>to be cold.</i>
Ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	<i>to burn.</i>
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi ( <i>gsi</i> ),	auctum,	<i>to increase.</i>
Connīveo,	connīvēre.	{ connīvi,	—	<i>to wink at.</i>
		{ connixi,		
Ferveo,	fervēre,	{ fervi,		<i>to boil.</i>
		{ ferbui,		
Frīgeo,	frigēre,	frixi ( <i>rare</i> ),	—	<i>to be cold.</i>
Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi,	—	<i>to shine.</i>

Poetic *fulgo, fulgēre*, etc.

Haereo,	haerēre,	haesi,	haesum,	<i>to stick.</i>
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	<i>to indulge.</i>
Jūbeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	<i>to order.</i>
Langugeo,	languēre,	langui,	—	<i>to be languid.</i>
Līqueo,	liquēre,	liqui ( <i>licui</i> ),	—	<i>to be liquid.</i>
Lūceo,	lucēre,	luxi,	—	<i>to shine.</i>
Lūgeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	—	<i>to mourn.</i>
Māneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	<i>to remain.</i>
Mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to caress.</i>

Compounds have *mulsum* or *mulctum*.

Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to milk.</i>
Prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	<i>to dine.</i>

Participle, *pransus*, in an active sense, *having dined*.

Rideo,	ridere,	rīsi,	rīsum,	to laugh.
Strideo,	stridere,	strīdi,	—	to creak.
Suādeo,	suādere,	suāsi,	suasum,	to advise.
Tergeo,	tergere,	tersi,	tersum,	to wipe.

*Tergo*, of Conj. III., also occurs: *tergo*, *ēre*, *si*, *sum*.

Torqueo,	torquere,	torsi,	tortum,	to twist.
Turgeo,	turgere,	tursi (rare),	—	to swell.
Urgeo (urgueo) urgere,	ursi,	—	—	to press.

1. *Cieo*, *ciere*, *civi*, *citum*, to arouse, has a kindred form, *cio*, *cire*, *civi*, *citum*, from which it seems to have obtained its perfect. In compounds the forms of the fourth Conj. prevail, especially in the sense of *to call*, *call forth*.

2. For *Euphonic Changes* before *si* in the Perfect, see 248. I.

## 270. Second Irregularity.—Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.

Principal Parts in : **eo, ēre, i, tum (sum).**

Cāveo,	cavere,	cāvi,	cautum,	to beware.
Fāveo,	favere,	fāvi,	fautum,	to favor.
Fōveo,	fovere,	fōvi,	fōtum,	to cherish.
Mōveo,	movere,	mōvi,	mōtum,	to move.
Pāveo,	pavere,	pāvi,	—	to fear.
Sēdeo,	sedere,	sēdi,	sessum,	to sit.

So *circumsēdeo* and *supersēdeo*. Other compounds thus: *assēdeo*, *ēre*, *assēdi*, *assessum*; but *dissēdeo*, *praesēdeo*, and *resēdeo* want Supine.

Vīdeo,	vīdere,	vīdi,	vīsum,	to see.
Vōveo,	vovere,	vōvi,	vōtum,	to vow.

## 271. Third Irregularity.—Perfect Reduplicated.

Principal Parts in : **eo, ēre, i, sum.**

Mordeo,	mordere,	mōmordi,	morsum,	to bite.
Pendeo,	pendere,	pēpendi,	pensum,	to hang.
Spondeo,	spondere,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	to promise.
Tondeo,	tondere,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	to shear.

For *reduplication* in compounds, see 254. 5.

## 272. DEPONENT VERBS.

### 1. Regular.

Liceor,	liceri,	licitus sum,	to bid.
Mereor,	mereri,	meritus sum,	to deserve.
Polliceor,	polliceri,	pollicitus sum,	to promise.
Tueor,	tueri,	tuitus sum,	to protect.
Vereor,	vereri,	veritus sum,	to fear.

### 2. Irregular.

Fāteor,	fatēri,	fassus sum,	to confess. <sup>1</sup>
Mēdeor,	medēri,	—	to cure.

<sup>1</sup> Confiteor, eri, confessus; so profiteor

Misēreor,	miserēri,	{ miserītus sum,	to pity.
Reor,	rēri,	{ misertus sum,	to think.
		rātus sum,	

3. *Semi-Deponent*.—Deponent in the Perfect.

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	to dare.
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavisus sum,	to rejoice.
Sōleo,	solēre,	solitus sum,	to be accustomed.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION IN THE PERFECT.

273. Principal Parts in :	I. o (io),	ēre, si,	tum.
	II. o,	ēre, i,	tum.
	III. o,	ēre, si or i,	sum.

## I. o (io), ēre, si, tum.

These are the regular endings in verbs whose stems end in a consonant; the following are examples:<sup>1</sup>

Carpō,	carpēre,	carpsi,	carptum,	to pluck.
Cingō,	cingēre,	cinxī (gisi),	cinctum,	to gird.
Cōmō,	comēre,	compsi,	comptum,	to adorn.
Dēmō,	demēre,	dempsi,	demptum,	to take away.
Dicō,	dicēre,	dixi,	dictum,	to say.
Dūcō,	ducēre,	duxi,	ductum,	to lead.
Fingō,	figēre,	finxi,	fictum,	to feign.
Gērō,	gerēre,	gessi,	gestum,	to carry.
Nūbō,	nubēre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	to marry.
Pingō,	pingēre,	pinxi,	pictum,	to paint.
Prōmō,	promēre,	prompsi,	promptum,	to bring out.
Rēgō,	regēre,	rexī,	rectum,	to rule.
Scalpō,	scalpēre,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	to engrave.
Sūmō,	sumēre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	to take.
Trāhō,	trahēre,	traxi,	tractum,	to draw.
Uro,	ūrēre,	ussi,	ustum,	to burn.
Vēhō,	vehēre,	vexi,	vectum,	to carry.
Vivō,	vivēre,	vixi,	victum,	to live.

1. *Change of Stem-Vowel in Compounds*; see 260.

*Carpō*: de-cerpo, decerpēre, decerpsi, decerptum, to pluck off.

*Rēgō*: di-rīgo, dirigēre, direxi, directum (260. I.), to direct.

Here *decerpo*, though it has not the same stem-vowel as the simple *carpo*, forms its principal parts precisely like the simple verb; but *dirīgo* changes the stem-vowel in forming those parts, having *i* in the Pres. and *e* in the Perf. and Sup.

2. *Compounds of Obsolete Simple Verbs* present the same vowel changes:

*Lūcio* (obs.): al-līcio, allicēre, allexi, allectum (260. II.), to allure.

So *illicio*, *pellicio*. For *elicio*, see 276. II.

*Spēcio* (obs.): a-spēcio, aspicēre, aspexi, aspectum, to look at.

<sup>1</sup> For *Euphonic Changes*, see 245.

## II. o, ěre, i, tum

These are the regular endings of verbs whose stems end in *u*; the following are examples:

Acuo,	ăcuěre,	acui,	acŭtum,	to sharpen.
Arguo,	arguěre,	argui,	argŭtum,	to convict.

*Coarguo* and *redarguo* want the Supine.

Imbuo,	imbuěre,	imbui,	imbŭtum,	to imbue.
Minuo,	minuěre,	minui,	minŭtum,	to diminish.
Ruo,	ruěre,	ruī,	rŭtum,	to fall.

Part. *ruītŭrus*.—*Corruo* and *irruo* want Sup.

Stătuo,	statuěre,	stătui,	statŭtum,	to place.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	-----------

Compounds change *a* into *i*: *constătuo*.

Triġuo,	tribuěre,	tribui,	tribŭtum,	to impart.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	------------

1. *Perfect xi*.—The following in *uo* form the Perf. in *xi*.

Cōquo,	coquěre,	coxi,	coctum,	to cook.
Exstinguo,	exstinguěre,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	to extinguish.

So other compounds of *stinguo* (rare): *distinguo*, etc.

Fluo,	fluěre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow.
Struo,	struěre,	struxi,	structum,	to build.

2. *Like verbs in uo* are the following:

Ico,	icěre,	ici,	ictum,	to strike.
Solvo,	solvěre,	solvi,	solŭtum, <sup>1</sup>	to loose.
Volvo,	volvěre,	volvi,	volŭtum, <sup>1</sup>	to roll.

III. o, ěre, si or i, sum.<sup>2</sup>

These endings, slightly irregular in the Supine, belong to the following verbs:

Accendo,	accenděre,	accendi,	accensum,	to kindle.
----------	------------	----------	-----------	------------

So other compounds of *cando* (obsolete): *incendo*, *succendo*.

Cĕdo,	ceděre,	cessi,	cessum,	to yield.
Claudo,	clauděre,	clausi,	clausum,	to close.

Compounds have *u* for *au*: *conclŭdo*, *exclŭdo*.

Cŭdo,	cuděre,	cŭdi,	cŭsum,	to forge.
Dĕfendo,	defenděre,	defendi,	defensum,	to defend.

So other compounds of *fendo* (obsolete): *offendo*, etc.

Divĭdo,	dividěre,	divĭsi,	divĭsum,	to divide.
Evādo,	evaděre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	to evade.

So other compounds of *vado*, 275.

Figo,	figěre,	fixi,	fixum,	to fasten.
Findo,	finděre,	fĭdi (fĭndi),	fissum,	to part.
Flecto,	flectěre,	flecti,	flexum,	to bend.

<sup>1</sup> *i* is here changed to its corresponding vowel *u*: *volŭtum* for *volĭtum*.

<sup>2</sup> For enphonic changes before *sum*, see 257. 1.



Fluo,	fluere,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow.
Frendo,	frendere,	—	{ frēsum,	to gnash.
Laedo,	laedere,	laesi,	{ fressum,	to hurt.
			laesum,	

Compounds have *i* for *ae*: *illido*, etc.

Lūdo,	ludere,	lūsi,	lūsum,	to play.
Mādo,	mandere,	mandi,	mansum,	to chew.
Mergo,	mergere,	mersi,	mersum,	to dip.
Mitto,	mittere,	mīsi,	missum,	to send.
Necto,	nectere,	{ nexi,	nexum,	to bind.
		{ nexui, <sup>1</sup>		
Pando,	pandere,	pandi,	{ passum,	to open.
Pecto,	pectere,	pexi,	{ pansum,	to comb.
			pexum,	
Pinso (pīso),	pinsere,	{ pinsi,	{ pinsitum,	to pound.
		{ pinsui,	{ pistum,	
			pinsum,	
Plecto,	plectere,	plexi,	plexum,	to plait.
Plaudo,	plaudere,	plausi,	plausum,	to applaud.

So *applaudo*; other compounds have *o* for *au*: *explodo*, etc.

Prēhendo,	prehendere,	prehendi,	prehensum,	to grasp.
-----------	-------------	-----------	------------	-----------

Often written, *prendo*, *prendere*, etc.

Prēmo,	premere,	pressi,	pressum (248. I. 4),	to press.
Quātio,	quatere,	quassi,	quassum (248. I. 2),	to shake.

Compounds have *cu* for *qua*: *concūtio*, etc.

Rādo,	radere,	rāsi,	rāsum,	to shave.
Rōdo,	rodere,	rōsi,	rōsum,	to gnaw.
Scādo,	scandere,	scandi,	scansum,	to climb.

Compounds have *e* for *a*: *ascendo*, *descendo*.

Scīdo,	scindere,	scīdi,	scissum,	to rend.
Spargo,	spargere,	sparsi,	sparsum,	to scatter.

Compounds generally have *e* for *a*: *aspergo*, *respergo*.

Tergo,	tergere,	tersi,	tersum,	to wipe off.
--------	----------	--------	---------	--------------

Also *tergeo*, *tergere* (Conj. II.); compounds take this form.

Trūdo,	trudere,	trūsi,	trūsum,	to thrust.
Vello,	vellere,	velli (vulsi),	vulsum,	to pluck.

Compounds in good use generally have *velli*.

Verro,	verrere,	verri,	versum,	to brush.
Verto,	vertere,	verti,	versum,	to turn.

Compounds of *de*, *prae*, *re*, are generally deponent in the *Pres.*, *Imperf.*, and *Future*.

Vīso,	visere,	vīsi,	vīsum,	to visit.
-------	---------	-------	--------	-----------

<sup>1</sup> Compounds take this form in the Perfect.

**274. SUPINE WANTING.**—The following verbs, regular in the Perfect, want the Supine:

Ango, ěre, anxi, to strangle.  
Annuo, ěre, i, to assent.

So other compounds of *nuo*, but *abnuo*, has Part. *abnuiturus*.

Bătuo, ěre, i, to beat.  
Bibo, ěre, i, to drink.

Congruo, ěre, i, to agree.

Ingruo, ěre, i, to assail.

Lambo, ěre, i, to lick.

Luo, ěre, i, to wash.

Part. *luiturus*. Compounds—*abluo*, *aluo*, etc. have Sup. *lütum*.

Mětuo, ěre, i, to fear.

Ningo, ěre, ninxi, to snow.

Nuo, *obs.*; see *annuo*.

Pluo, ěre, i or vi, to rain.

Psallo, ěre, i, to play on a stringed instrument.

Sido, ěre, i, to sit down.

Perf. and Sup. generally supplied from *sedco*; hence *sedi*, *sessum*. So in compounds.

Strido, ěre, i, to creak.

Also *strideo*, ěre (Conj. II.).

Sternuo, ěre, i, to sneeze.

**275. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.**—Some verbs want both Perfect and Supine.

1. The following:

Clango, to clang.

Claudo, to be lame.

Glisco, to grow.

Hisco, to gape.

Stinguo, to quench;

but *distinguo*, ěre,

*distinxi*, *distinctum*;

so *exstinguo*.

*Temno*, to despise; but

*contemno*, ěre, con-

*tempsi*, *contemptum*.

*Vado*, to go. See *evado*,

273. III.

*Vergo*, to incline.

2. Many Inceptives. See 281. II. 1.

**CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.**—*Three Irregularities.*<sup>1</sup>

**276. First Irregularity.**—*Perfect after the Analogy of other Conjugations.*

*I. Perfect in āvi, as in Conjugation I.*

Inveterasco, inveterascere, inveteravi, inveteratum, to grow old.

Pasco, pascere, pavi, pastum, to feed.

Sterno, sternere, stravi, stratum, to strew.

Veterasco, veterascere, veteravi, —, to grow old.

*II. Perfect in ēvi, ui, as in Conjugation II.*

1. The following:

Abolesco, abolescere, abolēvi, abolitum, to disappear.

So *inölesco*; but *adölesco* has Supine *adultum*; *exölesco*, *exolētum*; *obsölesco*, *obsolētum*.

Accumbo, accumbere, accübui, accubitum, to recline.

So other compounds of *cumbo*, *cubo*. See *cubo*, 262.

<sup>1</sup> For convenience of reference a *General List* of all verbs involving irregularities will be found on page 323.

Alo,	ălěre,	alui,	{ alitum, altum,	to nourish.
Cello, <i>obsolete.</i>	See <i>excello</i> below.			
Cerno,	cerněre	crěvi,	crětum,	to decide.
Cōlo,	colěre,	colui,	cultum,	to cultivate.
Compesco,	compescěre,	compescui,	—	to restrain.
Consūlo,	consulěre,	consului,	consultum,	to consult.
Cresco,	crescere,	crěvi,	crětum,	to grow.

*Inresco* and *succresco* want Supine.

*Cumbo* for *cubo*, in compounds: see *accumbo*.

Depso,	depsěre,	depsui,	{ depsitum, depstum,	to knead.
Elicio,	ēlicěre,	elicui,	elicitum,	to elicit.

Other compounds of *lacio*, thus: *allicio*, *ēre*, *allexi*, *allectum*.

Excello,	excellěre,	excellui ( <i>rare</i> ),	—	to excel.
----------	------------	---------------------------	---	-----------

Other compounds of *cello* want Perf and Sup., except *percello*, *percellěre*, *percūli*, *perculsum*.

Frěmo,	freměre,	fremui,	fremitum,	to rage.
Fūro,	furěre,	furui,	—	to rage.
Gěmo,	geměre,	gemui,	gemitum,	to groan.
Gigno,	gigněre,	gěnui ( <i>f. gěno</i> ),	genitum,	to beget.

*Lacio*, *obsolete.* See *elicio*.

Līno,	liněre,	lěvi, līvi,	litum,	to smear.
Měto,	metěre,	messui,	messum,	to reap.
Mōlo,	molěre,	molui,	molitum,	to grind.
Necto,	nectěre,	{ nexui, nexi,	nexum,	to bind.
Occūlo,	occulěre,	occului,	occultum,	to hide.
Olesco, <i>obsolete.</i>	See <i>abolesco</i> .			

Pinso,	pinsěre,	{ pinsui, pinsi,	{ pinsitum, pistum, pinsum,	to crush.
Pōno,	poněre,	posui,	positum,	to place.
Quiesco,	quiescěre,	quiěvi,	quiētum,	to rest.
Rāpio,	rapěre,	rapui,	raptum,	to snatch.

Compounds thus: *corrīpio*, *corripěre*, *corripui*, *correptum*.

Sěro,	serěre,	serui,	sertum,	to connect.
Sēro,	serěre,	sěvi,	sātum,	to sow.

Compounds thus: *consěro*, *ēre*, *consěvi*, *consitum*.

Sperno,	sperněre,	sprěvi,	sprětum,	to spurn.
Sterto,	stertěre,	stertui,	—	to snore.
Strěpo,	strepěre,	strepui,	strepitum,	to make a noise.
Suesco,	suescěre,	suěvi,	suētum,	to become accustomed.
Texo,	texěre,	texui,	textum,	to weave.
Trěmo,	treměre,	tremui,	—	to tremble.
Vōmo,	voměre,	vomui,	vomitum,	to vomit.

2. Many Inceptives in *esco* form the Perfect in *ui* from their primitives. See 281. I. 2.

### III. Perfect in *ivi*, as in Conjugation IV.

#### 1. The following:

Arcesso,	arcessĕre,	arcessĭvi,	arcessĭtum,	to call for.
Căpesso,	capessĕre,	capessĭvi,	capessĭtum,	to lay hold of.
Cŭpio,	cupĕre,	cupĭvi,	cupĭtum,	to desire.
Făcesso,	facessĕre,	{ facessĭvi,	facessĭtum,	to make.
		{ facessi,		
Incesso,	incessĕre,	incessĭvi or -cessi,	—	to attack.
Lăcesso,	lacessĕre,	lacessĭvi,	lacessĭtum,	to provoke.
Lĭno,	linĕre,	livi or lĕvi,	litum,	to smear.
Pĕto,	petĕre,	petĭvi,	petĭtum,	to ask.
Quacro,	quaerĕre,	quaesĭvi,	quaesĭtum,	to seek.

Compounds thus: *acquĭro, ĕre, acquĭsĭvi, acquĭsĭtum.*

Rŭdo,	rudĕre,	rudĭvi,	rudĭtum,	to bray.
Săpio,	sapĕre,	sapĭvi, sapui,	—	to taste.

Compounds have *i* for *a*, as *resĭpio*. *Desĭpio* wants Perf. and Sup.

Sĭno,	sinere,	sĭvi,	sĭtum,	to permit.
Tĕro,	terĕre,	trĭvi,	tritum,	to rub.

2. A few Inchoatives in *isco* form the Perfect in *ivi* from their primitives. See 281. I. 2.

277. PERFECT IN *ōvi*.—*Nosco* and its compounds form the perfect in *ōvi* after the analogy of *ĭvi*, *ĕvi*, and *ĭvi*:

Nosco,	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	to know.
--------	----------	-------	--------	----------

So *ignosco*.—*Agnosco* and *cognosco* have *ĭtum* in Sup., *agnĭtum*; *dignosco* and *internosco* want Supine.

278. VOWEL CONJUGATION.—*Nosco*, verbs in *uo*, and regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations form a complete *vowel-conjugation*, whose Perfects and Supines in the full form are entirely analogous, as follows:

ao,	āvi,	ātum;	amo (ao),	amāvi,	amātum.
eo,	ēvi,	ētum;	deleo,	delēvi,	delētum.
io,	īvi,	ītum;	audio,	audīvi,	auditum.
oo,	ōvi,	ōtum;	nosco (noo),	nōvi,	nōtum.
uo,	u(v)i,	ūtum;	acuō,	acu(v)i,	acūtum.

279. Second Irregularity.—*Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel*. See 253. 1 and 2.

Ago,	ăĝere,	ĕgi,	actum,	to drive.
------	--------	------	--------	-----------

So *circumăgo* and *perăgo*; *satăgo* wants Perf. and Sup. Other compounds change *a* into *i* in the Pres.: *abĭgo, ĕre, abĕgi, abactum*; but *coĭgo* becomes *cōgo, ĕre, coĕgi, coactum*, and *deĭgo, dĕgo, ĕre, dĕgi*, without Sup. *Prodĭgo* wants Sup., and *ambĭgo*, Perf. and Sup.

Căpio,	capĕre,	cĕpi,	captum,	to take.
--------	---------	-------	---------	----------

So *antecăpio*; other compounds thus: *accĕpio, ĕre, accĕpi, acceptum*.

Edo,	ēdere,	ēdi,	ēsum,	to eat.
Emo,	ēmēre,	ēmi,	emptum,	to buy.

So *coēmo*; other compounds thus: *adēmo, ēre, adēmi, ademptum*.

Fācio,	facēre,	fēci,	factum,	to make.
--------	---------	-------	---------	----------

Passive irregular: *fiō, fieri, factus sum*. See 294.

So *satisficio* and compounds of *ficio* with verbs, but compounds with prepositions thus: *conficio, conficere, confeci, confectum*, with regular Pass. *conficior, confici, confectus sum*.—Compounds of *ficio* with nouns and adjectives are of Conj. I.: *significo, are, avi, atum*.

Fōdio,	fodere,	fōdi,	fossum,	to dig.
Frango,	frangere,	frēgi,	fractum,	to break.

Compounds thus: *confringo, ere, confrēgi, confractum*.

Fūgio,	fugere,	fūgi,	fugitum,	to flee.
Fundo,	fundere,	fūdī,	fusum,	to pour.
Jācio,	jacere,	jēcī,	jactum,	to throw.

*Superjacio* has *jactum* or *jectum* in Sup.; other compounds thus: *abjicio, ere, abjēcī, abjectum*.

Lēgo,	legere,	lēgi,	lectum,	to read.
-------	---------	-------	---------	----------

So compounds, except (1) *colligo, ere, collēgi, collectum*; so *deligo, eligo, seligo*,—(2) *diligō, ere, dilexi, dilectum*; so *intelligo, negligo*.

Linquo,	linquere,	liqui,	—	to leave.
---------	-----------	--------	---	-----------

Compounds with Sup.: *relinquo, ere, reliqui, relictum*.

Rumpo,	rumpere,	rūpi,	ruptum,	to burst.
Scābo,	scabere,	scābi,	—	to scratch.
Vinco,	vincere,	vīci,	victum,	to conquer.

**280. Third Irregularity.—Perfect Reduplicated.** See 254. 1–5.

Abdo,	abdere,	abdīdi,	abdītum,	to hide.
-------	---------	---------	----------	----------

So all compounds of *do*, except those of Conj. I. (264): *addo, condo, crēdo, dēdo, ēdo, indo, obdo, perdo, prōdo, redō, trādo, tendo*; but *abs-condo* generally drops reduplication: *abs-condi*.

Cādo,	cadere,	cēcīdi,	cāsum,	to fall.
-------	---------	---------	--------	----------

*Incido, ere, incīdi, incāsum*; so *occido* and *recido*; other compounds want *supine*.

Caedo,	caedere,	cēcīdi,	caesum,	to cut.
--------	----------	---------	---------	---------

Compounds thus: *concido, ere, concīdi, concisum*.

Cāno,	canere,	cēcīni,	cantum,	to sing.
-------	---------	---------	---------	----------

*Concino, ere, concīnui*, —; so *cecino* and *praecono*; other compounds want Perf. and Sup.

Crēdo,	credere,	credīdi,	creditum, <sup>1</sup>	to believe.
--------	----------	----------	------------------------	-------------

<sup>1</sup> Explained as compound of *do*; see *abdo*.

Curro, currere, cūcurri, cursum, to run.

*Excurro* and *præcurro* generally retain the reduplication, *excūcurri*, *præcūcurri*; other compounds generally drop it.

Disco, discere, didici, —, to learn.

Do, Conj. I. See abdo.

Fallo, fallere, fēfelli, falsum, to deceive.

*Refello*, *ēre*, *refelli*, without Supine.

Pango, pangere, { pēpigi, pactum, to bargain.

Pango, pangere, { panxi, { pactum, to fix in.

*Compingo*, *ēre*, *compēgi*, *compactum*; so also *impingo*. *Depango* wants Perf.; *repango*, Perf. and Sup.

Parco, parcere, pēperci (parsi), parsum, to spare.

*Compareo*, *ēre*, *comparsi*, *comparsum*, also with *e* for *a*: *comperco*, *ēre*, etc. *Imparco* and *reparco* want Perf. and Sup.

Pārio, parere, pēpēri, partum, to bring forth.

Participle *paritūrus*; compounds are of Conj. IV.

Pello, pellere, pēpūli, pulsum,<sup>1</sup> to drive.

Pendo, pendere, pēpendi, pensum,<sup>1</sup> to weigh.

Posco, poscere, pōposci, —<sup>2</sup> to demand

Pungo, pungere, pūpūgi, punctum, to prick.

Compounds thus: *compungo*, *ēre*, *compunxi*, *compunctum*.

Sisto, sistere, stīti, stātum, to place.

*Sisto* seems to have been derived from *sto*, and forms the Perf. and Sup. after that analogy.—Compounds thus: *consisto*, *ēre*, *constiti*, *constitum*; but *circumstēti* also occurs.

Tango, tangere, tētīgi, tactum, to touch.

Compounds thus: *attingo*, *ēre*, *atīgi*, *attactum*.

Tendo, tendere, tētēdi, { tentum, to stretch.

Compounds drop reduplication and prefer Sup., *tentum*, but *detendo* and *ostendo* have *tensum*; and *extendo*, *protendo* and *retendo* have both forms.

Tollo, tollere, { tētūli (obs.), sublātum, to raise.

{ sustūli,

*Attollo* and *extollo* want Perf. and Sup.

Tundo, tundere, tūtūdi, { tunsum, to beat.

{ tūsum,

Compounds drop reduplication and generally take *tūsum* in Sup.

Vendo, vendere, vendīdi, venditum,<sup>3</sup> to sell.

<sup>1</sup> Compounds drop reduplication, 254. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Compounds retain reduplication, 254. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Explained as compound of *do*; see *abdo*.

## 281. INCEPTIVES.

Inceptives end in *sco*, and denote the beginning of an action. When formed from verbs, they are called *Verbal Inceptives*, and when formed from nouns or adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

## I. Verbal Inceptives.

1. Most verbal inceptives want the *Supine*, but take the *Perfect* of their primitives.

The following are examples :

Acesco	(aceo),	acescere,	acui,	——	to become sour.
Aresco	(areo),	arescere,	arui,	——	to become dry.
Călesco	(căleo),	calescere,	calui,	——	to become warm.
Flăresco	(flăreo),	florescere,	florui,	——	to begin to bloom.
Mădesco	(mădeo),	madescere,	madui,	——	to become moist.
Tăpesco	(tăpeo),	tepscere,	tăpui,	——	to become warm.
Viresco	(vireo),	virescere,	vîrui,	——	to become green.

2. The following take the *Perfect* and *Supine* of their primitives :

Abălesco	(ab, oleo),	ěre,	ăbolěvi,	abolitum, <sup>1</sup>	to disappear.
Coălesco	(con, alo),	ěre,	coălui,	coalitum,	to coalesce.
Concúpisco	(con, cupio),	ěre,	concupîvi,	concupitum,	to desire.
Convălesco	(con, vāleo),	ěre,	convălui,	convalitum,	to grow strong.
Exardesco	(ex, ardeo),	ěre,	exarsi,	exarsum,	to burn.
Invětêrasc	(invětêro),	ěre,	inveterăvi,	inveteratum,	to grow old.
Obdormisco	(ob, dormio),	ěre,	obdormîvi,	obdormitum,	to fall asleep.
Rêvîvisco	(re, vîvo),	ěre,	revixi,	revictum,	to revive.
Scisco,	(scio),	ěre,	scîvi,	scitum,	to enact.

3. The following are Inceptives only in form :

Cresco,	crescere,	crěvi,	crētum,	to grow.
Fătisco,	faticere,	——	——	to gape.
Glisco,	gliscere,	——	——	to swell.
Nosco,	noscere,	nōvi,	nōtum,	to know.
Pasco,	pascere,	pāvi,	pastum,	to feed.
Quiesco,	quiescere,	quiěvi,	quiētum,	to be quiet.
Suesco,	suescere,	suěvi,	suētum,	to be accustomed.

## II. Denominative Inceptives.

1. Most denominative inceptives want both *Perfect* and *Supine*. Thus

Aegresco (aeger),	to grow sick.	Juvěnesco, (juvėnis),	to become a youth.
Ditesco (dives),	to grow rich.	Mitesco (mitis),	to grow mild.
Dulcesco (dulcis),	to become sweet.	Mollesco (mollis),	to grow soft.
Grandesco (grandis),	to grow large.	Puěrasco (puer),	to become a boy.
Grăvesco (grăvis),	to grow heavy.	Pinguesco (pinguis),	to grow fat.

2. The following have the *Perfect* in *ui* :

Crěbresco	(creber),	ěre,	crěbrui,	to become frequent.
Dűresco	(durus),	ěre,	dűrui,	to become hard.

<sup>1</sup> So *inălesco* ; but *adălesco* has Sup. *adultum* ; *exălesco*, *exolētum* ; *obălesco*, *obolētum*.

Evānesco	( <i>e, vanus</i> ),	ěre,	ěvānui,	<i>to vanish.</i>
Innōtesco	( <i>in, notus</i> ),	ěre,	innōtui,	<i>to become known.</i>
Macresco	( <i>maer</i> ),	ěre,	macrui,	<i>to become lean.</i>
Mātūresco	( <i>matūrus</i> ),	ěre,	mātūrui,	<i>to ripen.</i>
Nigresco	( <i>niger</i> ),	ěre,	nigrui,	<i>to become black.</i>
Obmūtesco	( <i>ob, mūtus</i> ),	ěre,	obmūtui,	<i>to grow dumb.</i>
Obsurdesco	( <i>ob, surdus</i> ),	ěre,	obsurdui,	<i>to become deaf.</i>
Recrūdesco	( <i>re, crūdus</i> ),	ěre,	recrūdui,	<i>to bleed afresh.</i>
Vilescō	( <i>vilis</i> ),	ěre,	vīlui,	<i>to become worthless.</i>

## 282. DEPONENT VERBS.

Amplector,	i,	amplexus sum,	<i>to embrace.</i>
<i>So complector, circumplector.</i>			
Apiscor,	i,	aptus sum,	<i>to obtain.</i>
<i>Adīpiscor, i, adeptus sum, so indīpiscor.</i>			
Commīniscor,	i,	commentus sum,	<i>to devise.</i>
<i>Remīniscor wants Perf.</i>			
Expergiscor,	i,	experrectus sum,	<i>to awake.</i>
Fātiscor,	i,	_____	<i>to gape.</i>
<i>Defēliscor, i, defessus sum.</i>			
Fruor,	frui,	{ fructus sum, fruitus sum,	<i>to enjoy.</i>
<i>Part. fruitūrus.</i>			
Fungor,	i,	functus sum,	<i>to perform.</i>
Grādior,	i,	gressus sum,	<i>to walk.</i>
<i>Compounds thus: aggrēdior, i, aggressus sum.</i>			
Irascor,	i,	_____	<i>to be angry.</i>
Lābor,	i,	lapsus sum,	<i>to fall.</i>
Līquor,	i,	_____	<i>to melt.</i>
Lōquor,	i,	locūtus sum,	<i>to speak.</i>
<i>Mīniscor, obsolete; see commīniscor.</i>			
Mōrior,	i (iri, rare),	mortuus sum,	<i>to die.</i>
<i>Part. morītūrus.</i>			
Nanciscor,	i,	nactus (nactus) sum,	<i>to obtain.</i>
Nascor,	i,	nātus sum,	<i>to be born.</i>
<i>Part. nascitūrus.</i>			
Nitor,	i,	{ nīsus sum, nixus sum,	<i>to strive.</i>
Obliviscor,	i,	oblītus sum,	<i>to forget.</i>
Pāciscor,	i,	pactus sum,	<i>to bargain</i>
Pātior,	i,	passus sum,	<i>to suffer.</i>
<i>Perpētior, i, perpeusus sum.</i>			
<i>Plector, not used as Dep.; see amplector.</i>			
Prōfīciscor,	i,	profectus sum,	<i>to set out.</i>
Quēror,	i,	questus sum,	<i>to complain.</i>
Rēmīniscor,	i,	_____	<i>to remember.</i>
Ringor,	i,	_____	<i>to growl.</i>
Sēquor,	i,	secūtus sum,	<i>to follow.</i>



Tuor, <i>antiquated form for tuor</i> , 272. 1.				
Ulciscor,	i,	ultus sum,		<i>to avenge.</i>
Utor,	i,	usus sum,		<i>to use.</i>
Vertor; <i>see devertor, praevertor, revertor</i> , 273. III.				
Vescor,	i,	—		<i>to eat.</i>

*Semi-Deponent.*

Fido,	fidere,	fusus sum,	<i>to trust.</i>
-------	---------	------------	------------------

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION.

283. Principal Parts in: **io, ire, ivi, itum.**

The following are examples:

Audio,	audire,	audivi,	auditum,	<i>to hear.</i>
Condio,	condire,	condivi,	conditum,	<i>to season.</i>
Finio,	finire,	finivi,	finitum,	<i>to finish.</i>
Lenio,	lenire,	lenivi,	lenitum,	<i>to alleviate.</i>
Munio,	munire,	munivi,	munitum,	<i>to fortify.</i>
Punio,	punire,	punivi,	punitum,	<i>to punish.</i>
Scio,	scire,	scivi,	scitum,	<i>to know.</i>
Sepelio,	sepelire,	sepelivi,	sepultum, <sup>1</sup>	<i>to bury.</i>
Sitio,	sitire,	sitivi,	—	<i>to thirst.</i>
Vagio,	vagire,	vagivi,	—	<i>to cry.</i>

1. *Perfect in ii for ivi.*—*V* is often dropped in the ending of the Perfect; *audii* for *audivi*. See 234. 1.

2. *Perfect and Supine Wanting.*—Desideratives (332. III.), except *esurio*, *ire*, —, *itum*; *nupturio*, *ire*, *ivi*, and *parturio*, *ire*, *ivi*, want both Perf. and Sup. Also a few others:

Balbütio,	<i>to stammer.</i>	Gannio,	<i>to bark.</i>	Singultio,	<i>to sob.</i>
Caecütio,	<i>to be blind.</i>	Ineptio,	<i>to trifle.</i>	Süperbio,	<i>to be proud.</i>
Ferio,	<i>to strike.</i>	Sägio,	<i>to be wise.</i>	Tussio,	<i>to cough.</i>
Feröcio,	<i>to be fierce.</i>				

CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.—*Two Irregularities.*

284. **First Irregularity.**—*Perfect after the Analogy of the Second and Third Conjugations.*

*I. Perfect in ui, as in Conjugation II.*

Principal Parts in: **io, ire, ui, tum.**

Amicio,	ämieire,	(amicui <sup>2</sup> ),	amictum,	<i>to clothe.</i>
Apërio,	äpërire,	aperui,	apertum,	<i>to open.<sup>3</sup></i>
Opërio,	öperire,	operui,	opertum,	<i>to cover.<sup>3</sup></i>
Sälio,	salire,	salui (ii),	(saltum),	<i>to leap.</i>

Compounds thus: *desilio*, *ire*, *ui* (*ii*), (*desultum*).

<sup>1</sup> Supine irregular.

<sup>2</sup> Probably not in actual use.

<sup>3</sup> From *pärio* of Conj. III.

## II. Perfect in **si (i)**, as in Conjugation III.

Principal Parts in: **io, ire, si (i), tum (sum)**.

Compērio,	comperire,	compēri,	compertum,	to learn. <sup>1</sup>
Farcio,	farcire,	farsi,	{ fartum, farctum,	to stuff.
Compounds thus: <i>confercio, ire, confersi, confertum</i> .				
Fulcio,	fulcire,	fulsi,	fultum,	to prop.
Haurio,	haurire,	hausi,	haustum, hausum,	to draw.
Raucio,	raucire,	rausi,	rausum,	to be hoarse.
Rēpērio,	reperire,	repēri,	repertum,	to find. <sup>1</sup>
Sancio,	sancire,	sanxi,	{ sancitum, sanctum,	to ratify.
Sarcio,	sarcire,	sarsi,	sartum,	to patch.
Sentio,	sentire,	sensi,	sensum, <sup>2</sup>	to feel.
Sēpio,	sepire,	sepsi,	septum,	to hedge in.
Vincio,	vincire,	vinxi,	vinctum,	to bind.

### 285. Second Irregularity.—Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.

Vēnio,	venire,	vēni,	ventum,	to come.
So compounds: <i>advenio, convenio, devenio, invenio, obvenio, pervenio</i> , etc.				

## 286. DEPONENT VERBS.

### 1. Regular.

Blandior,	iri,	blanditus sum,	to flatter.
Largior,	iri,	largitus sum,	to bestow.
Mentior,	iri,	mentitus sum,	to lie.
Molior,	iri,	molitus sum,	to strive.
Partior,	iri,	partitus sum,	to divide.

*Impertior, iri, impertitus sum*; so *dispertior*.

Pōtior,	iri,	potitus sum, <sup>3</sup>	to obtain.
Sortior,	iri,	sortitus sum,	to draw lots.

### 2. Irregular.

Assentior,	iri,	assensus sum, <sup>4</sup>	to assent.
Expērior,	iri,	expertus sum, <sup>5</sup>	to try.
Mētior,	iri,	mensum sum,	to measure.
Oppērior,	iri,	{ oppertus sum, <sup>5</sup> opperitus sum,	to await.
Ordior,	iri,	orsus sum,	to begin.
Orior,	iri,	ortus sum,	to rise.

Part. *oriturus*.—Pres. Ind. of Conj. III., *orēris, oritur*. Imp. Subj., *orērer* or *orērer*.—So compounds, but *adorior* follows Conj. IV.

<sup>1</sup> From *pārio* of Conj. III.

<sup>2</sup> Comp. *assentio* has a deponent form, *assentior*. See 286. 2.

<sup>3</sup> In the Pres. Ind. and Imp. Subj., forms of Conj. III. occur.

<sup>4</sup> Compounded of *ad* and *sentio*. See *sentio*, 284. II.

<sup>5</sup> Compounded of *ex* and *pario*; *ob* and *pario*. See *comperio*, 284. II.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

287. A few verbs which have unusual personal endings, are called by way of preëminence *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*. They are

*Sum, edo, fero, volo, fio, eo, queo,*  
and their compounds.

288. *Sum, I am.*

The conjugation of *sum* has been already given (204.); its numerous compounds—*absum*,<sup>1</sup> *adsum*, *dēsum*, *praesum*,<sup>1</sup> etc.—except *possum* and *prōsum*, are conjugated in the same way.

289. *Possum, I am able.*

possūm,                      possē,                      pōtūi. ✓

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

possūm,    pōtēs,    pōtest;    possūmūs,    pōtestīs,    possunt.

## IMPERFECT.

pōtērām,    -ērās,    -ērāt;    pōtērāmūs,    -ērātīs,    -ērant.

## FUTURE.

pōtērō,    -ērīs,    -ērīt;    pōtērīmūs,    -ērītīs,    -ērunt.

## PERFECT.

pōtūi,    -istī,    -īt;    pōtūimus,    -istīs,    -ērunt or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

pōtuērām,    -ērās,    -ērāt;    pōtuērāmūs,    -ērātīs,    -ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

pōtuērō,    -ērīs,    -ērīt;    pōtuērīmūs,    -ērītīs,    -ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

possim,    possīs,    possit;    possimūs,    possītīs,    possint.

## IMPERFECT.

possēm,    possēs,    possēt;    possēmūs,    possētīs,    possent.

## PERFECT.

pōtuērīm,    -erīs,    -erīt;    pōtuērīmūs,    -erītīs,    -erint.

<sup>1</sup> *Absum* and *praesum*, like *possum*, have Pres. Participles, *absens* and *praesens*.

## PLUPERFECT.

pōtuissēm, -issēs, -issēt; pōtuissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.—*Wanting.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. possē.  
PERF. pōtuissē.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. pōtens (*as an adjective*).

1. COMPOSITION.—*Possum* is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*, to be. The parts are sometimes separated, and then *potis* is indeclinable: *pōtis sum*, *pōtis sūmus*, etc.

2. IRREGULARITIES.—In *possum* observe

1) That *potis* drops *is* and that *t* final of the stem is assimilated before *s*: *possum* for *potsum*.

2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t*: *potui* for *potfui*.

3) That the Infin. *posse* and Subj. *possem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

3. OLD AND RARE FORMS. See 204. 1 and 2.

290. *Prōsum*, I profit, is compounded of *pro*, for, and *sum*, to be. It inserts *d* when the simple verb begins with *e*; *prōsum*, *prōdēs*, *prōdest*, etc. Otherwise it is conjugated like *sum*.

291. *Edo*, I eat.

This verb is sometimes regular, and sometimes takes forms like those of *sum* which begin in *es*. Thus:

Edō, ēdērē, ēdī, ēsum.

INDICATIVE.—*Present.*

ēdō,	ēdis,	ēdit;	ēdimūs,	ēditīs,	ēdunt.
—	ēs,	est;	—	estis,	—

SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Imperfect.*

ēdērēm,	ēdērēs,	ēdērēt;	ēdērēmūs,	ēdērētīs,	ēdērēt.
essēm,	essēs,	essēt;	essēmūs,	essētīs,	essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	{ ēdē;	ēditē.	
	{ ēs;	estē.	
FUT.	{ ēditō;	ēditōtē,	ēduntō.
	{ estō;	estōtē,	—

INFINITIVE.—*Present.*

ēdērē, essē.

1. PASSIVE FORMS.—*Estār* for *ēdītār* (Indic. Pres.) and *essētār* for *ēdērētār* (Subj. Imp.) also occur.

2. FORMS IN IM for *am* occur in Pres. Subj.: *ēdim*, *ēdis*, *ēdit*, etc., for *ēdām*, *ēdās*, *ēdāt*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS are conjugated like the simple verb, but *comēdo* has in Sup. *comēsum* or *comestum*.

292. *Fero, I bear.*

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Fěřō,                      ferrě,                      tŭli,                      lătŭm.

## INDICATIVE.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

PRES.	fěřō, fers, fert;	fěrimŭs, fertŭs, <sup>1</sup> fěrunť.
IMP.	fěrebām;	fěrebāmŭs.
FUT.	fěřām;	fěřēmŭs.
PERF.	tŭli;	tŭlimŭs.
PLUP.	tŭlěřām;	tŭlěřāmŭs.
FUT. PERF.	tŭlěřō;	tŭlěřimŭs.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fěřām;	fěřāmŭs.
IMP.	ferrēm;	ferrēmŭs. <sup>2</sup>
PERF. *	tŭlěrim;	tŭlěřimŭs.
PLUP.	tŭlissēm;	tŭlissēmŭs.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fěř; <sup>3</sup>	fertě.
FUT.	fertō,	fertōtě
	fertō;	feruntō.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	ferrě. <sup>2</sup>
PERF.	tŭlissě.
FUT.	lătŭrŭs essě.

PRES. fěrens.

FUT. lătŭrŭs.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen.	fěrendi.
Dat.	fěrendō.
Acc.	fěrendŭm.
Abl.	fěrendō.

Acc. lătŭm.  
Abl. lătŭ.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

fěřōr,                      ferī,                      latus sum.

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	fěřōr, ferris, fertŭr; <sup>4</sup>	fěrimŭr, fěrimini, fěrunťŭr.
IMP.	fěrebār;	fěrebāmŭr.
FUT.	fěřār;	fěřēmŭr.
PERF.	lătŭs sŭm;	lătŭ sŭmŭs.
PLUP.	lătŭs őrām;	lătŭ őrāmŭs.
FUT. PERF.	lătŭs őrō;	lătŭ őrimŭs.

<sup>1</sup> *Fers* for *fěris*; *fert* for *fěrit*; *fertŭs* for *fěritŭs* (*i* dropped).

<sup>2</sup> *Ferrem*, etc. for *fěřērēm*, etc.; *ferrě* for *fěřērě* (*e* dropped).

<sup>3</sup> *Fěř* for *fěřě*; *fertō*, *fertě*, *fertōtě* for *fěritō*, *fěritě*, *fěritōtě* (*i* dropped).

<sup>4</sup> *Ferris* for *fěřērŭs*; *fertŭr* for *fěritŭr*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fērār;	fērāmūr.
IMP.	ferrēr;	ferrēmūr. <sup>1</sup>
PERF.	lātūs sīm;	lāti sīmūs.
PLUP.	lātūs essēm;	lāti essēmūs.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ferrē; <sup>1</sup>	fērīmīnī.
FUT.	fertōr, <sup>2</sup> fertōr; <sup>2</sup>	fēruntōr.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	ferrī. <sup>3</sup>	
PERF.	lātūs essē.	PERF. lātūs.
FUT.	lātūm irī.	FUT. fērendūs.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Fero*, it will be seen, has two principal irregularities:

1) It forms its Perf. and Sup. *tūli* (rarely *tetūli*) and *lātum* from obsolete stems.  
2) It drops the connecting vowel *e* or *i* in certain forms of the Pres. Indic. and Infīn., the Imperf. Subj. and the Imperat. It doubles *r* in the Pres. Infīn. Pass.

2. COMPOUNDS of *fero* are conjugated like the simple verb, but in a few of them the preposition suffers a euphonic change:

<i>ab-</i>	<i>aufēro</i> ,	<i>aufferē</i> ,	<i>abstūli</i> ,	<i>ablātum</i> .
<i>ad-</i>	<i>aſſēro</i> ,	<i>afferre</i> ,	<i>attūli</i> ,	<i>allātum</i> .
<i>con-</i>	<i>confēro</i> ,	<i>conferre</i> ,	<i>contūli</i> ,	<i>collātum</i> .
<i>dis-</i>	<i>diffēro</i> ,	<i>differre</i> ,	<i>distūli</i> ,	<i>dilātum</i> .
<i>ex-</i>	<i>effēro</i> ,	<i>efferre</i> ,	<i>extūli</i> ,	<i>elātum</i> .
<i>in-</i>	<i>infēro</i> ,	<i>inferre</i> ,	<i>intūli</i> ,	<i>illātum</i> .
<i>ob-</i>	<i>offēro</i> ,	<i>offerre</i> ,	<i>obtūli</i> ,	<i>oblātum</i> .
<i>sub-</i>	<i>suffēro</i> ,	<i>sufferre</i> ,	<i>sustūli</i> ,	<i>sublātum</i> .

*Sustūli* and *sublātum* are not used in the sense of *suffēro*, to bear, but they supply the Perf. and Sup. of *tollo*, to raise. See 280.

293. *Volo, I am willing.*—*Nolo, I am unwilling.*—*Malo, I prefer.*

vōlō,	vellē,	vōluī.
nōlō	nollē,	nōluī.
mālō,	mallē,	māluī.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

vōlō,	nōlō,	mālō,
vīs,	non vīs,	māvīs,
vult;	non vult;	māvult;
vōlūmūs,	nōlūmūs,	mālūmūs,
vultīs,	non vultīs,	māvultīs,
vōlunt.	nōlunt	mālunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Ferrēr*, etc., for *fērērēr*, etc.; *ferrē* for *fērērē*.

<sup>2</sup> *Fertōr* for *fērītōr*.

<sup>3</sup> *Ferrī* for *fērī* (Conj. III).

## IMPERFECT.

völēbām, bās, etc.		nölēbām, bās, etc.		mālēbām, bās, etc.
--------------------	--	--------------------	--	--------------------

## FUTURE.

vōlām.		nōlām.		mālām.
--------	--	--------	--	--------

## PERFECT.

vōluī.		nōluī.		māluī.
--------	--	--------	--	--------

## PLUPERFECT.

vōluērām.		nōluērām.		māluērām.
-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

vōluērō.		nōluērō.		māluērō.
----------	--	----------	--	----------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

vělīm		nōlīm		mālīm
vělīs		nōlīs		mālīs
vělīt		nōlīt		mālīt
vělīmūs		nōlīmūs		mālīmūs
vělītīs		nōlītīs		mālītīs
vělīnt.		nōlīnt.		mālīnt.

## IMPERFECT.

vellēm <sup>1</sup>		nollēm		mallēm
vellēs		nollēs		mallēs
vellēt		nollēt		mallēt
vellēmūs		nollēmūs		mallēmūs
vellētīs		nollētīs		mallētīs
vellent.		nollent.		mallent.

## PERFECT.

vōluērīm.		nōluērīm.		māluērīm.
-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------

## PLUPERFECT.

vōluissēm.		nōluissēm.		māluissēm.
------------	--	------------	--	------------

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

	nōlī, nōlītē.	
--	---------------	--

## FUTURE.

	nōlītō, nōlītōtē;	
	nōlītō, nōluntō.	

<sup>1</sup> *Vellem* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velērem*, *velēre*; *e* is dropped and *r* assimilated; *velērem*, *velrem*, *vellem*; *velēre*, *velre*, *velle*. So *nollem* and *nolle*, for *nolērem* and *nolēre*; *mallem* and *malle*, for *malērem* and *malēre*.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

vellě.		nollě.		mallě.
--------	--	--------	--	--------

## PERFECT.

võluissě.		nõluissě.		mõluissě.
-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------

## PARTICIPLE.

võlens.		nõlens.	
---------	--	---------	--

1. COMPOSITION.—*Nõlo* is compounded of *ne* or *non* and *võlo*; *mõlo*, of *mõgis* and *võlo*.

2. RARE FORMS.—(1) Of *võlo*: *volt*, *voltis*, for *vult*, *vultis*; *sīs*, *sultis*, for *sīs*, *sultis*; *vin* for *vīsne*.—(2) Of *nõlo*: *neris*, *nerult* (*nerolt*), *nerelle*, for *non*, *ris*, *non vult*, *nolle*.—(3) Of *malo*: *marõlo*, *marẽlim*, *marellem*, for *malo*, *malim*, *mallem*.

294. *Fio*, *I become*.

<i>Fio</i> ,	<i>fiẽrĩ</i> ,	<i>factũs sum</i> .
--------------	----------------	---------------------

## INDICATIVE.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

PRES.	<i>fiõ</i> , <i>fis</i> , <i>fĩt</i> ;	<i>fimũs</i> , <i>fĩtis</i> , <i>fĩunt</i> .
IMP.	<i>fiẽbãm</i> ;	<i>fiẽbãmũs</i> .
FUT.	<i>fiãm</i> ;	<i>fĩẽmũs</i> .
PERF.	<i>factũs sũm</i> ;	<i>factĩ sũmũs</i> .
PLUP.	<i>factũs ẽrãm</i> ;	<i>factĩ ẽrãmũs</i> .
FUT. PERF.	<i>factũs ẽrõ</i> ;	<i>factĩ ẽrĩmũs</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<i>fiãm</i> ;	<i>fĩãmũs</i> .
IMP.	<i>fiẽrẽm</i> ;	<i>fĩẽrẽmũs</i> .
PERF.	<i>factũs sim</i> ;	<i>factĩ simũs</i> .
PLUP.	<i>factũs essẽm</i> ;	<i>factĩ essẽmũs</i> .

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>fi</i> ;	<i>fĩtẽ</i> .
-------	-------------	---------------

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	<i>fiẽrĩ</i> .	
PERF.	<i>factũs essẽ</i> .	PERF. <i>factũs</i> .
FUT.	<i>factũm iřĩ</i> .	FUT. <i>fĩaciendũs</i> .

1. IRREGULARITY.—*Fio* is only slightly irregular, as will be seen from the paradigm.

2. MEANING.—*Fio* means (1) *to become*, (2) *to be made, appointed*. In the second sense it is used as the passive of *facio*. See 279.

3. COMPOUNDS of *fio* are conjugated like the simple verb, but *confĩt*, *desĩt*, and *ĩnĩt* are defective. See 297. III. 2.



295. *Eo, I go.*

*Eō,*                      *irē,*                      *ivī,*                      *itūm.*

## INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	<i>eō, is, it;</i>	<i>imūs, itīs, eunt.</i>
IMP.	<i>ibām;</i>	<i>ibāmūs.</i>
FUT.	<i>ibō;</i>	<i>ibimūs.</i>
PERF.	<i>ivī;</i>	<i>ivimūs.</i>
PLUP.	<i>ivērām;</i>	<i>ivērāmūs.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>ivērō;</i>	<i>ivērīmūs.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<i>eām;</i>	<i>eāmūs.</i>
IMP.	<i>irēm;</i>	<i>irēmūs.</i>
PERF.	<i>ivērīm;</i>	<i>ivērīmūs.</i>
PLUP.	<i>ivissēm;</i>	<i>ivissēmūs.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>ī;</i>	<i>itē.</i>
FUT.	<i>itō,</i> <i>itō;</i>	<i>itōtē</i> <i>euntō.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>irē.</i>
PERF.	<i>ivissē.</i>
FUT.	<i>itūrūs essē.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	<i>iens. Gen. euntīs.</i>
FUT.	<i>itūrūs.</i>

## GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eundī.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eundō.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundūm.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eundō.</i>

## SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>itūm.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>itū.</i>

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Eo* is a verb of the fourth conjugation, but it forms the Sup. with a short vowel (*itum*) and is irregular in several parts of the present system. It admits contraction according to 234: *istis* for *ivistis*, etc.

2. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—*Eo* as an intransitive verb wants the Passive, except when used impersonally in the third singular *itur*, *ibatur*, etc. (301. 3), but *iri*, the Pass. Infin., occurs as an auxiliary in the Fut. Infin. Pass. of the regular conjugations: *amatum iri*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS of *eo* are generally conjugated like *eo*, but shorten *iri* into *ii*.—*Veneo* (*venum eo*) has sometimes *veniēbam* for *venībam*. Many compounds want the supine, and a few admit in the Fut. a rare form in *eam*, *ies*, *iēt*.

Transitive compounds have also the Passive: *adeo*, to approach, *adeor*, *adiris*, *aditur*, etc.

*Ambio* is regular, like *audio*, though *ambībam* for *ambiēbam* occurs.

296. *Queo, I am able. Nequeo, I am unable.*

*Queo, quīre, quīvi, quītum*, and *Nequeo, nequīre, nequīvi (ii), nequītum*, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the Imperative and Gerund, and are rare, except in the Present tense.<sup>1</sup>

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

297. Defective Verbs want certain parts: we specify the following.<sup>2</sup>

## I. PRESENT SYSTEM WANTING.

*Coepi, I have begun. Memīni, I remember. Odi, I hate.*

## INDICATIVE.

PERF.	coepī.	mēmīnī.	ōdī.
PLUP.	coepērām.	mēmīnērām.	ōdērām.
FUT. PERF.	coepērō.	mēmīnērō.	ōdērō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERF.	coepērīm.	mēmīnērīm.	ōdērīm.
PLUP.	coepissēm.	mēmīnissēm.	ōdissem.

## IMPERATIVE.

S. mēmētō.
P. mēmētōte.

## INFINITIVE.

PERF.	coepissē.	memīnisce.	ōdisce.
FUT.	coeptūrū essē.		ōsūrū essē.

## PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	coeptūs.	ōsūs. <sup>3</sup>
FUT.	coeptūrūs.	ōsūrūs.

1. PASSIVE FORM.—With passive infinitives *coepī* generally takes the passive form: *coeptus sum, eram*, etc. The Part. *coeptus* is passive in sense.

2. PRESENT IN SENSE.—*Memīni* and *ōdī* are present in sense; hence in the Pluperf. and Fut. Perf. they have the sense of the Imperf. and Fut.—*Nōvi*, I know, Perf. of *nosco*, to learn, and *consuēvi*, I am wont, Perf. of *consuesco*, to accustom one's self, are also present in sense.

<sup>1</sup> A passive form, *quītur, nequītur*, etc., sometimes occurs before a Pass. Infin.

<sup>2</sup> Many, which want the Perf. or Sup. or both, have been mentioned under the Classification of Verbs.

<sup>3</sup> *Osus* is active in sense, *hating*, but is rare except in compounds: *exōsus, perōsus*.

## II. PARTS OF EACH SYSTEM WANTING.

1. Aio, *I say, say yes.*<sup>1</sup>

INDIC.	Pres.	āio,	ais, <sup>2</sup>	ait;	—	—	aiunt.
	Imp.	aiēbām,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbātīs,	-ēbant. <sup>3</sup>
	Perf.	—	—	ait;	—	—	—
SUBJ.	Pres.	—	aiās,	aiāt;	—	—	aiant.
IMPER.	Pres.	ai (rare).					
PART.	Pres.	aiens (as adjective).					

2. Inquam, *I say.*

INDIC.	Pres.	inquām,	inquīs,	inquīt;	inquīmūs,	inquītīs,	inquiunt.
	Imp.	—	—	inquiebāt; <sup>4</sup>	—	—	—
	Fut.	—	inquies,	inquiet;	—	—	—
	Perf.	—	inquisti,	inquīt;	—	—	—
IMPER.	Pres.	inque.	Fut.	inquitō. <sup>5</sup>			

3. Fari, *to speak.*<sup>6</sup>

INDIC.	Pres.	—	—	fātur;	—	—	—
	Fut.	fābōr,	—	fābitūr;	—	—	—
	Perf.	fātūs sūm,	es,	est;	fāti sūmūs,	estīs,	sunt.
	Plup.	fātūs erām,	erās,	erāt;	fāti erāmūs,	erātīs,	erant.
SUBJ.	Perf.	fātūs sīm,	sīs,	sīt;	fāti sīmūs,	sītīs,	sint.
	Plup.	fātūs essēm,	essēs,	essēt;	fāti essēmūs,	essētīs,	essent.
IMPER.	Pres.	fārē.					
INFIN.	Pres.	fārī.					
PART.	Pres.	(fans) fantis,	Perf.	fātūs,	Fut.	fandūs.	
GERUND, Gen. and Abl.	fandī, dō.	SUPINE, Abl.	fātū.				

## III. IMPERATIVES AND ISOLATED FORMS.

1. IMPERATIVES.—	āvē,	avēte;	avētō;	INF.	avēre,	hail.
	salvē,	salvētē,	salvētō; <sup>7</sup>		salvēre,	hail.
	cēdō,	cettē,				tell me, give me.
	āgē, <sup>8</sup>	āgītē,				come.
	āpāgē,					begone.

<sup>1</sup> In this verb *a* and *i* do not form a diphthong; before a vowel the *i* has the sound of *y*: *a-yo, a'-is*. See § 2.

<sup>2</sup> The interrogative form *aisne* is often shortened to *ain'*.

<sup>3</sup> *Aibam, aibas*, etc., occur in comedy.

<sup>4</sup> Also written *inquibat*.

<sup>5</sup> A few forms of the Subj. are sometimes given, but they are not found in the classics.

<sup>6</sup> *Fārī* is used chiefly in poetry. Compounds have some forms not found in the simple; thus: *affāmur, affūmīni, affābar, effūbēris*. Subj. Imp. *fārēr* also occurs in compounds.

<sup>7</sup> The Fut. *salvēbis* is also used for the Imperat.

<sup>8</sup> *Age* is also used in the sense of the Plural.

## 2. ISOLATED FORMS.

INDIC. Pres.	Fut.	SUB. Pres. Imp.	INFIN.
confīt, —	—	confiāt, confīrēt,	confīrī, <i>to be done.</i>
defīt, defiunt, defiet,	—	defiāt, —	defīrī, <i>to be wanting.</i>
infīt, infiunt, —	—	—	— <i>to begin.</i>
SUB. Imp. fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrēt, — — —	fōrent.	INF. fōrē. <sup>1</sup>	
IND. Pres. ōvāt.	PART. ōvans,		<i>he rejoices.</i>
IND. Pres. quaesō, quaesūmus, <sup>2</sup>			<i>I pray.</i>

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Impersonal Verbs never admit a personal subject. They correspond to the English Impersonal with *it*: *licet*, it is lawful, *oportet*, it behooves.<sup>3</sup> They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

## 299. Strictly Impersonal are only:

Dēcēt, dēcūt,	<i>it becomes.</i> <sup>4</sup>	Pīgēt, { pīgūt,	<i>it grieves.</i>
Lībēt, { libuit,	<i>it pleases.</i> <sup>4</sup>	Poenītēt, poenituit,	<i>it causes regret; poenitet me, I repent.</i>
Līcēt, { licuit,	<i>it is lawful.</i> <sup>4</sup>	Pūdēt, { pūduīt,	<i>it shames.</i>
Līquēt, licuit,	<i>it is evident.</i> <sup>4</sup>	Pūdītūm est,	
Mīsērēt, mīsērītūm est,	<i>it excites pity;</i>	Taedēt, <i>it wearies; pertaedēt, pertaesūm est.</i>	
me mīsēret,	<i>I pity.</i>		
Oportēt, oportuit,	<i>it behooves.</i>		

1. PARTICIPLES are generally wanting, but a few occur, though with a somewhat modified sense: (1) from LIBET: *libens*, willing; (2) from LICET: *licens*, free; *licitus*, allowed; (3) from POENITET: *poenitens*, penitent; *poenitendus*, to be repented of; (4) from PUDET: *pudens*, modest; *pudendus*, shameful.

2. GERUNDS are generally wanting, but occur in rare instances; *poenitendum*, *pudendū*.

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulmīnāt,	<i>it lightens.</i>	Pluīt (P. pluit),	<i>it rains.</i>
Grandināt,	<i>it hails.</i>	Rōrāt,	<i>it dew falls.</i>
Lāpīdāt,	<i>it rains stones.</i>	Tōnāt (tōnuīt),	<i>it thunders.</i>
Lūcescīt,	<i>it grows light.</i>	Vespērascīt,	<i>evening approaches.</i>
Nīngīt (nīnixit),	<i>it snows.</i>		

<sup>1</sup> *Forem* = *essem*: *fore* = *futurum esse*. See 204. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Old forms for *quaero* and *quaerimus*.

<sup>3</sup> The real subject is generally an infinitive or clause, sometimes a neuter pronoun: *hoc fieri oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

<sup>4</sup> These four occur in the third person plural, but without a personal subject. So the Comp. *dēdēcet*. So also some of the others in rare instances.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally. Thus

1. The following :

Accēdit,	<i>it happens.</i>	Fit,	<i>it happens.</i>
Appāret,	<i>it appears.</i>	Intērest,	<i>it concerns.</i>
Attinet,	<i>it concerns.</i>	Jūvat,	<i>it delights.</i>
Condūcit,	<i>it is useful.</i>	Pātet,	<i>it is plain.</i>
Constat,	<i>it is evident.</i>	Pertinet,	<i>it pertains.</i>
Contingit,	<i>it happens.</i>	Plācet,	<i>it pleases.</i>
Convēnit,	<i>it is fitting.</i>	Praestat,	<i>it is better.</i>
Delectat,	<i>it delights.</i>	Praetērit (me),	<i>it escapes (me).</i>
Displicet,	<i>it displeases.</i>	Rēfert,	<i>it concerns.</i>
Dōlet,	<i>it grieves.</i>	Restat,	<i>it remains.</i>
Evēnit,	<i>it happens.</i>	Sūbit,	<i>it occurs.</i>
Expēdit,	<i>it is expedient.</i>	Sufficit,	<i>it suffices.</i>
Fallit } (me),	<i>it escapes (me).</i>	Supērest,	<i>it remains.</i>
Fūgit }		Vācat,	<i>there is leisure.</i>

2. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation (233) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter :

Mihi scribendum est, *I must write* ; tibi scribendum est, *you must write* ; illi scribendum est, *he must write*.

3. Verbs which are intransitive in the active, i. e., do not govern the accusative, can only be used impersonally in the passive, and many others may be so used. The participle is then neuter :

Mihi crēditur, *it is credited to me, I am believed* ; tibi crēditur, *you are believed* ; illi crēditur, *he is believed* ; certātur, *it is contended* ; curritur, *there is running, people run* ; pugnātur, *it is fought, they, we, etc., fight* ; scribitur, *it is written* ; venitur, *they come, we come, etc.* ; vivitur, *we, you, they live*.

## CHAPTER V.

### PARTICLES.

302. THE Latin has four parts of speech sometimes called *Particles*: the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*.

### ADVERBS.

303. The Adverb is the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: *celeriter currere*, to run swiftly; *tam celer*, so swift; *tam celeriter*, so swiftly.

304. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into four principal classes:

### I. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

Hīc,	<i>here ;</i>	hūc,	<i>hither ;</i>	hinc,	<i>hence.</i>
illīc,	<i>there ;</i>	illūc,	<i>thither ;</i>	illinc,	<i>thence.</i>
istīc,	<i>there ;</i>	istūc,	<i>thither ;</i>	istinc,	<i>thence.</i>
ūbi,	<i>where ?</i>	quō,	<i>whither ?</i>	undē,	<i>whence ?</i>

### II. ADVERBS OF TIME.

Hōdiē,	<i>to-day.</i>	nondum,	<i>not yet.</i>	saepē,	<i>often.</i>
ibi,	<i>then.</i>	nunc,	<i>now.</i>	sēmēl,	<i>once.</i>
jam,	<i>now.</i>	nunquam,	<i>never.</i>	tum,	<i>then.</i>
jamdiū,	<i>long since.</i>	ōlim,	<i>formerly.</i>	unquam,	<i>ever.</i>

### III. ADVERBS OF MANNER, MEANS, DEGREE.

Adeo,	<i>so.</i>	paenē,	<i>almost.</i>	sīc,	<i>so.</i>
aliter,	<i>otherwise.</i>	pālam,	<i>openly.</i>	ūt,	<i>as.</i>
ita,	<i>so.</i>	prorsus,	<i>wholly.</i>	valdē,	<i>much.</i>
māgis,	<i>more.</i>	rīte,	<i>rightly.</i>	vix,	<i>scarcely.</i>

### IV. ADVERBS OF CAUSE, INFERENCE.

Cūr,	<i>why ?</i>	eo,	<i>for this reason.</i>
quārē,	<i>wherefore.</i>	ideo,	<i>on this account.</i>
quamobrem,	<i>wherefore.</i>	idcirco,	<i>therefore.</i>
quapropter,	<i>wherefore.</i>	proptēreā,	<i>therefore.</i>

305. COMPARISON.—Most Adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending *us* of the adjective into *ē*:

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	<i>lofty.</i>
alte,	altius,	altissime,	<i>loftily.</i>
prūdēns,	prudēntior,	prudētissimus,	<i>prudent.</i>
prūdēnter,	prudētius,	prudētissime,	<i>prudently.</i>

1. MAGIS AND MAXIME.—When the adjective is compared with *māgis* and *maxīme*, the adverb is compared in the same way:

egregius,	māgis egregius,	maxīme egregius,	<i>excellent.</i>
egregie,	māgis egregie,	maxīme egregie,	<i>excellently.</i>

2. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.—When the adjective is irregular, the adverb has the same irregularity:

bōnus,	melior,	optīmus,	<i>good.</i>
bēne,	melius,	optīme,	<i>well.</i>
māle,	pejus,	pessīme,	<i>badly.</i>

3. DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.—When the adjective is defective, the adverb is generally defective:

_____	deterior,	deterrimus,	worse.
_____	deterius,	deterrime,	worse.
nōvus,	_____	novissimus,	new.
nōve,	_____	novissime,	newly.
4. COMPARED.—A few not derived from adjectives are compared :			
diū,	diutius,	diutissime,	for a long time.
sæpē,	sæpius,	sæpissime,	often.
sātis,	satius,	_____	sufficiently.
nūper,	_____	nuperrime,	recently.

5. NOT COMPARED.—Most adverbs not derived from adjectives, as also those from adjectives incapable of comparison (169), are not compared: *hic*, here; *nunc*, now; *vulgariter*, commonly.

6. SUPERLATIVES IN *o* OR *um* are used in a few adverbs: *primo*, *primum*, *potissimum*.

## PREPOSITIONS.

306. The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me.

For list of prepositions, see 433–435.

307. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—*Ambi*, *amb*, around, about; *dis*, *di*, asunder; *re*, *red*, back; *se*, aside, apart; *ne* and *ve*, not, are called inseparable prepositions, because they are used only in composition.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

308. Conjunctions are mere connectives: *pater et filius*, the father and son; *pater aut filius*, the father or son.

309. Conjunctions are divided, according to their use, into two classes:

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect similar constructions: *labor voluptasque*, labor and pleasure; *Carthaginem cepit ac diruit*, he took and destroyed Carthage.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect subordinate with principal constructions: *haec dum colligunt, effugit*, while they collect these things, he escapes.

### I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

310. Coördinate Conjunctions comprise five subdivisions:

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting union:

Et, quē, atquē, āc, and. Etiam, quōquē, also. Nēquē, nēc, and not. Nēquē—nēcquē, nēc—nēc, nēcquē—nēc, neither—nor.

## 2. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting separation :

Aut, vĕl, vĕ, sĭvĕ (seu), *or*. Aut—aut, vĕl—vĕl, *either—or*. Sĭvĕ—sĭvĕ, *either—or*.

## 3. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting opposition :

Sĕd, autem, vĕrum, vĕro, *but*. At, *but, on the contrary*. Atquĕ, *but rather*. Cĕtĕrum, *but still*. Tāmen, *yet*.

## 4. ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inference :

Ergo, ĭgitŭr, inde, proinde, ĭtāque, *hence, therefore*. See also 587, IV. 2.

## 5. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause :

Nam, namque, ĕnim, etĕnim, *for*.

## II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

311. Subordinate Conjunctions comprise eight subdivisions :

## 1. TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting time :

Quando, quum, *when*. Ut, ŭbi, *as, when*. Quum prĭmum, ut prĭmum, ŭbi prĭmum, sĭmŭl, sĭmŭlac, sĭmŭlatque, *as soon as*. Dum, dŏnĕc, quoad, quamdiu, *while, until, as long as*. Antĕquam, priusquam, *before*. Postĕquam, *after*.

## 2. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting comparison :

Ut, ŭti, sĭcŭt, sĭcŭtĭ, *as, so as*. Vĕlŭt, *just as*. Praeŭt, proŭt, *according as, in comparison with*. Quam, *as*. Tanquam, quāsi, ŭt sĭ, āc sĭ, vĕlŭt sĭ, *as if*.

## 3. CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting condition :

Sĭ, *if*. Sĭ nŏn, nĭsĭ, nĭ, *if not*. Sĭn, *but if*. Sĭ quĭdem, *if indeed*. Sĭ mŏdŏ, dum, mŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ, *if only*.

## 4. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting concession :

Quamquam, licet, quum, *although*. Etsĭ, tāmetsĭ, etiamsĭ, *even if*. Quamvis, quantumvis, quantumlibet, *however much, although*. Ut, *grant that*. Nĕ, *grant that not*.

## 5. FINAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting purpose or end :

Ut, ŭti, *that, in order that*. Nĕ, nĕvĕ (neu), *that not*. Quŏ, *that*. Quŏmĭrŭs, *that not*.

6. CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting consequence or result :

Ut, *so that*. Ut nŏn, quĭn, *so that not*.

## 7. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause :



Quiā, quōd, *because*. Quum, *since*. Quōniam, quandō, quandōquīdem, sīquīdem, *since indeed*.

### 8. INTERROGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inquiry :

Ně, nonně, num, utrum, an, *whether*. An nōn, necne, *or not*.

## INTERJECTIONS.

**312.** Interjections are certain particles used as expressions of feeling or as mere marks of address. They may express

1. Astonishment : ō, hem, ehem, hui, aha, ātat, pāpae, vah, ēn, eccē.
2. Joy : io, ha, he, eu, ēvoe.
3. Sorrow : vae, hei, heu, ēheu, ohē, ah, au, prō or proh.
4. Disgust : ahā, phui, āpāgě.
5. Calling : heus, o, cho, chodum.
6. Praise : eugě, ejā, hejā.

## CHAPTER VI.

### FORMATION OF WORDS.

**313.** WORDS may be formed in two ways :

I. By DERIVATION ; i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the stems of other words : *amor*, love, from *amo*, to love.

II. By COMPOSITION ; i. e., by the union of two or more words or their stems : *benevōlens*, well-wishing, from *bene*, well, and *volens*, wishing.

1. SIMPLE and COMPOUND.—Words formed by composition are called *Compounds* ; those not thus formed are called *Simple Words*.

2. PRIMITIVE and DERIVATIVE.—Simple words formed by derivation are called *Derivatives* ; those not thus formed are called *Primitives*.

### DERIVATION OF WORDS.

#### N O U N S .

**314.** Nouns are derived from other *Nouns*, from *Adjectives*, and from *Verbs*.

## I. NOUNS FROM NOUNS.

## 315. DIMINUTIVES generally end in

*ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum, cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum.*

hort-ŭlus,	a small garden,	from	hortus,	garden.
virg-ŭla,	a small branch,	"	virga,	branch.
oppid-ŭlum,	a small town,	"	oppidum,	town.
flos-cŭlus,	a small flower,	"	flos,	flower.
part-i-cŭla,	a small part,	"	pars,	part.
munus-cŭlum,	a small present,	"	munus,	present.

1. **Ulus, ŭla, ŭlum** are generally added to the stems of nouns of Dec. I. and II., and to some of Dec. III.

2. **Olus, ōla, ōlum** are used for *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum*, when a vowel precedes: *filiŏlus*, little son, from *filius*; *filiŏla*, little daughter, from *filia*; *atriŏlum*, small hall, from *atrium*.

3. **Ellus, ella, ellum; illus, illa, illum**, are sometimes used, especially with primitives of Dec. I. and II., whose stems end in **l, n, or r**; but *el* and *il* in these endings generally displace the last syllable of the stem: *ocellus*, small eye, from *ocŭlus*; *fabella*, short fable, from *fabŭla*; *bacillum*, small staff, from *bacŭlum*.

4. **Cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum** are used with primitives of Dec. IV. and V., and with some of Dec. III. These are appended

1) To the *Nominative*: *flos, flos-cŭlus*; *mulier, mulierecŭla*; *munus, munus-cŭlum*.

2) To the *Stem* with a connecting vowel **i**, sometimes **e**: *pons* (bridge), *pont-i-cŭlus*; *pars, particŭla*; *vulpes* (fox), *vulpecŭla*.

3) To the *Stem* of nouns in **o** (G. **onis, inis**), with stem-vowel changed to **u**: *homo* (man), *homun-cŭlus*; *virgo* (maiden), *virguncŭla*. Like nouns in **o**, a few other words form diminutives in *uncŭlus, uncŭla*: *avus* (uncle), *avuncŭlus*; *domus* (house), *domuncŭla*.

5. **Uleus** and **cio** are rare: *equuleus*, a small horse, from *equus*; *homuncio*, a small man, from *homo*.

## 316. PATRONYMICS, or names of descent, generally end in

<i>ides,</i>	<i>ides,</i>	<i>iădes,</i>	<i>ădes,</i>	<i>masculine.</i>
<i>is,</i>	<i>ēis,</i>	<i>ias,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>feminine.</i>

Tantal-ides,	son of Tantalus;	Tantăl-is,	daughter of Tantalus.
Thes-ides,	son of Theseus;	Thes-ēis,	daughter of Theseus.
Laert-iădes,	son of Laertes;	Laert-ias,	daughter of Laertes.
Thesti-ădes,	son of Thestius;	Thesti-as,	daughter of Thestius.

1. **Ides** (I) and **is** are the common endings.

2. **Ides** (I) and **ēis** are used especially with primitives in *eus*.

3. **Iădes, ădes, and ias, as,** are used principally with primitives in *ius*, and in those in *as* and *es* of Dec. I.—*Aenēas* has *Aeneădes*, masc. and *Aenēis*, fem.

4. **Ine** and **ōne** are rare feminine endings: *Neptun-ine*, daughter of Neptune; *Acrisi-ōne*, daughter of Acrisius.

317. DESIGNATIONS OF PLACE are often formed with the endings

ārium,	ētum,	ile.
columb-ārium,	a dovecot,	from columba.
querc-ētum,	a forest of oaks,	“ quercus.
ov-ile,	a sheepfold,	“ ovis.

1. **Ārium** designates the place where anything is kept, a receptacle: *aerārium*, treasury, from *aes*.

2. **Ētum**, used with names of trees and plants, designates the place where they flourish: *olivētum*, an olive grove, from *oliva*.

3. **Ile**, used with names of animals, designates their stall or fold: *bovile*, stall for cattle, from *bos*.

318. DERIVATIVES are also formed with several other endings, especially with

ārius,	io,	ium,	itium,	tus (itus),	ātus.
statu-ārius,		a statuary,	from	statua.	
lud-io,		a player,	“	ludus.	
sacerdot-ium,		priesthood,	“	sacerdos.	
serv-itium,		servitude,	“	servus.	
vir-tus,		virtue,	“	vir.	
consul-ātus,		consulship,	“	consul.	

1. **Ārius** and **io** generally designate one's occupation.

2. **Ium** and **itium** denote office, condition, or collection: *servitium*, servitude, sometimes a collection of servants.

3. **Tus** and **itus** designate some characteristic or condition: *virtus*, manliness, virtue, from *vir*; *juventus*, youth, from *juvēnis*.

4. **Ātus** denotes rank, office, collection: *consulātus*, consulship, from *consul*; *senātus*, senate, collection of old men, from *senex*.

5. PATRIAL OR GENTILE NOUNS.—See 326. 3.

## II. NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES.

319. From Adjectives are formed various *Abstract Nouns* with the endings

ia,	itia,	itas,	itūdo,	imōnia.
diligent-ia,	diligence,	from	diligens.	
amic-itia,	friendship,	“	amicus.	
bon-itas,	goodness,	“	bonus.	
sol-itūdo,	solitude,	“	solus.	
acer-imonia,	sharpness,	“	acer.	

1. **Itas**, **tas**, **ētas**.—*Itas* sometimes drops *i*: *libertas*, liberty, from *liber*; *ētas* is used with primitives in *ius*: *piētas*, piety, from *pius*. Sometimes

the stem of the adjective is slightly changed: *facilis*, *facultas*, faculty; *difficilis*, *difficultas*, difficulty; *potens*, *potestas*, power; *honestus*, *honestas*, honesty.

2. **Itūdo** and **ītas**.—A few adjectives form abstracts with both these endings: *firmus*, *firmitas*, *firmitūdo*, firmness. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus* generally change *tus* into *tūdo*: *sollicitus*, *sollicitūdo*, solicitude.

3. **Imonia** is rare: *Parsimonia*, parsimony, from *parcus*, changes *c* into *s*.

### III. NOUNS FROM VERBS.

#### 1. From the Present Stem.

320. From the Present stem are formed *Verbal Nouns* with various endings, especially with

**or**; **ium**; **men**, **mentum**; **būlum**, **cūlum**, **brum**, **crum**, **trum**.

am-or,	love,	from	amo.
tīm-or,	fear,	"	timco.
gaud-ium,	joy,	"	gaudeo.
cert-ā-men,	contest,	"	certo.
orn-ā-mentum,	ornament,	"	orno.
voc-a-būlum,	appellation,	"	voco.
veh-i-cūlum,	vehicle,	"	veho.
fl-a-brum,	blast,	"	flo.
simul-ā-crum,	image,	"	simūlo.
ar-ā-trum,	plough,	"	aro.

1. **Or** designates the *action* or *state* denoted by the verb.

2. **Ium** has nearly the same force, but sometimes designates the *thing done*: *aedificium*, edifice, from *aedifico*.

3. **Men** and **mentum** generally designate the *means* of an action, or its involuntary *subject*: *flumen*, a stream, something which flows, from *fluo*; *agmen*, an army in motion, from *ago*.

These endings are generally preceded by a connecting vowel: *orn-a-mentum*, ornament; *vest-i-mentum*, clothing. Sometimes the stem itself is shortened or changed: *fragmentum*, fragment, from *frango*; *momentum*, moving force, from *moveo*.

4. **Būlum**, **cūlum**, **brum**, **crum**, **trum** designate the *instrument* or the *place* of the action: *vehicūlum*, vehicle, instrument of the action, from *veho*; *stabūlum*, stall, place of the action, from *sto*.

These endings generally take a connecting vowel. Sometimes the stem itself is changed: *sepulcrum*, sepulchre, from *sepelio*.

5. **Ulum**, **ūla**.—*Ulum* for *cūlum* occurs after *c* and *g*: *vinc-ūlum*, a bond, from *vincio*; *cing-ūlum*, girdle, from *cingo*. *Ula* also occurs: *regūla*, rule, from *rego*.

6. **Us**, **a**, **o** sometimes designate the *agent* of the action: *coquus*, cook, from *coquo*; *scriba*, writer, from *scribo*; *erro*, wanderer, from *erro*.

7. **Ela**, **ido**, **igo** and a few other endings also occur: *querēla*, complaint, from *queror*; *cupīdo*, desire, from *cupio*; *origo*, origin, from *orior*.

## 2. From the Supine Stem.

321. From the Supine stem are formed *Verbal Nouns* with the endings

or,	io,	us,	ūra.
amāt-or,	lover,	from	amo.
audit-or,	hearer,	"	audio.
monit-io,	advising,	"	moneo.
audit-io,	hearing,	"	audio.
audit-us,	hearing,	"	audio.
cant-us,	singing,	"	cano.
piet-ūra,	painting,	"	pingo.

1. **Or** denotes the *agent* or *doer*. When *t* precedes, corresponding feminine nouns are generally formed by changing *tor* into *trix*: *victor*, *victrix*.

2. **Io**, **us**, and **ūra** form *abstract* nouns, and denote the *act* itself.

## ADJECTIVES.

322. Derivative adjectives are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Verbs*, and *Adverbs*.

## I. ADJECTIVES FROM NOUNS.

## 1. From Common Nouns.

323. **FULNESS**.—Adjectives denoting *fulness*, *abundance*, *supply*, generally end in

ōsus,	lentus,	ātus,	itus,	ūtus.
anim-ōsus,	<i>full of courage,</i>	from		animus.
op-u-lentus,	<i>opulent,</i>	"		opes.
al-ātus,	<i>winged,</i>	"		ala.
turr-itus,	<i>turreted,</i>	"		turris.
corn-ūtus,	<i>horned,</i>	"		cornu.

1. **Uōsus** is used for *ōsus* in adjectives from nouns of Dec. IV. and in some others: *fructuōsus*, fruitful.

2. **Lentus** takes a connecting vowel, generally *u*, sometimes *o*: *op-u-lentus*, *vin-o-lentus*.

3. **Estus** and **ustus** also occur, but generally with a change in the stem: *modestus*, modest, from *modus*; *justus*, just, from *jus*.

324. **MATERIAL**.—Adjectives designating the material of which anything is made generally end in

eus, inus, nus, neus;	rarely āceus, and īcius.
aur-eus,	<i>golden,</i> from aurum.
cedr-inus,	<i>cedar,</i> " cedrus.
popul-nus,	<i>of poplar,</i> " populus.
popul-neus,	<i>of poplar,</i> " populus.

papyr- <i>ā</i> ceus,	<i>of papyrus,</i>	from	papyrus.
later- <i>ī</i> cius,	<i>of brick,</i>	"	later.

325. CHARACTERISTIC.—Adjectives signifying *belonging to, derived from*, generally end in

*ī*cus, *ī*lis, *ī*nus, *ī*us; *ā*lis, *ā*nus, *ā*ris, *ā*rius, *ē*nsis.

civ- <i>ī</i> cus,	<i>relating to a citizen,</i>	from	civis.
civ- <i>ī</i> lis,	<i>relating to a citizen,</i>	"	civis.
equ- <i>ī</i> nus,	<i>of, pertaining to a horse,</i>	"	equus.
reg- <i>ī</i> us,	<i>royal,</i>	"	rex.
mort- <i>ā</i> lis,	<i>mortal,</i>	"	mors.
urb- <i>ā</i> nus,	<i>of, pertaining to a city,</i>	"	urbs.
salut- <i>ā</i> ris,	<i>salutary,</i>	"	salus.
auxili- <i>ā</i> rius,	<i>auxiliary,</i>	"	auxilium.
for- <i>ē</i> nsis,	<i>forensic,</i>	"	forum.

1. **Tī**cus is sometimes added to the Nom.: *rus, rus-tīcus, rustic.*

2. **Er**nus, **ester**, **ī**tīmus and a few other endings also occur: *pater, paternus, paternal; campus, campester, level; mare, marītīmus, maritime.*

## 2. From Proper Nouns.

326. Adjectives from proper nouns generally end in

*ā*nus, *īā*nus, *ī*nus; *īā*cus, *ī*cus, *ī*us, *ē*nsis, *iē*nsis; *as, aeus, ē*us.

Sull- <i>ā</i> nus,	<i>of Sylla,</i>	from	Sulla.
Rom- <i>ā</i> nus,	<i>Roman,</i>	"	Roma.
Cicéron- <i>īā</i> nus,	<i>Ciceronian,</i>	"	Cicēro.
Lat- <i>ī</i> nus,	<i>Latin,</i>	"	Latium.
Corinth- <i>īā</i> cus,	<i>Corinthian,</i>	"	Corinthus.
Corinth- <i>ī</i> us,	<i>Corinthian,</i>	"	Corinthus.
Britanu- <i>ī</i> cus,	<i>British,</i>	"	Britannus.
Cann- <i>ē</i> nsis,	<i>of Cannae,</i>	"	Cannae.
Athen- <i>iē</i> nsis,	<i>Athenian,</i>	"	Athēnae.
Fidēn- <i>as,</i>	<i>of Fidenae,</i>	"	Fidēnae.
Smyrn- <i>aeus,</i>	<i>Smyranean,</i>	"	Smyrna.
Pythagor- <i>ē</i> us,	<i>Pythagorean,</i>	"	Pythagōras.

1. **īā**nus is the ending generally used in derivatives from *Names of Persons*; but *ā*nus, *ī*nus, *ī*us, and the Greek endings *ē*us and *ī*cus also occur.

2. **En**sis and **cā**nus (*ā*nus) in derivatives from names of countries signify merely *being in the country*, in distinction from *belonging to it*: thus *exercitus Hispaniēnsis* is an army stationed in Spain, but *exercitus Hispanīcus* is a Spanish army.

3. **Pat**rials.—Many of these adjectives from names of places are also used substantively as *Patrial* or *Gentile Nouns* to designate the citizens of the place: *Corinthīi*, the Corinthians; *Atheniēnses*, the Athenians.

## II. ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES.

327. DIMINUTIVES from other adjectives generally end like diminutive nouns (315) in

**ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum, cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum.**

long-ŭlus, a, um,	rather long,	from	longus.
pauper-cŭlus, a, um,	rather poor,	"	pauper.

1. **Olus, ellus,** and **illus** also occur as in nouns.
2. **Cŭlus** is sometimes added to comparatives: *durius-cŭlus*, somewhat hard, from *durius*.

### III. ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS.

#### 328. Verbal adjectives generally end in

**bundus, cundus; ŭlus, ŭlis, bŭlis, ax.**

mir-ā-bundus,	wondering,	from	miror.
ver-e-cundus,	diffident,	"	verecor.
cal-ŭlus,	warm,	"	caleo.
pav-ŭlus,	fearful,	"	paveo.
doc-ŭlis,	docile,	"	doceo.
am-a-bŭlis,	worthy of love,	"	amo.
pugn-ax,	pugnacious,	"	pugno.
aud-ax,	daring,	"	audeo.

1. **Bundus** and **cundus** have nearly the force of the present participle; but *bundus* is somewhat more expressive than the Part.: *laetabundus*, rejoicing greatly; and *cundus* generally denotes some characteristic rather than a single act or feeling: *verecundus*, diffident.

These endings take a connecting vowel. See examples.

2. **Idus** retains the simple meaning of the verb.

3. **ŭlis** and **bŭlis** denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense: *amabŭlis*, capable or worthy of being loved; sometimes in an *active* sense: *terribŭlis*, terrible, capable of producing terror.

These endings are generally added to the Present Stem (*bŭlis* with a connecting vowel), but sometimes to the Supine Stem: *flexibŭlis*, flexible.

4. **Ax** denotes *inclination*, generally a faulty one: *loquax*, loquacious.

5. **Uus, ŭlus, ŭcius,** and **ŭvus** also occur:—(1) *uus* in the sense of *ŭlus*: *vacuus*, vacant.—(2) *ulus* in the sense of *ax*: *credŭlus*, credulous.—(3) *ŭcius* and *ŭvus* (added to Sup. Stem) in the sense of the Perf. Part.: *ficticius*, feigned, from *ŭngo* (*fictum*); *captivus*, captive, from *capio* (*captum*).

### IV. ADJECTIVES FROM ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

#### 329. A few adjectives are formed from adverbs and prepositions:

hodiernus,	of this day,	from	hodie.
contrarius,	contrary,	"	contra.

### VERBS.

#### 330. Derivative Verbs are formed from Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

## I. VERBS FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

## 331. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives end in

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. IV.
o,	eo,	io.

## Conjugation I.—Transitive.

armo,	to arm,	from	arma.
cūro,	to cure,	"	cura.
nomino,	to name,	"	nomen.
caeco,	to make blind,	"	caecus.
libéro,	to liberate,	"	liber.

## Conjugation II.—Intransitive.

flōreo,	to bloom,	from	flos.
lūceo,	to shine,	"	lux.
albeo,	to be white,	"	albus.
flāveo,	to be yellow,	"	flavus.

## Conjugation IV.—Generally Transitive.

finio,	to finish,	from	finis.
vestio,	to clothe,	"	vestis.
mollio,	to soften,	"	mollis.
saevio ( <i>intrans.</i> ),	to rage,	"	saevus.

1. **Asco** and **esco** occur in Inceptives. See 322. II.
2. **Deponent**.—Derivatives, like other verbs, may of course be deponent: *domīnor*, to domineer, from *dominus*.

## II. VERBS FROM VERBS.

332. Verbs derived from other verbs are—*Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, *Desideratives*, and *Diminutives*.

I. **FREQUENTATIVES** denote *repeated* or *continued* action. They are of the first conjugation and are formed

1. From Supines in **ātum** by changing **ātum** into **īto**:

clam-īto,	to exclaim,	from	clamo,	clamātum.
vol-īto,	to flit,	"	volo,	volātum.

2. From other Supines by changing **um** into **o**, sometimes **īto**:

adjūt-o,	to assist often,	from	adjūvo,	adjūtum.
habit-o,	to have often,	"	habeo,	habītum.
lect-īto,	to read often,	"	lego,	lectum.

- 1) **Itō** is sometimes added to the Present Stem of verbs of Conj. III.: *ago*, *agito*; *quaero*, *quaerīto*.

- 2) **Esso** and **isso** form derivatives which are generally classed with



*frequentatives*, though they are *intensive* in force, denoting *earnest* rather than *repeated* action, and are of Conj. III. : *facio, facesso*, to do earnestly ; *incipio, incipisso*, to begin eagerly. The regular frequentatives sometimes have the same force : *rapio, rapto*, to seize eagerly.

II. INCEPTIVES, or INCHOATIVES, denote the beginning of the action. They are of the third conjugation, and end in

asco,	esco,	isco.		
gěl-asco,	to begin to freeze,	from	gělo,	äre.
rüb-esco,	to grow red,	"	rübeo,	ěre.
trēm-isco,	to begin to tremble,	"	trěmo,	ěre.
obdorm-isco,	to fall asleep,	"	obdormio,	ire.

1. **Asco** is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. I., and in a few from nouns and adjectives : *puer, puerasco*, to become a boy.

2. **Esco** is by far the most common ending, and is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. II., and in many from nouns and adjectives : *dūrus, dūresco*, to grow hard.

III. DESIDERATIVES denote a *desire* to perform the action. They are of the fourth conjugation and are formed from the Supine by changing **um** into **urio** :

ēs-urio,	to desire to eat,	from	ědo,	ěsum.
empt-urio,	to desire to buy,	"	ěmo,	emptum.

IV. DIMINUTIVES denote a *feeble* action. They are of the first conjugation and are formed from the Present by changing the ending into **illo** :

cant-illo,	to sing feebly,	from	canto.
conscrib-illo,	to scribble,	"	conscribo.

## ADVERBS.

333. Adverbs are formed from *Nouns, Adjectives, Participles, Pronouns, and Prepositions*.

### I. ADVERBS FROM NOUNS.

334. Adverbs are formed from nouns

1. By simply taking a case-ending, especially that of the ablative :

*tempore, tempōri*, in time ; *forte*, by chance ; *jūre*, with right, rightly.

2. By taking special endings :

1) *ātim, tim*, denoting MANNER : *grex, gregātim*, by herds ; *fur, furtim*, by stealth.

2) **itus** denoting ORIGIN, SOURCE: *coelum, coelitus*, from heaven; *fundus, funditus*, from the foundation.

## II. ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

335. Adverbs from adjectives and participles generally end in

**e,                      er,                      iter.**

*doctus, docte*, learnedly; *liber, libere*, freely; *elégans, eleganter*, elegantly; *prūdens, prudenter*, prudently; *cēler, celeriter*, quickly.

1. **E** is added to the stems of most adjectives and participles of Dec. I. and II. See examples.

2. **Er** and **iter** are added to the stems of adjectives of Dec. III.—**er** to stems in *nt*, **iter** to other stems.—*Er* and *iter* also occur in adverbs from adjectives and participles of Dec. I. and II.

3. **Atim, im,** and **itus** also occur in adverbs from primitives of Dec. I. and II.: *singūli, singulātīm*, one by one; *passus, passim*, everywhere; *divīnus, divīnitus*, divinely.

4. OTHER FORMS.—Certain forms of adjectives sometimes become adverbs:

1) Neuters in **e, um**, rarely **a**: *fácilē, easily*; *multum, multa*, much.

2) Ablatives in **a, o, is**: *dextra*, on the right; *consulto*, designedly; *paucis*, briefly, in few words.

3) Accensatives in **am**: *bifariam*, in two parts; *multifariam*, in many parts or places (*partem*, understood).

5. NUMERAL ADVERBS.—See 181.

## III. ADVERBS FROM PRONOUNS.

336. Various adverbs are formed from Pronouns: thus from *hic, ille*, and *iste* are formed

<i>hic,</i>	<i>here;</i>	<i>hūc,</i>	<i>hither;</i>	<i>hinc,</i>	<i>hence.</i>
<i>illīc,</i>	<i>there;</i>	<i>illūc,</i>	<i>thither;</i>	<i>illinc,</i>	<i>thence.</i>
<i>istīc,</i>	<i>there;</i>	<i>istūc,</i>	<i>thither;</i>	<i>istinc,</i>	<i>thence.</i>

## IV. ADVERBS FROM PREPOSITIONS.

337. A few adverbs are formed from Prepositions, or are at least related to them:

*intra, intro*, within; *ultra, ultro*, beyond; *in, intus*, within; *sub, subtus*, beneath.

## COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

338. The elements of a compound may unite in three distinct ways:

**I.** The two elements unite without change of form:<sup>1</sup> *decem-viri*, the decemvirs, ten men; *ab-eo*, to go away; *ante-pōno*, to place before.

**II.** One element, generally the first, is put in an oblique case, generally the genitive, dependent upon the other: *legis-lātor*, legislator, from *lex*, *legis*, and *lātor*.

**III.** The stem of the first element unites with the second element, either with or without a connecting vowel—generally *i*, sometimes *e* or *u*: *bell-ī-gēro*, to wage war, from *bellum* and *gēro*, with connecting vowel; *magn-animus*, magnanimous, from *magnus* and *animus*, without connecting vowel.

1. PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION admit the following *euphonic changes*.

**A, ab, abs:**—*a* before *m* and *v*; **abs** before *c*, *p*, *t*; **ab** before the vowels and the other consonants: *a-mitto*; *abs-condo*; *ab-eo*, *ab-jicio*. But *abs* before *p* drops *b*: *as-porto* for *abs-porto*. *Ab* becomes *au* in *au-fēro* and *au-fugio*.

**Ad,**—unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, and *v*; **d** generally assimilated before the other consonants, but changed to *c* before *q* and dropped before *gn* and often before *sc*, *sp*, and *st*; *ad-eo*, *ad-do*, *ad-jungo*; *af-fēro*, *al-līgo*; *ac-quīro*, *a-gnosco* (*ad* and *gnosco*), *a-scendo*.

**Ante,**—unchanged, except in *anti-cīpo* and *anti-sto*.

**Circum,**—unchanged, except in *circu-eo*.

**Com** for *cum*,—(1) unchanged before *b*, *m*, *p*: *com-bībo*, *com-mitto*,—(2) **m** generally dropped before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: *co-eo*, *co-haereo*, *co-gnosco*,—(3) **m** assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: *col-līgo*, *cor-rumpo*,—(4) **m** changed to *n* before the other consonants: *con-fēro*, *con-gēro*.

**E, ex:**—**ex** before vowels and before *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*, and with assimilation before *f*; **e** generally before the other consonants and sometimes before *p* and *s*: *ex-eo*, *ex-pōno*, *ef-fēro*; *e-dūco*, *e-līgo*, *e-pōto*, *e-scendo*. *S* after *ex* is often dropped: *expecto* or *expecto*.

**In,**—**n** assimilated before *l*, *m*, *r*, changed to *m* before *b*, *p*; dropped before *gn*; in other situations unchanged: *il-lūdo*, *im-mitto*; *im-buo*, *im-pōno*; *i-gnosco*; *in-eo*, *in-dūco*.

**Inter,**—unchanged, except in *intel-līgo*.

**Ob,**—**b** assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*; in other situations generally unchanged: *oc-curro*, *of-ficio*, *og-gēro*, *op-pōno*; *ob-jicio*, *ob-sto*. But *b* is dropped in *o-mitto*, and an old form *obs* occurs in a few words: *obs-oleasco*, *os-tendo* for *obs-tendo* (*b* dropped).

**Per,**—unchanged, except in *pel-līcio*, *pel-lūcco*, and *pe-jēro*.

**Post,**—unchanged, except in *po-moerium* and *po-meridiānus*.

<sup>1</sup> Except of course euphonic changes.

**Pro**,—sometimes *prod* before a vowel: *prod-eo*, *prod-igo*.

**Sub**,—**b** assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*, generally before *m* and *r*; dropped before *sp*; in other situations unchanged; *suc-cumbo*, *su-spicio* for *sub-spicio*; *sub-eo*, *sub-dūco*. An old form *subs* shortened to *sus* occurs in a few words: *sus-cipio*, *sus-pendo*.

**Trans**,—drops *s* before *s*, and often *ns* before *d*, *j*, *n*: *trans-eo*, *trans-fēro*; *tran-silio* for *trans-silio*; *tra-do* for *trans-do*; *tra-jicio* for *trans-jicio*; *tra-no* for *trans-no*.

2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS (307) also admit *euphonic changes*:

**Ambi, amb**:—*amb* before vowels; *ambi*, *am*, or *an* before consonants: *amb-igo*; *ambi-dens*, *am-pūto*, *an-qui-ro*.

**Dis, di**:—*dis* before *c*, *p*, *q*, *t*, *s* before a vowel, and, with assimilation, before *f*; *di* in most other situations; *dis-curro*, *dis-pōno*, *dif-fluo*; *dī-dūco*, *dī-mōreo*. But *dir* occurs in *dir-īmo* and *dir-ībeo* (*dis* and *habeo*), and both *dis* and *di* occur before *j*: *dis-jungo*, *di-judico*.

**Re, red**:—*red* before vowels, before *h*, and in *red-do*; *re* in other situations: *red-eo*, *red-igo*, *red-hibeo*; *re-clūdo*, *re-vello*.

## COMPOUND NOUNS.

339. In compound nouns the first part is generally a noun, but sometimes an adjective, adverb, or preposition; the second part is a verb or noun:

art-ī-fex,	artist,	from	ars and facio.
capr-ī-cornus,	capricorn,	"	eaper and cornu.
aequ-ī-noctium,	equinox,	"	aequus and nox.
ne-mo,	nobody,	"	ne and homo.
pro-nōmen,	pronoun,	"	pro and nomen.

1. GENITIVE IN COMPOUNDS.—In compounds of two nouns, or of a noun and an adjective, the first part is often a genitive: *legis-lātor*, legislator; *juris-consultus*, lawyer.

2. COMPOUNDS IN **fex**, **cen**, and **cōla** are among the most important compounds of nouns and verbs; *fex* from *fūcio*; *cen* from *cano*; *cola* from *colo*; *art-ī-fex*, artist; *tub-ī-cen*, trumpeter; *agr-ī-cōla*, husbandman.

## COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

340. In compound adjectives the first part is generally a noun, adjective, or preposition, and the second a noun, adjective, or verb:

lēt-ī-fer,	death-bearing,	from	lētum and fēro.
magn-anīmus,	magnanimous,	"	magnus and anīmus.
per-facīlis,	very easy,	"	per and facīlis.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

341. In compound verbs the first part is a noun, adjective, verb, adverb, or preposition, and the second is a verb:

aed-ī-fīco,	to build,	from	aedes and facio.
ampl-ī-fīco,	to enlarge,	"	amplus and facio.
pat-ē-fācio,	to open,	"	pateo and facio.
bene-fācio,	to benefit,	"	bene and facio.
ab-eo,	to go away,	"	ab and eo.

1. Two VERBS.—When the first part is a verb, the second is always *facio* as above; *pat-e-facio*.

2. NOUN OR ADJECTIVE and VERB.—When the first part is a noun or adjective, the second part is generally, but not always, *fācio* or *āgo*. These verbs then become *fīco* and *īgo* of Conj. I.: *aed-ī-fīco*, āre, to build; *nav-īgo*, āre, to sail, from *navis* and *ago*.

3. VOWEL CHANGES.—Verbs compounded with prepositions often undergo certain vowel-changes.

1) *A* short and *ē* generally become *ī*: *hābeo*, *ad-hībeo*; *tēneo*, *con-tīneo*. But *ā* sometimes becomes *ē* or *u*: *carpo*, *de-cerpo*; *calco*, *con-culco*.

2) *Āe* becomes *ī*: *caedo*, *in-cīdo*.

3) *Au* generally becomes *o* or *u*: *plaudo*, *ex-plōdo*; *claudo*, *in-clūdo*.

4. CHANGES IN PREPOSITIONS.—See 338. 1 and 2.

## COMPOUND ADVERBS.

342. Compound Adverbs are variously formed, but most of them may be divided into three classes:

1. Such as consist of an oblique case with its preposition: *ad-mōdum*, very, to the full measure; *ob-vīam*, in the way.

2. Such as consist of a noun with its adjective: *ho-die* (*hoc* and *die*), to-day, on this day; *qua-re*, wherefore, by which thing.

3. Such as consist of two particles: *ad-huc*, hitherto; *inter-dum*, sometimes; *in-sūper*, moreover.

# PART THIRD.

## S Y N T A X.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

---

##### SECTION I.

###### CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

*Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world. Cic.*

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts so related that one is dependent upon the other:

*Dōnec ēris felix, multos nūmērābis āmīcos; So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.*

1. CLAUSES.—In this example two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous*," and (2) "*You will number many friends*," are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second: *You will number many friends* (when?), *so long as you are prosperous*. The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

2. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—*multos numerābis amicos*—is called the *Principal Clause*; and the part which is dependent upon it—*donec eris felix*—is called the *Subordinate Clause*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

*Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, The sun descends and the mountains are shaded. Virg.*

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

*Miltiādes accūsātus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.*

## II. AN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertatem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word. But *ne* appended to the principal verb often suggests the answer *yes*, while appended to any other word, it often suggests the answer *no*. It is sometimes appended to *utrum*, *num*, or *an*, without affecting their meaning, and sometimes inserted in the clause after *utrum* :

*Utrum taceamne*, an *praedicem*, *Shall I be silent, or shall I speak?* Ter.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing? *Non* for *nonne* indicates surprise that there should be any doubt on the question: *Non vides*, Do you really not see?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

4) Questions with *an*. See 2. 4) below.

5) The interrogative word is sometimes omitted, and sometimes *numquid* is used for *num*, and *ecquid* for *ne* or *nonne*: *Ecquid vides*, Do you not see?

2. DOUBLE QUESTIONS.—Double or disjunctive questions offer a choice or alternative, and generally take one of the following forms :

1) The first clause has *utrum*, *num*, or *ne*, and the second *an* :

*Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est*, *Is that your fault or ours?* Cic.

2) The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an* or *ne* :

*Elóquar an síleam*, *Shall I utter it, or keep silence?* Virg.

3) When the second clause is negative, the particle generally unites with the negative, giving *annon* or *necne* :

*Sunt haec tua verba necne*, *Are these your words or not?* Cic.

4) By the omission of the first clause, the second often stands alone with *an*, in the sense of *or* :

*An hoc tímémus*, *Or do we fear this?* Liv.

5) Other forms are rare.

3. ANSWERS.—In answers the verb or some emphatic word is usually repeated, often with *prorsus*, *véro*, and the like ; or if negative, with *non* :

*Dixitne causam?* *Dixit*. *Did he state the cause?* *He stated it*. Cic. *Possumusne tūti esse?* *Non possumus*. *Can we be safe?* *We cannot*. Cic.

1) Sometimes the simple particle is used ; affirmatively, *sāne*, *etiam*, *ita*, *véro*, *certe*, etc., negatively, *non*, *minime*, etc.

*Vénitne?* *Non*. *Has he come?* *No*. Plaut.

## III. AN IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

*Iustitiam cõle*, *Cultivate justice*. Cic.

## IV. AN EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

*Rēliquit quos viros*, *What heroes he has left!* Cic.

Exclamatory sentences are often elliptical.

## SECTION II.

## SIMPLE SENTENCES.

## ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

*Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris *Cluilius, Albānus rex, moritur* ; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements ; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX.—The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex :

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.

## SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence, expressed or implied, must be a noun or some word or words used as a noun :

*Rex dēcrēvit, The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego scribo, I write.* Cic. *Vīdeo idem vālet, The word video has the same meaning.* Quint.

## COMPLEX SUBJECT.

352. The subject admits the following modifiers :

## I. AN ADJECTIVE :

*Pōpūlus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, The Roman people decreed.* Cic.

II. A NOUN either in apposition with the subject, in the genitive, or in an oblique case with a preposition :



*Cluilius rex mōritur, Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. *Rēx Rūtālōrum, the king of the Rutuli.* Liv. *Liber de offīciis, The book on duties.* Cic.

1. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.—Any noun may be modified like the subject.

2. APPOSITIVE AND ITS SUBJECT.—The noun in apposition with another is called an *Appositive*, and the other noun is called the *Subject* of the appositive.

3. ADVERBS WITH NOUNS.—Sometimes adverbs and adverbial expressions occur as modifiers of nouns:

*Non ignāri sūmus ante mālōrum, We are not ignorant of past misfortunes.* Virg. *Victōria apud Cnīdum, The victory at Cnidus.* Nep.

### SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

*Miltiādes est accūsātus, Miltiades was accused.* Nep. *Tu es testis, You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum* several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. See 362. 2. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.

2. *Sum* with an *Adverb* sometimes forms the predicate:

*Omnia recte sunt, All things are right.* Cic.

### COMPLEX PREDICATE.

354. I. The VERB admits the following modifiers:

I. OBJECTIVE MODIFIERS:

1. A *Direct Object* in the Accusative—that upon which the action is directly exerted:

*Miltiādes Athēnas libērāvit, Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

2. An *Indirect Object* in the Dative—that *to* or *for* which something is or is done:

*Lābōri stūdent, They devote themselves to labor.* Caes.

3. *Combined Objects* consisting of two or more cases:

*Me rōgāvit sententiā, He asked me my opinion.* Cic. *Pons iter hostibus dedit, The bridge furnished a passage to the enemy.* Liv.

II. ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS:

1. *Adverbs*:

*Bella feliciter gessit, He waged wars successfully.* Cic.

2. *Adverbial Expressions*—consisting of oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions:

*In his castris mōritur, He dies (where?) in this camp. Liv. Vēre convēnere, They assembled (when?) in the spring. Liv.*

**355. II.** The PREDICATE NOUN is modified in the various ways specified for the subject (352).

**356. III.** The PREDICATE ADJECTIVE admits the following modifiers :

**I. An ADVERB :**

*Sātis hūmīlis est, He is sufficiently humble. Liv.*

**II. A NOUN in an oblique case :**

1. *Genitive* : *Avīdi laudis fuērunt, They were desirous of praise. Cic.*

2. *Dative* : *Omni aetāti mors est commūnis, Death is common to every age. Cic.*

3. *Ablative* : *Dignī sunt amīcītia, They are worthy of friendship. Cic.*

## SECTION III.

### COMPLEX SENTENCES.

**357.** A Complex sentence differs from a Simple one only in taking a sentence or clause as one (or more) of its elements :

**I. A Sentence as an Element :**

*"Civis Rōmānus sum" audiēbātur, "I am a Roman citizen" was heard. Cic. Aliquis dicat mihi : "Nulla hābes vitia;" Some one may say to me, "Have you no faults?" Hor.*

1. In the first example, an entire sentence—*Civis Romānus sum*—is used as the *Subject* of a new sentence ; and in the second example, the sentence—*Nulla habes vitia*—is the *Object* of *dicat*.

2. Any sentence may be thus quoted and introduced without change of form as an element in a new sentence.

**II. A Clause as an Element :**

*Trādītum est Hōmērum caecum fuisse, That Homer was blind has been handed down by tradition. Cic. Quālis sit ānīmus, ānīmus nescit, The soul knows not what the soul is. Cic.*

1. In these examples the clauses used as elements have undergone certain changes to adapt them to their subordinate rank. The clause *Homērum caecum fuisse*, the subject of *trādītum est*, if used as an independent sentence, would be *Homērus caecus fuit* ; and the clause *Qualis sit ānīmus*, the object of *nescit*, would be *Qualis est ānīmus*, What is the soul ?

2. Forms of Subordinate Clauses.

1) Infinitive with Subject Accusative :

*Hoc majōres dicere audīvi, I have heard that our ancestors said this. Cic.*

2) Indirect Questions :

Quid dies fērat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

3) Relative Clauses :

Sententia, quae tūtissima vidēbatur, *The opinion which seemed the safest.* Liv.

4) Clauses with Conjunctions :

Mos est ut dicat, *It is his custom to speak.* Cic. Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic.

358. Infinitive Clauses sometimes drop their subjects :

Dilīgi jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic. Vivēre est cōgītāre, *To live is to think.* Cic. See 545. 2.

359. Participles often supply the place of subordinate clauses.

Plāto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing, or while he was writing.* Cic. See 576-578.

## SECTION IV.

### COMPOUND SENTENCES.

360. Compound sentences express two or more independent thoughts, and are of five varieties :

I. COPULATIVE SENTENCES—in which two or more thoughts are presented in harmony with each other :

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

II. DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES—in which a choice between two or more thoughts is offered :

Audendum est āliquid aut omnia pātienda sunt, *Something must be risked or all things must be endured.* Liv.

III. ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES—in which the thoughts are opposed to each other :

Gyges a nullo vidēbatur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

IV. ILLATIVE SENTENCES—which contain an inference :

Nihil lābōras, ideo nihil hābes ; *You do nothing, therefore you have nothing.* Phaed.

V. CAUSAL SENTENCES—which contain a cause or reason :

Difficile est consīlium, sum enim sōlus ; *Consultation is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic.

1. The CONNECTIVES generally used in these several classes of compounds are the corresponding classes of conjunctions, i. e., *copulative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *illative*, and *causal* conjunctions. See 310. But the connective is often omitted.

2. DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS have special connectives. See 346, II. 2.

**361.** Compound sentences are generally abridged when their members have parts in common. Such sentences have compound elements :

### 1. Compound Subjects :

Abōrīgīnes Trojānīque dūcem āmisēre, *The Aborigines and the Trojans lost their leader.* Liv.

The two members here united are: *Aborigines ducem amisere* and *Trojani ducem amisere*; but as they have the same predicate, *ducem amisere*, that predicate is expressed but once, and the two subjects are united into the compound subject: *Aborigines Trojanique*.

### 2. Compound Predicates :

Rōmāni pārant consultantque, *The Romans prepare and consult.* Liv.

### 3. Compound Modifiers :

Athēnas Graeciamque libērāvit, *He liberated Athens and Greece.* Nep.

## CHAPTER II.

## SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

### SECTION I.

#### AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

#### RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

**362.** A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE: <sup>1</sup>

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus; *Servius was declared king.* Liv. Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. See 353.

1. In GENDER AND NUMBER Agreement either may or may not take place. But

1) If the Predicate Noun has different forms for different genders, it must agree with its subject in gender :

Usus māgister est, *Experience is an instructor.* Cic. Hīstōria est māgistra (not magister), *History is an instructress.* Cic.

<sup>1</sup> For Pred. Noun denoting a different person or thing from its subject, see 401. For convenience of reference the *Rules* will be presented in a body on page 274.

2. WITH FINITE VERBS.—Predicate Nouns are most frequent

1) With *Sum* and a few intransitive verbs : *evādo, exsisto, appāreo*, and the like :

*Ego sum nuntius, I am a messenger.* Liv. *Hōmo magnus evāsērat, He had become (turned out) a great man.* Cic. *Exstitit vindex libertātis, He became (stood forth) the defender of liberty.* Cic.

2) With Passive verbs of *appointing, making, naming, regarding, esteeming*, and the like :

*Servius rex est dēclārātus, Servius was declared king.* Liv. *Mundus cīvitas existimātur, The world is regarded as a state.* Cic.

(1) In the poets, Predicate Nouns are used with great freedom after verbs of a great variety of significations. Thus with *audio* = *appellor* : *Rex audisti, You have been called king* ; i. e., have heard yourself so called. Hor.

(2) For *Predicate Accusative*, see 373. 1.

(3) The Dative of the object for which (390), *pro* with the Abl., and *lōco* or *in nūmēro* with the Gen. are often kindred in force to Predicate Nouns : *hosti, pro hoste, lōco hostis, in nūmēro hostium*, for *or* as an enemy. See also *Pred. Gen.* 401.

3. WITH INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, ETC.—Predicate Nouns are used not only with finite verbs, but also with Infinitives and Participles, and sometimes without verb or participle :

*Dēclārātus rex Nūma, Numa having been declared king.* Liv. *Cānīnio consule, Caninius being consul.* Cic. See 431, also *Orestem* under the rule.

1) For *Predicate Nominative* after *esse*, see 547.

2) For Infinitive or Clause as Predicate, see 553, I. ; 495, 3.

## RULE II.—Appositives.

### 363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE :

*Cluilius rex mōrītur, Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. *Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic. See 352. 2.

1. In GENDER and NUMBER the appositive conforms to the same rule as the predicate noun. See 362. 1.

2. The SUBJECT of the appositive is often omitted :

*Hostis hostem occīdēre vōlui, I (ego understood) an enemy wished to slay an enemy.* Liv.

3. FORCE OF APPOSITIVES.—Appositives are generally kindred in force to Relative clauses, but sometimes to Temporal clauses :

*Cluilius rex, Cluilius (who was) the king.* Liv. *Fūrius puer didicit, Furius learned, when a boy, or as a boy.* Cic.

4. PARTITIVE APPOSITIVE.—The parts are sometimes in apposition with the whole :

*Duo rēges, ille bello, hic pāce cīvitatē auxērunt, Two kings advanced the state, the former by war, the latter by peace.* Liv.

Conversely the whole may be in apposition with its parts.

5. CLAUSES.—A noun or pronoun may be in apposition with a clause, or a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun. See 445, 7 ; 553, II.

## SECTION II.

## NOMINATIVE.

**364. CASES.**—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. <sup>1</sup>

**365. KINDRED CASES.**—The cases naturally arrange themselves in pairs : the Nominative and Vocative require no governing word ; the Accusative and Dative are the regular cases of the Object of an action ; the Genitive has usually the force of an Adjective, and the Ablative that of an Adverb.

**366. NOMINATIVE.**—The Nominative is either the Subject of a Sentence or in agreement with another Nominative.

**RULE III.—Subject Nominative.**

**367.** The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative :<sup>2</sup>

Servius regnāvit, *Servius reigned*. Liv. Pātent portae, *The gates are open*. Cic. Rex vicit, *The king conquered*. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēcī, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, unless expressed for contrast or emphasis, and when it can be readily supplied from the context :

Discipulos mōneo, ut stūdia āment, *I instruct pupils to love their studies*. Quint.

2) When it means men, people : *Fērunt*, They say.

3) When the verb is impersonal : *Pluit*, It rains.

3. VERB OMITTED.—The Verb is sometimes omitted, when it can be readily supplied, especially *est* and *sunt* :

<sup>1</sup> This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because, it is thought, it will best present the force of the several cases and their relation to each other.

<sup>2</sup> For the Subject of the Infinitive, see 545. For the agreement of the verb with its subject, see 460.

Ecce tuæ littærae, *Lo your letter (comes)*. Cic. Tot sententiæ, *There are (sunt) so many opinions*. Ter. Consul præfectus (est), *The consul set out*. Liv.

1) *Facio* is often omitted in short sentences and clauses. Thus with *nihil aliud* (amplius, minus, etc.) *quam, nihil præterquam* = merely, *si nihil aliud, finem*, etc. : *Nihil aliud quam steterunt, They merely stood* (did nothing other than). Liv. Also in brief expressions of opinion: *Recte ille, He does rightly*. Cic.

**368. AGREEMENT.**—A Nominative in agreement with another nominative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive. See 362 and 363.

For the Predicate Nominative after a verb with *esse*, see 547.

### SECTION III.

#### VOCATIVE.

#### RULE IV.—Case of Address.

**369.** The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed, Laelius*. Cic. Quid est, Cætulina, *Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. Tuum est, Servi, regnum, *The kingdom is yours, Servius*. Liv. O dii immortales, *O immortal gods*. Cic.

1. WITH INTERJECTIONS.—The vocative is used both with and without interjections.

2. NOMINATIVE FOR VOCATIVE.—In poetry and sometimes in prose, the nominative in apposition with the subject occurs where we should expect the vocative :

Audi tu, pöpus Albänus, *Hear ye, Alban people*. Liv. Here *populus* may be treated as a Nom. in apposition with *tu*, though it may also be treated as an irregular Voc. See 45. 5. 3).

3. VOCATIVE FOR NOMINATIVE.—Conversely the vocative by attraction sometimes occurs in poetry where we should expect the nominative :

Quibus, Hector, ab öris expectäte vënis, *From what shores, Hector, do you anxiously awaited come?* Virg.

### SECTION IV.

#### ACCUSATIVE.

**370.** The Accusative is used

- I. As the Direct Object of an Action.
- II. As the Subject of an Infinitive.
- III. In Agreement with another Accusative.
- IV. In an Adverbial Sense—with or without Prepositions.
- V. In Exclamations—with or without Interjections.

## I. ACCUSATIVE AS DIRECT OBJECT.

## RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

1. The DIRECT OBJECT may be

1) The *Object*, person or thing, on which the action of the verb is directly exerted, as *sālūtem* above.

2) The *Effect* of the action, i. e., the object produced by it, as *mundum* above.

3) The *Cognate Accusative*. Many verbs, generally intransitive, sometimes become so far transitive as to admit an accusative of *cognate* or *kindred* meaning:

Eam vītam vivēre, *to live that life.* Cic. Mirum somniāre somnium, *to dream a wonderful dream.* Plaut. Servitūtem servīre, *to serve a servitude.* Ter.

(1) This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective as in the first two examples.

(2) Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives often supply the place of the Cognate accusative:

Eādem peccat, *He makes the same mistakes.* Cic. Hoc stūdet ūnum, *He studies this one thing* (this one study). Hor. Id assentior, *I make this assent.* Cic. Idem glōriāri, *to make the same boast.* Cic.

(3) The object is often omitted when it is a reflexive (184, 2) or can be easily supplied: *mōveo* = *mōveo me*, I move (myself); *vertit* = *vertit se*, he moves (himself).

(4) Some verbs are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive: *augeo*, *dūro*, *incipio*, *laxo*, *ruo*, *suppedito*, *turbo*, etc.

2. WITH OR WITHOUT OTHER CASES.—The direct object may be used with all transitive verbs, whether with or without other cases. See 384. 410. 419.

3. TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.—Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin. See 385. Conversely some verbs intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, or at least are often so used, especially verbs denoting

1) *Feeling* or *Mental State*: *despēro*, to despair of; *dōleo*, to grieve for; *gēmo*, to sigh over; *horreo*, to shudder at; *lācrīmo*, to weep over; *moereo*, to mourn over; *mīror*, to wonder at; *rideo*, to laugh at; *sitio*, to thirst for, etc.

Hōnōres despērat, *He despairs of honors.* Cic. Haec gēmēbant, *They were sighing over these things.* Cic. Dētrimenta ridet, *He laughs at losses.* Hor.

2) *Taste* or *Smell*: *oleo*, *sāpio*, and their compounds, both literally and figuratively:



Olet unguenta, *He smells of perfumes.* Ter. Oratio rēdōlet antiquitatem, *The oration smacks of antiquity.* Cic.

#### 4. COMPOUNDS OF PREPOSITIONS.—We notice two classes :

1) Many compounds become transitive by the force of the prepositions with which they are compounded, especially compounds of *circum*, *per*, *prae*, *trans*, *super*, and *subter* :

Murmur concionem pervāsīt, *A murmur went through the assembly.* Liv. Rhēnum transiērunt, *They crossed (went across) the Rhine.* Caes.

2) Many compounds, without becoming strictly transitive, admit an Accus. dependent upon the preposition :

Circumstant senātum, *They stand around the senate.* Cic.

5. CLAUSE AS OBJECT.—An Infinitive or a Clause may be used as Direct Object :

Impērāre cūpiunt, *They desire to rule.* Just. Sentimus cālere ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

6. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—When a verb takes the passive construction

1) The direct object of the active becomes the subject of the passive, and

2) The subject of the active becomes the Ablative of Cause (414) or the Ablative of Agent with *a* or *ab* (414. 5).

Thēbāni Lysandrum occiderunt, *The Thebans slew Lysander.* Passive : Lysander occisus est a Thēbānis, *Lysander was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

7. ACCUSATIVE IN SPECIAL INSTANCES.—Participles in *dus*, verbal adjectives in *bundus*, and in Plautus a few verbal nouns, occur with the accusative :

Vitābundus castra, *avoiding the camp.* Liv. Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem, *What care have you of this?* Plaut.

372. TWO ACCUSATIVES.—Two accusatives without any connective, expressed or understood, may depend upon the same verb. They may denote

1. The same person or thing.

2. Different persons or things.

Any number of accusatives connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood, may of course depend upon the same verb.

### RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing :

Hāmilcārem impērātōrem fecērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep. Aneum rēgem pōpulus creāvit, *The people elected Ancus king.* Liv. Summum consilium appellārunt Senātum, *They called their highest council Senate.* Cic. Se praestitit prōpugnātōrem libertātis, *He showed*

*himself the champion of liberty.* Cic. Flaccum hābuit collēgam, *He had Flaccus as colleague.* Nep.

1. PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—One of the two accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative*. See 362. 2. (2).

2. VERBS WITH PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—The verbs which most frequently admit a Direct Object with a Predicate Accusative are verbs of

1) *Making, electing*: fūcio, efficio, reddo,—creo, eligo, dēsigno, dēclāro.

2) *Calling, regarding*: appello, nōmino, vōco, dico,—arbitror, existimo, dūco, iūdico, hābeo, pūto.

3) *Showing*: praesto, praebeo, exhibeo.

3. ADJECTIVE AS PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—The Predicate Accusative may be either Substantive or Adjective:

Hōmīnes cecos reddit āvaritia, *Avarice renders men blind.* Cic.

4. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—In the Passive these verbs take two Nominatives, a *Subject* and *Predicate*, corresponding to the two Accusatives of the Active:

Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. See 362. 2. 2.)

## RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

Me sententiam rōgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic. Ego sententiam rōgātus sum, *I was asked my opinion.* Cic. Philōsōphia nos res omnes dōcuit, *Philosophy has taught us all things.* Cic. Artes ēdoctus fuerat, *He had been taught the arts.* Liv. Non te cēlāvi sermōnem, *I did not conceal from you the conversation.* Cic.

1. PERSON AND THING.—One accusative generally designates the *person*, the other the *thing*: with the Passive the accusative of the Person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing is retained: see examples.

2. VERBS WITH TWO ACCUSATIVES.—Those most frequently so used are

1) *Regularly*: cēlo—dōceo, ēdōceo, dēdōceo.

2) *Sometimes*: ōro, exōro, rōgo, interrōgo, percontor, flāgito, posco, rēposco.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS also occur:

1) *Cēlo*: Ablative with a preposition:

Me de hoc libro cēlāvit, *He kept me ignorant of this book.* Cic. Passive: Accus. of Neuter pronoun or Abl. with *de*: Hoc cēlāri, *to be kept ignorant of this.* Ter. Cēlāri de consilio, *to be kept ignorant of the plan.* Cic. The Dative is rare: Id Alcibiādi cēlāri non pōtuit, *This could not be concealed from Alcibiades.* Nep.

2) *Verbs of Teaching*: Ablative with or without a preposition:

De sua re me dōcet; *He informs me in regard to his case.* Cic. Sōcrātem fidibus dōcuit, *He taught Socrates (with) the lyre.* Cic.

3) *Verbs of Asking, Demanding*: Ablative with a preposition:

Hoc a me poscēre, *to demand this from me*. Cic. Te iisdem de rēbus interrōgo, *I ask you in regard to the same things*. Cic.

4) *Peto, postulo, and quaero* take the Ablative of the person with a preposition:

Pācem a Rōmānīs pētiērunt, *They asked peace from the Romans*. Caes.

## 4. INFINITIVE OR CLAUSE as Accusative of thing:

Te sāpēre dōcet, *He teaches you to be wise*. Cic.

5. A NEUTER PRONOUN OR ADJECTIVE as a second accusative occurs with many verbs which do not otherwise take two accusatives:

Hoc te hortor, *I exhort you to this, I give you this exhortation*. Cic. Ea mōnēmur, *We are admonished of these things*. Cic.

6. COMPOUND VERBS.—A few compounds of *trans, circum, ad, and in* admit two accusatives, dependent the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition:

Ibērum cōpiās trajēcit, *He led his forces across the Ebro*. Liv.

In the Passive, not only these, but even other compounds sometimes admit an Accus. depending upon the preposition:

Praetervēhor ostia Pantāgiae, *I am carried by the mouth of the Pantagia*. Virg.

7. POETIC ACCUSATIVE.—In poetry, rarely in prose, verbs of clothing, unclothing—*induo, exuo, cingo, accingo, induco*, etc.—sometimes take in the Passive an accusative in imitation of the Greek:

Gāleam induitur, *He puts on his helmet*. Virg. Inūtile ferrum cingitur, *He girds on his useless sword*. Virg. Virgīnes longam indūtae vestem, *maidens attired in long robes*. Liv.

## II. ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

375. The Accusative is used as the Subject of an Infinitive; see 545:

Plātōnē fērunt in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic.

*Plātōnē* is the subject of *venisse*.

## III. ACCUSATIVE IN AGREEMENT WITH AN ACCUSATIVE.

376. The Accusative in agreement with another Accusative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive:

Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes*. Cic. Apud Hērōdōtum, patrem histōriae, *in Herodotus, the father of history*. Cic. See 362 and 363.

## IV. ACCUSATIVE IN AN ADVERBIAL SENSE.

377. In an Adverbial sense the Accusative is used either with or without Prepositions.

1. WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 433.

2. WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS.—The Adverbial use of the Accusative without Prepositions is presented in the following rules.

## RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative :

Rōmulus septem et trīginta regnāvit annos, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *to walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *to be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quatuor pēdes alta, *snow four feet deep.* Liv. But

1. DURATION OF TIME is sometimes expressed by the Ablative or the Accusative with a Preposition :

1) By the Ablative : Pugnātum est hōris quinque, *The battle was fought five hours.* Caes.

2) By the Accusative with Preposition : Per annos viginti certātum est, *The war was waged for twenty years.* Liv.

2. DISTANCE is sometimes expressed by the Ablative :

Millibus passuum sex consēdit, *He encamped at the distance of six miles.* Caes. Sometimes with a preposition : Ab millibus passuum duobus, *at the distance of two miles.* Caes.

## RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative :

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquīnios, *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic. But

1. The Accusative with *Ad* occurs :

1) In the sense of—to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of : Tres sunt viae ad Mūtīnam, *There are three roads to Mutina.* Cic. Ad Zāmam pervēnit, *He came to the vicinity of Zama.* Sall.

2) In contrast with *a* or *ab* :

A Diānio ad Sīnōpen, *from Dianium to Sinope.* Cic.

2. *Urbs* or *Oppidum* with a Preposition :

Pervēnit in oppidum Cirtam, *He came into the town of Cirta.* Sall.

3. Like Names of Towns are used

1) The Accusatives **dōmum, dōmos, rus**:

Scīpio dōmum rēductus est, *Scipio was conducted home*. Cic. Dōmos abducti, *led to their homes*. Liv. Rus evōlāre, *to hasten into the country*. Cic.

## 2) Sometimes the Accusative of names of Islands and Peninsulas:

Lātōna confūgit Dēlum, *Latona fled to Delos*. Cic. Pervēnit Chersōnēsum, *He went to the Chersonesus*. Nep.

## 4. Names of Other Places used as the limit of motion are generally in the Accusative with a Preposition:

In Asiā rēdit, *He returns into Asia*. Nep.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted before names of countries, and, in the poets, before names of nations and even before common nouns:

Aegyptum prōfūgit, *He fled to Egypt*. Cic. Italiā vēnit, *He came to Italy*. Virg. Ibimus Afros, *We shall go to the Africans*. Virg. Lāvīnia vēnit litōra, *He came to the Lavinian shores*. Virg.

## 5. A Poetic Dative for the accusative with or without a preposition occurs:

It clamor coelo (for *ad coelum*), *The shout ascends to heaven*. Virg.

**RULE X.—Accusative of Specification.****380. A Verb or Adjective may take an Accusative to define its application:**

Cāpita vėlāmur, *We have our heads veiled* (are veiled as to our heads). Virg. Nūbe hūmēros āmictus, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud*. Hor. Miles fractus membra lābōre, *the soldier with limbs shattered with labor* (broken as to his limbs). Hor. Aenēas os deo sīmīlis, *Aeneas like a god in appearance*. Virg.

1. In a strict sense, the Accusative of Specification generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs. In this sense, it is mostly poetic, but occurs also in prose. See 429.

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem, vicem, nihil*, of *id* and *genus* in *id tempōris, id aetātis* (at this time, age), *id gēnus, omne gēnus, quod gēnus* (for *ejus gēneris*, etc.), etc.; also of *sēcus, libra* and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives; *hoc, illud, id, quid* (454, 2), *multum, summum, cētera, reliqua*, etc. In this sense, it is common in prose.

Maxīmam partem lacte vivunt, *They live mostly* (as to the largest part) *upon milk*. Caes. Nihil mōti sunt, *They were not at all moved*. Liv. Lōcus id tempōris vacuus ērat, *The place was at this time vacant*. Cic. Aliquid id gēnus scribēre, *to write something of this kind*. Cic. Quaerit, quid possint, *He inquires how powerful they are*. Caes. Quid vēnis, *Why do you come?*

**V. ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.****RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.****381. The Accusative either with or without an Interjection may be used in Exclamations:**

Heu me misērum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic. Me misērum, *Me miserable!*<sup>1</sup> Cic. O fallācem spem, *O deceptive hope!* Cic. Me caecum, *Blind that I am!* Cic. Pro deōrum fidem, *In the name of the gods!* Cic. But

1. An Adjective or Genitive generally accompanies this accusative, as in the examples.

2. O, ēheu, heu are the Interjections most frequently used with the Accusative, though others occur.

3. Other Cases also occur in exclamations:

1) The *Vocative*—when an address as well as an exclamation is intended:

Pro sancte Jūpiter, *O holy Jupiter.* Cic. Infelix Dido, *Unhappy Dido.* Virg.

2) The *Nominative*—when the exclamation approaches the form of a statement: En dextra, *Lo the right hand* (there is, or that is the right hand)! Virg. Ecce tuae littērae, *Lo your letter* (comes)! Cic.

3) The *Dative*—to designate the person after *hei*, *vae*, and sometimes after *ecce*, *en*, *hem*.

Hei mihi, *Woe to me.* Virg. Vae tibi, *Woe to you.* Ter. Ecce tibi, *Lo to you* (lo here is to you = observe). Cic. En tibi, *This for you* (lo I do this for you). Liv. See 339. 2.

## SECTION V.

### DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives—Adverbs and Substantives.

### I. DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT.—A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the action, that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

### RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Tempōri cedit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuerant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Mundus deo pāret, *The world obeys God.*<sup>2</sup> Cic. Caesāri supplicābo, *I will supplicate Caesar.*<sup>3</sup> Cic. Nōbis vīta dāta est, *Life has*

<sup>1</sup> Milton, Par. Lost, iv. 73

<sup>2</sup> Is subject to God.

<sup>3</sup> Will make supplication to Caesar.

been granted to us. Cic. Numitori deditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons iter hostibus dedit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Leges civitatibus suis scripserunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

1. DOUBLE CONSTRUCTION.—A few verbs admit (1) the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (2) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing: *alicui rem donare*, to present a thing to any one, or *aliquem re donare*, to present any one with a thing. For the Dat. of the person, the Dat. of a thing sometimes occurs, especially if it involves persons or is in a measure personified :

Murum urbi circumdedit, *He surrounded the city with a wall.* Nep.

This double construction occurs chiefly with: *aspergo, circumdo, circumfundo, dono, exuo, impertio, induo, inspergo, intercludo.*

2. To and For are not always signs of the Dative : thus

1) To, denoting mere *motion* or *direction*, is generally expressed by the Accusative with or without a preposition (379. and 379. 4) :

Veni ad urbem, *I came to the city.* Cic. Delum venimus, *We came to Delos.* Cic. But the Dative occurs in the poets: *It clamor coelo*, *The shout goes to heaven.* Virg.

2) For, *in defence of*, *in behalf of*, is expressed by the Abl. with *pro* ; *for the sake of*, *for the purpose of*, sometimes by the Accus. with *in*.

Pro patria mori, *to die for one's country.* Hor. Dimicare pro libertate, *to fight for liberty.* Cic. Satis in usum, *enough for use.* Liv.

3. OTHER ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.—Conversely the dative is often used where the English either omits TO or FOR, or employs some other preposition. We proceed to specify the cases in which this difference of idiom requires notice.

385. The Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage is used with verbs signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist* ; also, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like :

Sibi prosunt, *They benefit themselves.* Cic. Nocere alteri, *to injure another.* Cic. Zenoni placuit, *It pleased Zeno.* Cic. Displicet Tullo, *It displeases Tullus.* Liv. Cupiditatibus imperare, *to command desires.* Cic. Deo parere, *to obey God.* Cic. Regi servire, *to serve the king.* Cic. Hostibus resistere, *to resist the enemy.* Caes. Sibi indulgere, *to indulge one's self.* Cic. Vitae parcere, *to spare life.* Nep. Mihi ignoscere, *to pardon me.* Cic. Minitans patriae, *threatening his country.* Liv. Irasci amicis, *to be angry with friends.* Cic. Mihi credere, *Believe me.* Cic. Iis persuadere, *to persuade them.* Caes.

1. OTHER CASES.—Some verbs of this class take the Accusative : *dēlecto*, *jūvo*, *laedo*, *offendo*, etc. ; *fido* and *confido* generally the Ablative (419) : *Mārium jūvit*, *He helped Marius*. Nep.

2. SPECIAL VERBS.—With a few verbs the force of the dative is found only by attending to the strict meaning of the verb : *nūbo*, to marry, strictly to veil one's self, as the bride for the bridegroom ; *mēdeor*, to cure, to administer a remedy to ; *sātisfācio*, to satisfy, to do enough for, etc.

3. ACCUSATIVE OR DATIVE with a difference of signification : *cūrēre āliquem*, to ward off some one ; *cūrēre ālicui*, to care for some one ; *consūlere āliquem*, to consult, etc. ; *ālicui*, to consult for ; *mētūere*, *tīmēre āliquem*, to fear, etc. ; *ālicui*, to fear for ; *prospicere*, *prōvidere āliquid*, to foresee ; *ālicui*, to provide for ; *tempērare*, *mōdērāri āliquid*, to govern, direct ; *ālicui*, to restrain, put a check upon ; *tempērare (sibi) ab āliquo*, to abstain from.

A few verbs admit either the Acc. or Dat. without any special difference of meaning : *ādūlor*, to flatter ; *cōmitor*, to accompany, etc.

4. DATIVE RENDERED FROM, occurs with a few verbs of *differing*, *dissenting*, *repelling*, *taking away* : *diffēro*, *discrepo*, *disto*, *dissentio*, *arceo*, etc. .

*Differre cuius*, to differ from any one. Nep. *Discrepāre istis*, to differ from those. Hor. *Sibi dissentire*, to dissent from himself. Cic. See 412.

5. DATIVE RENDERED WITH, occurs with *misceo*, *admisceo*, *permisceo*, *jungo*, *certo*, *decerto*, *lucto*, *altercor*, and sometimes *fācio* (434. 2) :

*Sēvēritātem miscere cōmitāti*, to unite severity with affability. Liv.

*Misceo* and its compounds, as also *junctus* and *conjunctus*, also take the Abl. with or without *cum*.

**386. Dative with Compounds.**—The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions :

ad,	ante,	con,	in,	inter,
ob,	post,	prae,	sub,	super :

*Adsum āmīcis*, *I am present with my friends*. Cic. *Omnibus antestāre*, to surpass all. Cic. *Terris cohaeret*, *It cleaves to the earth*. Sen. *Vōluptāti inhaerere*, to be connected with pleasure. Cic. *Interfuit pugnae*, *He participated in the battle*. Nep. *Consiliis obstāre*, to oppose plans. Nep. *Libertāti ōpes postferre*, to sacrifice wealth to liberty. Liv. *Pōpūlo praesunt*, *They rule the people*. Cic. *Succumbere dōlōribus*, to yield to sorrows. Cic. *Sūperfuit patri*, *He survived his father*. Liv.

1. TRANSITIVE Verbs thus compounded admit both the Accusative and Dative : *Se oppōsuit hostibus*, *He opposed himself to the enemy*. Cic.

2. COMPOUNDS OF OTHER PREPOSITIONS, especially *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *circum*, sometimes admit the Dative ; while several of the compounds specified under the rule admit the Abl. : *assuesco*, *consuesco*, *insuesco*, *acquiesco*, *sūpersēdeo* (also with Acc.), etc.

*Hoc Caesāri defuit*, *This failed (was wanting to) Caesar*. Caes.

3. MOTION OR DIRECTION.—Compounds expressing mere motion or direction generally take the Accusative or repeat the preposition :



*Adire aras, to approach the altars. Cic. Ad consules adire, to go to the consuls. Cic.*

In some instances where no motion is expressed, several of these compounds admit some other construction for the Dative:

*In oratore inest scientia, In the orator is knowledge. Cic.*

### 387. The Dative of Possessor is used with the verb *Sum*:

*Mihi est nōverca, I have (there is to me) a stepmother. Virg. Fonti nōmen Arēthūsa est, The fountain has (there is to the fountain) the name Arethusa. Cic. But*

1. The DATIVE OF THE NAME as well as of the possessor is common in expressions of naming: *nōmen est, nomen datur*, etc.:

*Scipioni Africano cognōmen fuit, Scipio had the surname Africanus. Sall. Here Africano, instead of being in apposition with cognōmen, is put by attraction in apposition with Scipioni.*

2. The GENITIVE OF THE NAME dependent upon *nomen* occurs:

*Nōmen Mercurii est mihi, I have the name of Mercury. Plaut.*

3. By a GREEK IDIOM, *vōlens, cōpiens, or invitus* sometimes accompanies the dative of possessor:

*Quibus bellum vōlentibus erat, They liked the war (it was to them wishing). Tac.*

### 388. Dative of Agent.—The Dative of Agent is used with the Participle in *dus*:

*Suum cuique incommōdum fērendum est, Every one has his own trouble to bear, or must bear his own trouble. Cic.*

1. DATIVE WITH COMPOUND TENSES.—The Dative of the Agent is sometimes used with the compound tenses of passive verbs:

*Mihi consilium captum jam diu est, I have a plan long since formed. Cic.*

1) The Dative of Agent, with the Participle in *dus*, as in the Periphrastic Conjugation, designates the person who has the work to do; while with the Compound Tenses of passive verbs, it designates the person who has the work already done. See examples above.

2) HABEO with the Perfect Participle has the same force as EST MIHI with the Perfect Participle (§55, 1):

*Bellum habuit indictum, He had a war (already) declared. Cic.*

3) The Ablative with *a* or *ab* occurs:

*Est a vōbis consilendum, Measures must be taken by you. Cic.*

2. The REAL AGENT with Passive verbs is denoted by the Ablative with *a* or *ab*. The Dative, though the regular construction with the Passive Periphrastic conjugation, does not regard the person strictly as agent, but rather as possessor or indirect object. Thus, *Suum cuique incommōdum est*, means, Every one has his trouble (*cuique* Dative of Possessor), and *Suum cuique incommōdum fērendum est*, Every one has his trouble to bear. So too, *Mihi consilium est*, I have a plan; *Mihi consilium captum est*, I have a plan (already) formed.

3. DATIVE WITH SIMPLE TENSES.—The Dative is used with the tenses for incomplete action, to designate the person who is at once *Agent* and *Indirect Object*, the person BY whom and FOR (TO) whom the action is performed:

Hōnesta hōnis vīris quaeruntur, *Honorable things are sought by good men*, i. e., for themselves. Cic.

4. DATIVE OF AGENT IN POETS.—In the poets the Dative is often used for the *Ablative* with *a* or *ab*, to designate simply the agent of the action :

Non intelligor ulli, *I am not understood by any one*. Ovid.

**389. Ethical Dative.**—A Dative of the person to whom the thought is of special interest is often introduced into the Latin sentence when it cannot be imitated in English :

At tibi vēnit ad me, *But lo, he comes to me*. Cic. Ad illa mihi intendat ānimum, *Let him, I pray, direct his attention to those things*. Liv. Quid mihi Celsus āgit? *What is my Celsus doing?* Hor. But

1. The ETHICAL DATIVE is always a personal pronoun.

2. ETHICAL DATIVE with VOLO and INTERJECTIONS :

1) With VOLO: Quid vōbis vultis? *What do you wish, intend, mean?* Liv. Avāritia quid sibi vult, *What does avarice mean, or what object can it have?* Cic.

2) With INTERJECTIONS: *hei, vae* and some others: Ille mihi, *ah me*. Virg. Vae tibi, *Woe to you*. Ter. See 351. 3. 3).

### RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

**390. Two Datives**—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs :

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Mālo est hōmīnibus āvāritia, *Avarice is an evil to men* (lit. *is to men for an evil*). Cic. Est mihi cūrac, *It is a care to me*. Cic. Dōmus dēdēcōri dōmīno fit, *The house becomes a disgrace to its owner*. Cic. Vēnit Attīcis auxilio, *He came to the assistance of the Athenians*. Nep. Hoc illi tribuēbātur ignāviae, *This was imputed to him as cowardice* (for cowardice). Cic. Iis subsidio missus est, *He was sent to them as aid*. Nep.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Quinque cohortes castris praesidio rēliquit, *He left five cohorts for the defence of the camp* (lit. *to the camp for a defence*). Caes. Pēricles agros suos dōno rei publicae dēdit, *Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present* (lit. *for a present*). Just.

1. Verbs with TWO DATIVES are

1) Intransitives signifying *to be, become, go*, and the like; *sum, fio*, etc.

2) Transitives signifying *to give, send, leave, impute, regard, choose*, and the like: *do, dono, dūco, hābeo, mītto, rēlinquo, tribuo, verto*, etc. These take in the Active two datives with an accusative, but in the Passive two datives only, as the Accusative of the active becomes the subject of the passive. See 371. 6.

2. ONE DATIVE OMITTED.—One dative is often omitted or its place supplied by a Predicate Noun:

Ea sunt ūsui, *These things are of use* (for use). Caes. Tu illi pater es, *You are a father to him*. Tac.

3. With *Audiens* two Datives sometimes occur, the Dat. *dicto* dependent upon *audiens* and a personal Dat. dependent upon *dicto*—*audiens* treated as a verb of obeying (385):

Dicto sum audiens, *I am listening to the word, I obey*. Plaut. Nobis dicto audiens est, *He is obedient to us*. Cic. Sometimes *dicto obediens* is used in the same way: Magistro dicto obediens, *obedient to his master*. Plaut.

## II. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

### RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae solum omnibus carum est, *The soil of their country is dear to all*. Cic. Id aptum est tempori, *This is adapted to the time*. Cic. Omni aetati mors est communis, *Death is common to every age*. Cic. Canis similis lupo est, *A dog is similar to a wolf*. Cic. Naturae accommodatum, *adapted to nature*. Cic. Graeciae utile, *useful to Greece*. Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.—The most common are those signifying:

*Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful*, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis*.

Such are: accommodatus, aequalis, alienus, amicus and inimicus, aptus, carus, facilis and difficilis, fidelis and infidelis, finitimus, gratus and ingratus, idoneus, jucundus and injucundus, molestus, necessarius, notus and ignotus, noxius, par and dispar, perniciosus, propinquus, proprius, salutaris, similis and dissimilis, vicinus, etc.

2. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS sometimes occur where the learner would expect the Dative:

1) *Accusative with a Preposition*: (1) **in, erga, adversus** with adjectives signifying *friendly, hostile*, etc., and (2) **ad**, to denote the *object* or *end* for which, with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable, inclined*, etc.:

Perindulgens in patrem, *very kind to his father*. Cic. Multas ad res perutilis, *very useful for many things*. Cic. Ad comitatem proclivis, *inclined to affability*. Cic. Pronus ad luctum, *inclined to mourning*. Cic.

2) *Accusative without a Preposition* with *propior, proximus*:

Propior montem, *nearer the mountain*. Sall. Proximus mare, *nearest to the sea*. Caes. See 433 and 437.

3) *Ablative with or without a Preposition*:

Alienum a vita mea, *foreign to my life*. Ter. Homine alienissimum, *most foreign to man*. Cic. Ei cum Roscio communis, *common to him and Roscius* (with Roscius). Cic.

4) *Genitive*: (1) with *proprius, communis, contrarius*; (2) with *similis*,

*dissimilis, assimilis, consimilis, par* and *dispar*, especially to express likeness in character; (3) with adjectives used substantively, sometimes even in the superlative; (4) sometimes with *affinis, alienus, insuetus*, and a few others:

Pöpöli Römäni est propria libertas, *Liberty is characteristic of the Roman people*. Cic. Alexandri similis, *like Alexander*, i. e., in character. Cic. Dispar sui, *unlike itself*. Cic. Cujus pares, *like whom*. Cic. Amicissimus hominum, *the best friend of the men*, i. e., the most friendly to them. Cic.

3. **Idem** occurs with the Dative, especially in the poets:

Idem facit occidenti, *He does the same as kill, or as he who kills*. Hor.

4. For the GENITIVE AND DATIVE with an adjective, see 399. 6.

### III. DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADVERBS.

#### RULE XV.—Dative.

392. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives:

I. **VERBAL NOUNS**.—Justitia est obtemperatio legibus, *Justice is obedience to laws*. Cic. Sibi responsio, *replying to himself*. Cic. Opulento homini servitus dura est, *Serving a rich man (servitude to) is hard*. Plant.

II. **ADVERBS**.—Congruenter naturae vivere, *to live in accordance with nature*. Cic. Sibi constanter dicere, *to speak consistently with himself*. Cic. Proxime hostium castris, *next to the camp of the enemy*. Caes.

1. **DATIVE WITH NOUNS**.—Nouns construed with the Dative are derived from verbs which govern the Dative. With other nouns the Dative is generally best explained as dependent upon some verb, expressed or understood:

Tegumenta galeis milites facere jubet, *He orders the soldiers to make coverings for their helmets*. Caes. Here *galeis* is probably the indirect object of *facere* and not dependent upon *tegumenta*. In conspectum venerat hostibus, *He had come in sight of the enemy*. Caes. Here *hostibus* is dependent not upon *conspectum*, but upon *venerat*; the action, *coming in sight*, is conceived of as done to the enemy. See 398. 5.

2. **DATIVE WITH ADVERBS**.—A few adverbs not included in the above rule occur with the Dative: *huic una* = *una cum hoc*, with him.

### SECTION VI.

#### GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*, but in its general use, it corresponds to the English possessive, or the objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

1. But sometimes, especially when Objective (396, II.), the Genitive is best rendered by *to*, *for*, *from*, *in*, *on account of*, etc.:

Beneficii gratia, *gratitude for a favor*. Cic. Laborum fuga, *escape from labors*. Cic.

394. The Genitive is used

- I. With Nouns.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With Verbs.
- IV. With Adverbs.

## I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

### RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive :

Cătōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmleāris, *the death of Hamilear*. Liv. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv. Vir consīlii magni, *a man of great prudence*. Caes. See 363.

396. Varieties of Genitive with Nouns.—The principal varieties of the Genitive are the following :

I. The SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE designates the *subject* or *agent* of the action, feeling, etc., including the *author* and *possessor* :

Serpentis morsus, *the bite of the serpent*. Cic. Pāvor Nūmīdārum, *the fear of the Numidians*. Liv. Xēnōphontis libri, *the books of Xenophon*. Cic. Fānum Neptūni, *the temple of Neptune*. Nep.

II. The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE designates the *object* toward which the action or feeling is directed :

Amor glōriae, *the love of glory*. Cic. Mēmōria mālōrum, *the recollection of sufferings*. Cic. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv.

III. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE designates the *whole* of which a *part* is taken :

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Vitae pars, *a part of life*. Cic. Omnium sāpientissimus, *the wisest of all men*. Cic.

1. NOSTRUM and VESTRUM.—As partitive genitives, *nostrum* and *vestrum* are generally used instead of *nostri* and *vestri*.

2. USE.—The Partitive Genitive is used

1) With *pars*, *nōmo*, *nihil* ; nouns of quantity, number, weight, etc. : *mōdius*, *lēgio*, *tālentum*, and any nouns used partitively :

Equōrum pars, *a part of the horses*. Liv. Mēdimnum trītīci, *a bushel of wheat*. Cic. Pēcūniae tālentum, *a talent of money*. Nep. Quōrum Cāius, *of whom Caius*. Cic.

2) With Numerals used Substantively :

Quōrum quattuor, *four of whom*. Liv. Sāpientum octāvus, *the eighth of the wise men*. Hor.

(1) But the Genitive should not be used when the two words refer to the same number of objects, even though *of* be used in English: Vīvi qui (not *quōrum*) duo sūpersunt, *the living, of whom two survive*. Cic.

3) With Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, especially (1) with *hic, ille, quis, qui, alter, ūter, neuter*, etc.; (2) with comparatives and superlatives; (3) with neuters: *hoc, id, illud, quid; multum, plus, plūrimum, minus, mīnimum, tantum, quantum*, etc.; (4) with *omnes* and *cuncti*, rarely:

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Consūlum alter, *one of the consuls*. Liv. Prior hōrum, *the former of these*. Nep. Gallōrum fortissīmi, *the bravest of the Gauls*. Caes. Id temporis, *that (of) time*. Cic. Multum ōpērae, *much (of) service*. Cic. Hōmīnum cuncti, *all of the men*. Ovid. But *omnes* and *cuncti* generally agree with their nouns: Omnes hōmīnes, *all men*. Cic.

Pronouns and Adjectives, except neuters, when used with the Part. Gen. take the gender of the Gen. unless they agree directly with some other word; see *Consūlum alter* above.

4) With a few *Adverbs* used substantively; (1) with adverbs of Quantity—*abunde, affātum, nīmis, pārūm, partim, quoad, sātis*, etc.; (2) with adverbs of Place—*hic, huc, nusquam, ūbi*, etc.; (3) with adverbs of Extent, degree, etc.—*co, huc, quō*; (4) with superlatives:

Armōrum affātum, *abundance of arms*. Liv. Lūcis nīmis, *too much (of) light*. Ovid. Sāpientiae pārūm, *little (of) wisdom*. Sall. Partim cōpiārum, *a portion of the forces*. Liv. Quoad ejus facere pōtest, *as far as (as much of) he is able to do*. Cic. Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world*. Cic. Huc arrōgantiae, *to this degree of insolence*. Tac. Maxīme omnium, *most of all*. Cic.

3. Lōci and lōcōrum occur as partitive genitives in expressions of time:

Intērea lōci, *in the mean time*. Ter. Adhuc lōcōrum, *hitherto*. Plaut.

4. For *id gēnus* = *ejus gēnēris, sēcus, libra*, etc., see 380. 2.

5. For Predicate Genitive, see 401.

IV. The GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC designates *character* or *quality*, including *value, price, size, weight, age*, etc.

Vir maxīmi consīlii, *a man of very great prudence*. Nep. Mītis ingēnī jūvēnis, *a youth of mild disposition*. Liv. Vestis magni prētīi, *a garment of great value*. Cic. Exsīlium dēcem annōrum, *an exile of ten years*. Nep. Cōrōna parvi pondēris, *a crown of small weight*. Liv. See 402, III. 1.

1. A noun designating *character* or *quality* may be either in the Gen. or in the Abl. See 428.

1) But it must be accompanied by an adjective, numeral, or pronoun, unless it be a compound containing such modifier; as *hujusmodi* = *hujus modi*: *tridui*, from *tres dies*; *bidui*, from *duo (bis) dies*. With *tridui* and *bidui*, *via* or *spatium* is sometimes omitted: *Abērant bidui*, *They were two days' journey distant*. Cic.

V. The GENITIVE OF SPECIFICATION has the general force of an Appositive (363):

*Virtus continentiae*, the virtue of self-control. Cic. *Verbum voluptatis*, the word (of) pleasure. Cic. *Oppidum Antiōchiæ*, the city of Antioch. Cic. *Tellus Ausōniæ*, the land of Ausonia. Virg.

### 397. Peculiarities.—We notice the following:

1. The GOVERNING WORD is often omitted. Thus

*Aedes, templum, discipulus, homo, juvenis, puer*, etc.; *causa, gratia*, and indeed any word when it can be readily supplied:

*Ad Jōvis* (sc. *aedem*), near the temple of Jupiter. Liv. *Hannibal annorum novem* (sc. *puer*), Hannibal a boy nine years of age. Liv. *Naves sui commōdi* (causa) *fēcerat*, He had built vessels for his own advantage. Caes. *Conferre vitam Trēbonii cum Dōlābellæ* (sc. *vita*), to compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella. Cic.

1) The governing word is generally omitted when it has been expressed before another Gen. as in the last example; and then the second Gen. is sometimes attracted into the case of the governing word: *Nātūra hōmīnis bēluis* (for *beluārum nātūrae*) *antecēdit*, The nature of man surpasses (that of) the brutes. Cic.

2) In many cases where we supply *son, daughter, husband, wife*, the ellipsis is only apparent, the Gen. depending directly on the proper noun expressed:

*Hasdrūbal Giscōnis*, Gisco's Hasdrubal, or Hasdrubal the son of Gisco. Liv. *Hectōris Andrōmachæ*, Hector's Andromache, or Andromache the wife of Hector. Virg.

2. Two GENITIVES are sometimes used with the same noun—generally one Subjective and one Objective:

*Memmii ōdium pōtētiæ*, Memmius's hatred of power. Sall.

3. GENITIVE AND POSSESSIVE.—A Genitive sometimes accompanies a Possessive, especially the Gen. of *ipse, solus, unus, omnis*:

*Tua ipsius amicitia*, your own friendship. Cic. *Meum solius peccatum*, my fault alone. Cic. *Nomen meum absentis*, my name while absent. Cic.

Here *ipsius* agrees with *tui* (of you) involved in *tua*; *solius* and *absentis*, with *mei* (of me) involved in *meum*.

### 398. Other Constructions—for the Genitive occur.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC. See 428.

2. An ADJECTIVE is sometimes used for the Genitive:

*Bellica glōria* = *belli glōria*, the glory of war. Cic. *Conjux Hectōrea* = *conjux Hectōris*, the wife of Hector. Virg.

3. The POSSESSIVE is regularly used for the Subjective Gen. of Personal pronouns, rarely for the Objective:

*Mea dōmus, my house. Cic. Fāma tua, your fame. Cic.*

4. CASE WITH PREPOSITION.—A case with a preposition may be used for the Gen.; especially, 1) For the *Objective Genitive*, the Accusative with *in, erga, adversus*:—2) For the *Partitive Genitive*, the Accusative with *inter, ante, āpud*, or the Ablative with *ex, de, in*:

*Odium in hōmīnum gēnus, hatred of or towards the race of men. Cic. Erga vos āmor, love towards you. Cic. Inter rēges ōpulentissimus, the most wealthy of (among) kings. Sen. Unus ex vīris, one of the heroes. Cic.*

5. A DATIVE depending on the VERB is sometimes used, instead of the Genitive depending on a noun:

*Urbi fundāmenta jācēre, to lay the foundations of (for) the city. Liv. Caesāri ad pēdes projicēre, to cast at the feet of Caesar, i. e., before Caesar at his feet. Caes. See 392. 1.*

1) The two constructions, the Gen. and the Case with Prep., are sometimes combined in the same sentence.

## II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

### RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

*Avidus laudis, desirous of praise. Cic. Otii cūpīdus, desirous of leisure. Liv. Amans sui virtus, virtue fond of itself. Cic. Efficiens vōluptātis, productive of pleasure. Cic. Glōriāe mēmōr, mindful of glory. Liv.*

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force—*of, in respect of*—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax** and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively:

*Virtūtum fērax, productive of virtues. Liv. Tēnax prōpōsīti, tenacious (steadfast) of purpose. Hor. Amans patriae, loving (fond of) his country. Cic. Fūgiens lābōris, shunning labor. Caes.*

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries:

(1) DESIRE, AVERSION—*āvidus, cūpīdus, stūdiōsus; fastīdiōsus*, etc.; sometimes *aemūlus* and *invidus*, which also take the Dative:

*Contentiōnis cūpīdus, desirous of contention. Cic. Sāpientiae stūdiōsus, studious of (student of) wisdom. Cic.*

(2) KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION with their contraries—*gnārus*,



*ignārus, consultus, conscius, inscius, nescius, certus, incertus, suspensus; prōvidus, prudens, imprudens; pēritus, impēritus, rūdis, insuetus; mēmor, immēmor, etc.:*

*Rei gnārus, acquainted with the thing. Cic. Prudens rei militāris, skilled in military science. Nep. Pēritus belli, skilled in war. Nep. Insuetus lābōris, unaccustomed to labor. Caes. Glōriae mēmor, mindful of glory. Liv. Immēmor bēnēficii, forgetful of kindness. Cic.*

(3) PARTICIPATION, FULNESS, MASTERY, with their contraries—*affinis, consors, exsors, expers, particeps; plenus, fertilis, refertus, egēnus, inops, vācuus; pōtens, impōtens, compos, impos, etc.:*

*Affinis culpaē, sharing the fault. Cic. Ratiōnis particeps, endowed with (sharing) reason. Cic. Ratiōnis expers, destitute of reason. Cic. Vita mētus plēna, a life full of fear. Cic. Mei pōtens sum, I am master of myself. Liv. Virtūtis compos, capable of virtue. Cic.*

### 3. OTHER ADJECTIVES also occur with the Genitive.

1) A few of a signification kindred to the above:

*Mānifestus rērum cāpitālium, convicted of capital crimes. Sall. Noxius conjūrātiōnis, guilty of conspiracy. Tac.*

2) *Similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis; par and dispar*, especially to denote internal or essential likeness. See 391. 2. 4).

3) Sometimes *aliēnus, communis, proprius, publicus, sacer, vicinus*:

*Aliēnus dignitātis, inconsistent with dignity. Cic. Viri proprius, characteristic of a man. Cic.*

4) In the poets and late prose writers, especially Tacitus, a Genitive of Cause occurs with a few adjectives, especially those denoting *emotion or feeling*, and a Gen. having the force of—in, in respect of, for, especially *ānīmi* and *ingēnii*, with many adjectives:

*Anxius pōtēntiae, anxious for power. Tac. Lassus militiae, tired of military service. Hor. See Gen. with Verbs, 409. 2 and 4. Aeger ānīmi, afflicted in mind. Liv. Anxius ānīmi, anxious in mind. Sall. Intēger aevi, whole in respect of age, i. e., in the bloom of youth. Virg.*

### 4. PARTITIVE GENITIVE with Adjectives. See 396. III. 3).

### 5. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) DATIVE: *Mānus sūbitis āvidae, hands ready for sudden events. Tac. Insuetus mōribus Rōmānis, unaccustomed to Roman manners. Liv. Fācinōri mens conscia, a mind conscious of crime. Cic.*

2) ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITION: *Insuetus ad pugnam, unaccustomed to battle. Liv. Fertilis ad omnia, productive for all things. Plin. Avidus in nōvas res, eager for new things. Liv.*

3) ABLATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT PREPOSITION: *Prudens in jūre cīvili, learned in civil law. Cic. Rūdis in jūre cīvili, uninstructed in civil law. Cic. His de rēbus conscius, aware of those things. Cic. Vācuus de dēfensōribus, destitute of defenders. Caes. Cūris vācuus, free from cares. Cic. Rēfertus bōnis, replete with blessings. Cic.*

### 6. The GENITIVE AND DATIVE occur with the same adjective:

*Sibi conscii culpaē, conscious to themselves of fault. Cic.*

## III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

400. The Genitive with Verbs includes

- I. Predicate Genitive.
- II. Genitive of Place.
- III. Genitive in Special Constructions.

## I. Predicate Genitive.

## RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject is put in the Genitive :

*Omnia hostium erant, All things belonged to the enemy.*<sup>1</sup> Liv. *Sénātus Hannibālis erat, The senate was Hannibal's*, i. e., in his interest. Liv. *Jūdicis est vērū sēqui, To follow the truth is the duty of a judge.*<sup>2</sup> Cic. *Parvi pretii est, It is of small value.* Cic.

1. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.—The Predicate Genitive is distinguished from the Predicate Nominative and Accusative by the fact that it always designates a different person or thing from its subject, while they always designate the same person or thing as their subjects. See 362.

2. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE.—The genitive is often nearly or quite equivalent to a predicate adjective (353. 1): *hōmīnis est = hūmānum est*, it is the mark of a man, is human; *stultī est = stultum est*, it is foolish. The Gen. is the regular construction in adjectives of one ending: *sāpientis est* (for *sāpiens est*), it is the part of a wise man, is wise.

402. Varieties of Predicate Genitive.—The principal are,

I. SUBJECTIVE OR POSSESSIVE GENITIVE—generally best rendered by—*of, property of, duty, business, mark, characteristic of* :

*Haec hostium erant, These things were of (belonged to) the enemy.* Liv. *Est impērātōris sup̄rāre, It is the duty of a commander to conquer.* Caes.

II. PARTITIVE GENITIVE :

*Fies nobīlium fontium, You will become one of the noble fountains.* Hor.

III. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC—including *value, price, size, weight*, etc. :

*Summae facultātis est, He is (a man) of the highest ability.* Cic. *Op̄era magni fuit, The assistance was of great value.* Nep.

1. The Genitive of *Price* or *Value* is generally an adjective belonging to *pretii* understood; but sometimes *pretii* is expressed :

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *were of the enemy*, or *were the enemy's*.

<sup>2</sup> Lit. *is of a judge*.

Parvi pretii est, *It is of little value.* Cic. See 336. IV.

2. *Price* and *Value* with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, and the like, are expressed

1) Regularly by the Ablative. See 416.

2) Sometimes by the Genitive of adjectives, like the Pred. Gen. of price: *Vendo frumentum pluris, I sell grain at a higher price.* Cic.

But the Gen. is thus used only in *indefinite* and *general* expressions of price and value. A definite price or value regularly requires the Ablative.

3) In familiar discourse sometimes by the genitives, *assis, flocci, nihili, pili* and a few others:

*Non flocci pendere, not to care a straw (lock of wool) for.* Plaut.

3. *Boni* and *Aequi*, as Predicate Genitives, occur in such expressions as *aequi boni facere* and *boni consilire*, to take in good part.

**403. Verbs with Predicate Genitive.**—The Predicate genitive occurs most frequently with *sum* and *facio*, but sometimes also with verbs of *seeming* and *regarding*:

*Haec hostium erant, These things were the enemy's.* Liv. *Oram Romanae ditionis fecit, He brought the coast under (of) Roman rule.* Liv.

1. Transitive Verbs of this class admit in the active, an Accusative with the Genitive, as in the second example.

2. With Verbs of *Seeming* and *Regarding*—*videor, habeo, duco, puto*, etc.—*esse* may generally be supplied:

*Hominis videtur, It seems to be (esse) the mark of a man.* Cic.

**404. Other Constructions for the Genitive also occur.**

1. The *Possessive* is regularly used for the Pred. Gen. of personal pronouns:

*Est tuum (not tui) videre, It is your duty to see.* Cic.

2. The Genitive with *Officium, Munus, Negotium, Proprium*:

*Senatus officium est, It is the duty of the senate.* Cic. *Fuit proprium populi, It was characteristic of the people.* Cic.

The Predicate Genitive could in most instances be explained by supplying some such word, but it seems to be more in accordance with the idiom of the Latin to regard the genitive as complete in itself.

3. The *Ablative of Characteristic*. See 428.

## II. Genitive of Place. See 421. II.

## III. Genitive in Special Constructions.

**405.** The Genitive, either alone or with an Accusative, is used in a few constructions which deserve separate mention.

## RULE XIX.—Genitive with Certain Verbs.

### 406. The Genitive is used

#### I. With *misēreor* and *misēresco*:

*Misērere lābōrum, Pity the labors.* Virg. *Misērescīte rēgis, Pity the king.* Virg.

#### II. With *rēcorder*, *mēmīni*, *rēmīniscor*, and *oblīviscor*:

*Mēmīnit praetērītōrum, He remembers the past.* Cic. *Oblītus sum mei, I have forgotten myself.* Ter. *Flāgītīōrum rēcōdāri, to recollect base deeds.* Cic. *Rēmīniscī virtūtis, to remember virtue.* Caes.

#### III. With *rēfert* and *intērest*:

*Illōrum rēfert, It concerns them.* Sall. *Intērest omnium, It is the interest of all.* Cic.

1. EXPLANATION.—The Genitive may be explained as dependent upon *re* in *rēfert*, and upon *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *intērest*. With the other verbs it accords with the Greek idiom, and with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, it also conforms to the analogy of the Gen. with the adjectives *mēmōr* and *immēmōr* (399. 2. 2).

2. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—The expression *Vēnit mihi in mentem*, It occurs to my mind, equivalent to *rēmīniscor*, is sometimes construed with the Gen.:

*Vēnit mihi Plātōnis in mentem, The recollection of Plato comes to my mind, or I recollect Plato.* Cic. But the Nom. is also admissible: *Non vēnit in mentem pugna, Does not the battle come to mind?* Liv.

### 407. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS with verbs of *Remembering* and *Forgetting* also occur:

#### 1. The Accusative: *Mēmīnēram Paulum, I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *thing* (not person), with *rēcorder*, and, if it be a neuter pronoun or adjective, also with other verbs:

*Triumphos rēcōdāri, to recall triumphs.* Cic. *Ea rēmīniscēre, Remember those things.* Cic.

#### 2. The Ablative with *De*: *Rēcōdāre de cēīcris, Botlink yourself of the others.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *person* with *rēcorder*, and occurs also with *mēmīni*, though that verb takes the *Acc.* of a *contemporary*.

### 408. The CONSTRUCTION with *Rēfert* and *Intērest* is as follows:

#### 1. The PERSON or THING interested is denoted

1) By the *Genitive* as under the rule.

2) By the *Ablative Feminine* of the *Possessive* :

Meā rēfert, *It concerns me.* Ter. Intērest meā, *It interests me.* Cic.

This possessive regularly takes the place of the Gen. of personal pronouns, and may be explained as agreeing with *re* in *rēfert*, and with *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest*.

3) By the *Dative*, or *Accusative with* or *without Ad* ; but rarely, and chiefly with *rēfert*, which moreover often omits the person :

Quid rēfert vīventi, *What does it concern one living?* Hor. Ad me rēfert, *It concerns me.* Plaut.

2. The **SUBJECT OF IMPORTANCE**, or that which involves the interest, is expressed by an Infinitive or Clause, or by a Neuter Pronoun :

Intērest omnium recte fācere, *To do right is the interest of all.* Cic. Vestrā hoc intērest, *This interests you.* Cic.

3. The **DEGREE OF INTEREST** is expressed by an Adverb, by a Neuter used adverbially, or by a Gen. of Value (402. 1 and 2) :

Vestrā maxime intērest, *It especially interests you.* Cic. Quid nostrā rēfert, *What does it concern us?* Cic. Magni intērest meā, *It greatly interests me.* Cic.

4. The **OBJECT** or **END** for which it is important is expressed by the Accusative with *ad*, rarely by the Dative :

Ad hōnorem nostrum intērest, *It is important for our honor.* Cic.

#### 409. GENITIVE WITH OTHER VERBS.—Many other verbs sometimes take the Genitive :

1. Some Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*, as *ēgeo*, *indīgeo*, like adjectives of the same meaning (399. 2. 2) :

Virtus exercitiōnis indīget, *Virtue requires exercise.* Cic. Auxīlii ēgere, *to need aid.* Caes.

2. Some Verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling* like adjectives (399. 3. 4) :

Animi pendeo, *I am uncertain in mind.* Cic. Discrūciōr ānīmī, *I am troubled in mind.* Plaut.

3. A few Verbs denoting *Mastery* or *Participation* like adjectives (399. 2. 2) ), *pōtior*, *ādīpīscor*, *regno* :

Siellae pōtītus est, *He became master of Sicily.* Nep. Rērum ādeptus est, *He obtained the power.* Tac. Regnāvit pōpūlōrum, *He was king of the people.* Hor.

4. A Genitive of *Separation* or *Cause* occurs in the poets, with a few verbs—*abstīneo*, *dēcīpio*, *dēsīno*, *dēsisto* ; *mīror* :

Abstīnere irārum, *to abstain from anger.* Hor. Lābōrum dēcīpītur, *He is beguiled of his labors.* Hor. Dēsīne quērēlārū, *Cease from complaints.* Hor. Dēsistēre pugnae, *to desist from the battle.* Virg.

5. *Sātāgo* and *Sātāgīto* admit a genitive dependent upon *sat* (396. 4) ), and verbs of *Promising* admit the Gen. *damni infecti* :

Rērum sātāgere, *to be occupied with (have enough of) business.* Ter.

6. Genitive of *Gerunds* and *Gerundives*. See 563 and 563. 5.

## RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

410. A few transitive verbs take both the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing :

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing.*

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting.*

III. *Misēret, Poenitet, Pūdet, Taedet, and Pīget.*

I. REMINDING, ETC.—Te amicitiae commōnēfacit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic. Milites nēcessitātis mōnet, *He reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. ACCUSING, ETC.—Vīros scēlēris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic. Lēvītātis eum convincēre, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvēre injūriā eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. MISERET, POENITET, ETC.—Eōrum nos mīsēret, *We pity them* (it moves our pity of them). Cic. Consilii me poenitet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Me stultitiā meae pūdet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

1. The GENITIVE OF THING designates, with verbs of *reminding*, etc., that to which the attention is called ; with verbs of *accusing*, etc., the crime, charge, and with *mīsēret, poenitet*, etc., the object which produces the feeling. See examples.

2. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—The personal verbs included under this Rule retain the Genitive in the Passive :

Accūsātus est prōditiōnis, *He was accused of treason.* Nep.

3. Verbs of REMINDING, *mōnco, admōnco, commōnco, commōnēfacio*, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive,

1) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely of a substantive, thus admitting two accusatives :

Illud me admōnes, *You admonish me of that.* Cic.

2) The *Ablative* with *de*, *mōneo* generally so :

De proelio vos admōnui, *I have reminded you of the battle.* Cic.

4. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONVICTING, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.,

1) The *Genitive* with *nōmīne* or *crīmīne* :

Nōmīne conjūrātiōnis damnāti sunt, *They were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.* Cic.

2) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely :

Id me accūsas, *You accuse me of that.* Plaut.

3) The *Ablative* alone or with a preposition, generally *de* :

De pēcūniis rēpētundis damnātus est, *He was convicted of extortion.* Cic.

5. With Verbs of CONDEMNING, the *Punishment* may be expressed

1) By the *Genitive* :

Căpitis condemnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

(1) *Voti damnāri*, *to be condemned to fulfill a vow = to obtain a wish*.

2) By the *Accusative* with a preposition, generally *ad* :

Ad bestias condemnāre, *to condemn to the wild beasts*. Suet.

3) By the *Ablative* ; and, in the poets, sometimes by the *Dative* :

Căpite damnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

6. With MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TAEDET, and PIGET, an Infinitive or Clause is sometimes used, rarely a neuter pronoun or *nihil* :

Me poenitet vixisse, *I repent having lived*. Cic.

1) Like *Miseret* are sometimes used *miserescit*, *commiserescit*, *miseretur*, *commiseretur*. Like *Taedet* are used *pertaedet*, *pertaesum est*.

2) *Pudet* sometimes takes the Gen. of the Person before whom one is ashamed :  
Me tui pudet, *I am ashamed in your presence*. Ter. *Pudet hominum*, *It is a shame in the sight of men*. Liv.

3) *Pertaesus* admits the Accusative of the object :

*Pertaesus ignāviam suam*, *disgusted with his own inaction*. Suet.

## 7. The ACCUSATIVE and GENITIVE occur with other Verbs.—Thus

1) With some Verbs of FREEING with the accessory notion of ACQUITTING :  
*Eum culpaē liberāre*, *to free him from blame*, i. e., *to acquit him of fault*. Liv. So *purgo*, *dēcipio*, and the like.

2) With a few Verbs of FILLING, like adjectives and verbs of plenty (399. 2. 2) and 409. 1), especially *compleo* and *impleo* :

*Multitudīnem religiōis implevit*, *He inspired (filled) the multitude with religion*. Liv. See 419. 2.

3) With a few transitive verbs of EMOTION or FEELING (400. 2), rarely :  
*Te angis ānīmi*, *You make yourself anxious in mind*. Plaut.

## IV. GENITIVE WITH ADVERBS.

## 411. The Genitive is used with a few Adverbs :

1. With *Partitives*. See 396. III. 2.

2. With *Pridie* and *Postrīdie*, perhaps dependent upon *die* contained in them, and with *Ergo* and *Tēnus*, originally nouns :

*Pridie ejus diēi*, *on the day before that day*. Caes. *Postrīdie ejus diēi*, *on the day after that day*. Caes. *Virtūtis ergo*, *on account of virtue*. Cic. *Lumbōrum tēnus*, *as far as the loins*. Cic. For *tēnus* with the Abl., see 434.

## SECTION VII.

## ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive ; but in its general use, it corresponds to the English objective with—*from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used

with Verbs and Adjectives, while the genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

#### 413. The Ablative is used as

##### I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means—including

1. Ablative of Price.
2. Ablative after Comparatives.
3. Ablative of Difference.
4. Ablative in Special Constructions.

##### II. Ablative of Place.

##### III. Ablative of Time.

##### IV. Ablative of Characteristic.

##### V. Ablative of Specification.

##### VI. Ablative Absolute.

##### VII. Ablative with Prepositions.

#### I. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

#### RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means are denoted by the Ablative:

*Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, An art is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic. *Glōria dūcitur, He is led by glory.* Cic. *Duōbus mōdis fit, It is done in two ways.* Cic. *Sol omnia lūce collustrat, The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. *Aeger erat vulnērībus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. *Laetus sorte tua, pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. The ABLATIVE OF CAUSE designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* anything is or is done.

1) This includes such ablatives as *meo jūdicio*, in accordance with my opinion; *mea sententia, jussu, impulsu, mōnitu*, etc.; also the Abl. with *dōleo, gaudeo, glōrior, lābōro*, etc.

The Abl. with *afficio*, and with *sto* in the sense of *depend upon, abide by*, is best explained as *Means*. *Afficio* and the Abl. are together often equivalent to another verb: *hōnōre afficere* = *hōnōrāre*, to honor; *admirationē afficere* = *admirāri*, to admire.

2) With *Passive* and *Intransitive* verbs, *Cause* is regularly expressed by the Abl., though a preposition with the Acc. or Abl. sometimes occurs:

*Amicitia propter se expetitur, Friendship is sought for itself.* Cic.

3) With *Transitive* verbs the Abl. without a Prep. is rare; but *causa, grātia* and ablatives in *u* of nouns used only in that case (134), *jussu, rogātu, mandātu*, etc., are thus used; sometimes also other words.



In other cases, *Cause* in the sense of—*on account of, because of*, is generally expressed—(1) by a Preposition with its case: *ob, propter, de, ex, prae*, etc.; or (2) by a Perfect Participle with an Ablative:

In oppidum propter timorem sese recipiunt, *They betake themselves into the city on account of their fear.* Caes. Regni cupiditate inductus conjurationem fecit, *Influenced by the desire of ruling, he formed a conspiracy.* Caes.

*Cupiditate* in the 2d example really expresses the *cause* of the action *fecit*, but by the use of *inductus*, it becomes the Abl. of Cause with that participle.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the Prep. *cum*; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*—*mōre, ordine, ratiōne*, etc.—occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, *with the greatest violence.* Nep. Mōre Persarum, *in the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum silentio audire, *to hear in silence.* Liv.

*Per* with the Acc. sometimes denotes *Manner*: *per vim*, violently.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.—This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed. See also 434. 2; 414, 2, 1).

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—This designates the Person by whom anything is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the Prep. *A* or *Ab*:

Occisus est a Thēbānis, *He was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

1) The Abl. without a Prep. or the Accus. with *per* is sometimes used, especially when the Person is regarded as the *Means*, rather than as the *Agent*.

Cornua Numidis firmat, *He strengthens the wings with Numidians.* Liv.

*Per Fabricium*, *by means of* (through the agency of) *Fabricius.* Cic.

2) Dative of *Agent*. See 388.

6. PERSONIFICATION.—When anything is personified as agent, the ablative with *A* or *Ab* may be used as in the names of persons:

Vinci a voluptate, *to be conquered by pleasure.* Cic. A fortuna datam occasionem, *an opportunity furnished by fortune.* Nep.

7. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.—This generally takes *cum*:

Vivit cum Balbo, *He lives with Balbus.* Cic. But

In describing military movements, the preposition is often omitted, especially when the Abl. is qualified by an adjective:

Ingenti exercitu profectus est, *He set out with a large army.* Liv.

415. KINDRED USES OF THE ABLATIVE.—Kindred to the Ablative of Cause, etc., are

I. The Ablative of Price—that by which the trade is effected.

II. The Ablative with Comparatives—that by which the comparison is effected.

III. The Ablative of Difference—that by which one object differs from another.

IV. The Ablative in Special Constructions.

**RULE XXII.—Ablative of Price.****416. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative :**

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg. Conduxit magno dōmum, *He hired a house at a high price.* Cic. Multo sanguine Poenis victōria stētit, *The victory cost the Carthaginians (stood to the Carthaginians at) much blood.* Liv. Quinquāginta tālentis aestīmāri, *to be valued at fifty talents.* Nep. Vile est vīginti mīnis, *It is cheap at twenty minae.* Plaut.

1. THE ABLATIVE OF PRICE is used

1) With verbs of buying, selling, hiring, letting, *ēmo, vendo, conducō, lūco, vēneo*, etc.

2) With verbs of costing, of being cheap or dear, *sto, consto, liceo, sum*, etc.

3) With verbs of valuing, *aestīmo*, etc.

4) With adjectives of value, *cārus, venālis*, etc.

2. EXCHANGING.—With verbs of exchanging—*mūto, commūto*, etc.—the thing received is generally treated as the price, as with verbs of *selling* :

Pāce bellum mūtāvit, *He exchanged war for peace.* Sall. But sometimes the thing given is treated as the price, as with verbs of *buying*, or is put in the Abl. with *cum* : Exsīlium patria mūtāvit, *He exchanged country for exile.* Curt.

3. ADVERBS OF PRICE are sometimes used : *bene ēmere*, to purchase well, i. e., at a low price ; *cāre aestīmāre*, to value at a high price.

4. GENITIVE OF PRICE. See 402. III.

**RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.****417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative :**

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Quid est melius bonitāte, *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them :

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimatur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi terribilior, *more terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

2. ABLATIVE, WHEN ADMISSIBLE.—The construction with *quam* is the full form for which the Ablative is an abbreviation. This abbreviation is admissible only in place of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative, but is not necessary even here except for *quam* with a Relative :

Scimus sōlem majōrem esse terrā, *We know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic. Amicitia, qua nihil mēlius hābēmus; *friendship, than which we have nothing better.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule.

1) In the first example the Ablative (*terra*) is admissible but not necessary, *quam terram* might have been used; but in the second example the Ablative (*quā*) is necessary, the conjunction *quam* would be inadmissible.

2) In the examples under the rule the ablatives *virtūte* and *bonitūte* are both equivalent to *quam* with the Nom. *quam virtus* and *quam bonitas*, which might have been used.

3) Instead of the Abl., a Preposition with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, or *supra* is sometimes used: *Ante alios immānior, more monstrous than (before) the others.* Virg.

3. CONSTRUCTION WITH PLUS, MINUS, ETC.—*Plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, or *longius*, with or without *quam*, is often introduced in expressions of number and quantity, without influence upon the construction; sometimes also *major*, *minor*, etc.:

Tecum plus annum vixit, *He lived with you more than a year.* Cic. Minus duo millia, *less than two thousand.* Liv.

So in expressions of age: *nātus plus trīginta annos, having been born more than thirty years.* The same meaning is also expressed by—*major trīginta annos nātus, major trīginta annis, major quam trīginta annōrum, or major trīginta annōrum.*

4. ATQUE OR AC FOR QUAM occurs chiefly in poetry and late prose: *Arctius atque hēdērā, more closely than with ivy.* Hor.

5. ALIUS WITH THE ABLATIVE sometimes occurs. It then involves a comparison, *other than*:

Quaerit alia his, *He seeks other things than these.* Plaut.

6. PECULIARITIES.—*Quam pro* denotes disproportion, and many ablatives—*opiniōne, spe, aequo, justo, sōlito*, etc.—are often best rendered by clauses:

Minor caedes quam pro victōria, *less slaughter than was proportionate to the victory.* Liv. Sērius spe venit, *He came later than was hoped (than hope).* Liv. Plus aequo, *more than is fair.* Cic.

## RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Difference.

418. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Uno die longiōrem mensem faciunt, *They make the month one day longer (longer by one day).* Cic. Biduo me antecessit, *He preceded me by two days.* Cic. Sunt magnitudīne paulo infra ēlēphantos, *They are in size a little below the elephant.* Caes.

1. The Ablative is thus used with all words involving a comparison, but adverbs often supply its place: *Multum robustior*, much more robust.

2. The Ablative of *Difference* includes the Abl. of *Distance* (378. 2), and the Abl. with *ante*, *post*, and *abhinc* in expressions of time (427).

## RULE XXV.—Ablative in Special Constructions.

### 419. The Ablative is used

I. With *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, *vescor*, and their compounds:

*Plūrimis rebus fruimur et ūtimur*, *We enjoy and use very many things.* Cic. *Magna est praeda pōtitus*, *He obtained great booty.* Nep. *Vescimur bestiis*, *We live upon animals.* Cic.

II. With *fido*, *confido*, *nitor*, and *innitor*:

*Nemo pōtest fortunae stābilitate confidēre*, *No one can trust (confide in) the stability of fortune.* Cic. *Salus veritate nititur*, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY and WANT:

*Non ēgeo mēdicīna*, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic. *Vācāre culpa*, *to be free from fault.* Cic. *Villa abundat lacte, cāseo, melle*; *The villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.* Cic. *Urbs nūda praesidio*, *a city destitute of defence.* Cic. *Virtute praeditus*, *endowed with virtue.* Cic.

IV. With *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, and *frētus*:

*Digni sunt amicitia*, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic. *Nātūra parvo contenta*, *nature content with little.* Cic. *Frētus amicis*, *relying upon his friends.* Liv.

V. With *opus* and *usus*:

*Auctoritate tua nobis opus est*, *We need (there is to us a need of) your authority.* Cic. *Usus est tua mihi opēra*, *I need your aid.* Plaut.

1. EXPLANATION.—This Ablative may in most instances be readily explained as the Ablative of *Cause* or *Means*: thus *utor*, I use, serve myself by means of; *fruor*, I enjoy, delight myself with; *vescor*, I feed upon, feed myself with; *fido*, *confido*, I confide in, am confident because of, etc.

2. ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Dignor* and transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* take the Accusative with the Ablative:

*Me dignor hōnōre*, *I deem myself worthy of honor.* Virg. *Armīs nāves ōnērat*, *He loads the ships with arms.* Sall. *Oculis se privat*, *He deprives himself of his eyes.* Cic. See 371. 2.

1) Transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* signify to fill, furnish with, deprive of, etc.: *afficio*, *cūmulo*, *compleo*, *impleo*, *imbuo*, *instruo*, *ōnēro*, *orno*, etc.—*orbo*, *privo*, *spolio*, etc. *Dignor* in the best prose admits only the Abl.

2) For the *Accusative* and *Genitive* with some of these verbs, see 410. 7. 2).

3. DATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Opus est* and *usus est* admit the Dative of the person with the Ablative of the thing. See examples.

1) The Ablative is sometimes a Perfect Participle, or, with *opus est*, a Noun and Participle :

Consulto *opus est*, *There is need of deliberation*. Sall. *Opus fuit Hirtio convento*, *There was need of meeting Hirtius*. Cic.

2) With *opus est*, rarely with *usus est*, the thing needed may be denoted—

(1) By the Nominative, rarely by the Genitive or Accusative :

*Dux nobis opus est*, *We need a leader, or a leader is necessary* (a necessity) *for us*. Cic. *Temporis opus est*, *There is need of time*. Liv. *Opus est cibum*, *There is need of food*. Plaut.

(2) By an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Supine :

*Opus est te valere*, *It is necessary that you be well*. Cic. *Opus est ut lavem*, *It is necessary for me to bathe* (that I bathe). Plaut. *Dictu est opus*, *It is necessary to be told*. Ter.

4. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS also occur. Thus

1) *Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtor*, and *rescor*, originally transitive, are occasionally so used in classic authors. Their participle in *dus* is passive in sense. *Utor* admits two ablatives of the same person or thing :

*Me utētur patre*, *He will find (use) me a father*. Ter.

2) *Fīdo*, *confīdo*, and *innitor* admit the Dative, rarely the Abl. with *in*.

*Virtūti confidēre*, *to confide in virtue*. Cic. See 385. 1.

3) *Dignus* and *indignus* admit the Gen., *frētus* the Dat., *nitor* and *innitor* the Acc. or Abl. with Prep., and some verbs of *Want* the Abl. with Prep.

*Dignus salūtis*, *worthy of safety*. Plaut. *Rei frētus*, *relying upon the thing*. Liv. *Vacāre ab opēre*, *to be free from work*. Caes.

4) *Genitive*.—For the *genitive* with *pōtor*, see 409. 3. For the *genitive* with verbs and adjectives of *Plenty* and *Want*, see 409. 1, 410. 7, and 399. 2. 2).

## II. ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH anything is or is done :

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH anything proceeds;—including *Source* and *Separation*.

### RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS omit the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive :

I. Hannibal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. In nostris castris, *in our camp.* Caes. In Appia via, *on the Appian way.* Cic. Ab urbe proficiscitur, *He departs from the city.* Caes. Ex Afrīca, *from Africa.* Liv.

II. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Bābŷlōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon.* Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth.* Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

422. NAMES OF PLACES NOT TOWNS sometimes omit the preposition:

1. The Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, sometimes omits the preposition:

1) Generally the Ablatives—*lōco, lōcis, parte, partibus, dextra, laeva, sinistra, terra, mārī,* and other Ablatives when qualified by *tōtus*:

Aliquid lōco pōnere, *to put anything in its place.* Cic. Terra mārīque, *on land and sea.* Liv. Tōta Graecia, *in all Greece.* Nep.

2) Sometimes other Ablatives, especially when qualified by adjectives:  
*Hoc libro, in this book.* Cic.

In poetry the preposition is often omitted even when the ablative has no modifier:  
*Silvis agrisque, in the forests and fields.* Ov.

2. The Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH sometimes omits the preposition, especially in poetry:

Cādere nūbibus, *to fall from the clouds.* Virg. Lābi ēquo, *to fall from a horse.* Hor.

423. NAMES OF TOWNS differ in their construction from other names of places,

I. Generally in simply omitting the preposition. But

II. In the Singular of the First and Second declensions they designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive. See examples under the Rule.

1. PREPOSITION RETAINED.—The preposition is sometimes retained, especially for emphasis or contrast:

Ab Ardea Rōmam vēnērunt, *They came from Ardea to Rome.* Liv. So also when the *vicinity* rather than the town itself is meant: Discessit a Brundisio, *He departed from Brundisium, i. e., from the port.* Caes. Apud Mantinēam, *near Mantinea.* Cic. Ad Trēbiam, *at or near the Trebia.* Liv.

2. The GENITIVE, it must be observed, never denotes the PLACE FROM WHICH.

The Genitive-Forms denoting the *place in which*, are genitives only in form. They probably belonged originally to a case called the *Locative*, afterward blended with the Ablative, except in the Sing. of Dec. I. and II., where it is united with the Gen. Accordingly these genitives are in force old Ablatives.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) *Ablative by Attraction* :

In monte Albano Lāviniōque, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium*. Liv.

 2) *Ablative without Attraction*, generally with a preposition :

In ipsa Alexandria, *in Alexandria itself*. Cic. Longa Alba, *at Alba Longa*. Virg.

This is the regular construction when the noun takes an adjective or adjective pronoun, but the Gen. *dōmi* (424. 2) admits a *possessive* or *allēnus* :

Dōmi suae, *at his home*. Cic.

3) With an Appellative—*urbs*, *oppidum*—the name of the town is in the Gen. or Abl., but the appellative itself is in the Abl., generally with a Prep. :

In oppīdo Antiochiāe, *in the city of Antioch*. Cic. In oppīdo Citio, *in the town Citium*. Nep. Albae, *in urbe opportūna, at Alba, a convenient city*. Cic.

## 424. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS are used

## 1. Many names of Islands :

Vixit Cypri, *He lived in Cyprus*. Nep. Dēlo prōfiscitur, *He proceeds from Delos*. Cic.

## 2. Dōmus, rus and the genitives hūmi, militiae and belli :

Rūri āgēre vitam, *to spend life in the country*. Liv. Dōmi militiaeque, *at home and in the field*. Cic. Dōmo prōfūgit, *He fled from home*. Cic.

## 3. The Genitive of other nouns also occurs :

 1) By *Attraction* after names of towns :

Rōmae Nūmīdiaeque, *at Rome and in Numidia*. Sall.

 2) *Without Attraction* in a few proper names and rarely also the genitives ārēnae, fōci, terrae, viciīnae :

Dōmum Chersōnēsi hābuit, *He had a house in the Chersonesus*. Nep. Truncum rēliquit ārēnae, *He left the body in the sand*. Virg.

## RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Source and Separation.

425. SOURCE and SEPARATION are denoted by the Ablative; generally with a preposition :

SOURCE.—Hoc audi vi de pārente meo, *I heard this from my father*. Cic. Oriundi ab Sābinis, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Stātua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze*. Cic. Jōve nātus, *son of Jupiter*. Cic.

SEPARATION.—Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you*. Cic. Hunc a tuis āris arcēbis, *You will keep this one from your altars*. Cic. Expulsus est patria, *He was banished from his country*. Cic.

1. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE designates that from which anything is derived, including *parentage*, *material*, etc.

2. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION designates that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived, and is used :

1) With Intransitive verbs signifying, *to abstain from, be distant from*, etc.

2) In connection with the Accusative after transitive verbs signifying, *to hold from, separate from, free from*, and the like: *arceo, abstineo, deterreo, ejicio, excludo, exsolvo, libero, pello, prohibeo, removeo, solvo*, etc. :

3) A few verbs of separation admit the Dative: *alieno, furor*, etc. See 385. 4.

3. Preposition Omitted.—This generally occurs

1) With Perfect Participles denoting *parentage or birth*—*gēnītus, nātus, ortus*, etc. :

Jōve nātus, *son of Jupiter*. Cic.

2) With Verbs of *Freeing*, except *libero*, which is used both with and without a preposition :

Somno solvi, *to be released from sleep*. Cic. But in the sense of *acquitting* these verbs admit the genitive (410. 7) : *Aliquem culpae liberāre, to free one from blame*, i. e., *acquit him*. Liv.

3) With *Movere* before the ablatives—*lōco, sēnātu* and *tribu* :

Signum mōvĕre lōgō, *to move the standard from the place*. Cic.

4) The preposition is sometimes omitted with other words, especially in poetry.

### III. ABLATIVE OF TIME.

#### RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsīmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year*. Cic. Vĕre convĕnĕre, *They assembled in the spring*. Liv. Nātālī die suo, *on his birthday*. Nep. Hiĕme et aēstāte, *in winter and summer*. Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word, so used as to involve the time of an action or event, may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugna*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōria*, in memory, i. e., in the time of one's recollection.

2. The ABLATIVE WITH IN is used to denote

1) The *circumstances* of the time, rather than time itself:

In tālī tempōre, *under such circumstances*. Liv.

2) The time *in* or *within* which anything is done:

In diēbus proxīmis dēcē, *in the next ten days*. Sall.

(1) This is used especially after numeral adverbs and in designating the periods of life: *bis in die*, twice in the day; *in puĕritia*, in boyhood.

(2) In a kindred sense occur also the Abl. with *de* and the Accus. with *inter* or *intra*: *De mēdia nocte*, in the middle of the night. Caes. *Inter annos quattuordēcim*, in (within) fourteen years. Caes.

(3) The Ablative with or without *in* sometimes denotes the time within which or after which: *paucis diēbus*, within (or after) a few days.



**427. ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.**—The time since an action or event is denoted by *Abhinc* or *Ante* with the Accusative or Ablative, and the time between two events, by *Ante* or *Post* with the Accusative or Ablative:

*Abhinc annos trēcentos fuit, He lived (was) three hundred years since.* Cic. *Abhinc annis quattuor, four years since.* Cic. *Hōmērus annis multis fuit ante Rōmūlum, Homer lived many years before Romulus.* Cic. *Paucis ante diēbus, a few days before.* Cic. *Post dies paucos vēnit, He came after a few days.* Liv.

**1. EXPLANATION.**—(1) The Accusative with *abhinc* is explained as Duration of Time (378), with *ante* and *post* as dependent upon those prepositions. (2) The Ablative in both cases is explained as the Ablative of Difference (418).

With the Abl. *ante* and *post* are used adverbially unless an Accus. is expressed after them. *Paucis his (illis) diēbus,* means *in these (those) few days.*

**2. NUMERALS WITH ANTE AND POST.**—These may be either cardinal or ordinal. Thus: five years after = *quinque annis post*, or *quinto anno post*; or *post quinque annos*, or *post quintum annum*; or with *post* between the numeral and the noun, *quinque post annis*, etc.

**3. QUAM WITH ANTE AND POST.**—*Quam* may follow *ante* and *post*, may be united with them, or may even be used for *postquam*:

*Quantum post annum quam rēdiērat, four years after he had returned.* Nep. *Nōno anno postquam, nine years after.* Nep. *Sexto anno quam ērat expulsus, six years after he had been banished.* Nep.

**4. THE ABLATIVE OF THE RELATIVE OR QUEM** may be used for *postquam*: *Quātrīduo, quo occisus est, four days after he was killed.* Cic.

## IV. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

### RULE XXIX.—Characteristic.

**428.** The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing:

*Summa virtūte ādōlescens, a youth of the highest virtue.* Caes. *Cātīlīna ingēnio mālō fuit, Catiline was a man of a bad spirit.* Sall.

**1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC** is used

1) With Substantives as in the first example.

2) In the Predicate with *sum*, and the other verbs which admit a Predicate Genitive (403) as in the second example.

**2. THE ABLATIVE WITH A GENITIVE** instead of the ablative with an adjective is sometimes used:

*Uri sant spēcīe tauri, The urus is of the appearance of a bull.* Caes.

**3. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.**—See 396. IV.

**4. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE DISTINGUISHED.**—The Genitive generally expresses permanent and essential qualities; the Ablative is not limited to any particular kind of qualities.

## V. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

## RULE XXX.—Specification.

429. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application :

Agēsīlāus nōmīne, non pōtestātē fuit rex, *Agēsilaus was king in name, not in power.* Nep. Claudus altēro pēde, *lame in one foot.* Nep. Mōribus sīmiles, *similar in character.* Cic.

1. FORCE OF ABLATIVE.—This shows in *what respect* or *particular* anything is true : thus, *king* (in what respect?) *in name* : *similar* (in what respect?) *in character.*

2. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. See §80.

## VI. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

430. A noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be grammatically independent of (*absolved from*) the rest of the sentence, and yet may express various adverbial modifications of the predicate. When so used they are said to be in the case Absolute.

## RULE XXXI.—Ablative Absolute.

431. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE :

Servio regnante vīguērunt, *They flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic. Rēgibus exactis, consūles creātī sunt, *After the banishment of the kings, consuls were appointed.* Liv. Sērēno coelo, *when the sky is clear.* Sen. Cānīnio consūle, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

1. USE.—The Ablative Absolute is much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, and expresses a great variety of relations,—*time, cause, reason, means, condition, concession, etc.*

2. HOW RENDERED.—This ablative is generally best rendered (1) by a *Clause* with—*when, while, for, since, if, though, etc.*, (2) by a *Noun* with a *Preposition*,—*in, during, after, by, from, through, etc.*, or (3) by an *Active Participle* with its *Object* :

Servio regnante, *while Servius reigned, or in the reign of Servius.* Cic. Rēlīgiōne neglecta, *because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perdītis rēbus omnībus, tāmen, etc., *Though all things are lost, still, etc.* Cic. Equītātu praeemisso, *subsequēbātur, Having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes.

3. A Connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative :

Nīsi mūnītis castris, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. An INFINITIVE or CLAUSE may be in the Abl. Absolute with a neuter participle or adjective:

Audito Dārium mōviſſe, pergit, *Having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had, etc., having been heard), *he advanced*. Curt. Multi, incerto quid vitārent, intērierunt, *Many, uncertain what they should avoid* (what they, etc., being uncertain), *perished*. Liv.

5. A PARTICIPLE or ADJECTIVE may stand alone in the Abl. Absolute:

Multum certāto, pervicit, *He conquered after a hard struggle* (it having been much contested). Tac.

6. QUIQUE IN THE NOMINATIVE may accompany the Abl. Absolute:

Multis sibi quisque pētentibus, *while many sought, each for himself*. Sall.

## VII. ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 432 and 434.

### SECTION VIII.

#### CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

#### RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad āmicū scripsi, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate house*. Liv. In Itālia, *in Italy*. Nep. Pro castris, *before the camp*.

433. The Accusative is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *to the city*. Cic. Adversus deos, *toward the gods*. Cic. Ante lūcem, *before light*. Cic. Apud concilium, *in the presence of the council*. Cic. Circa fōrum, *around the forum*. Cic. Citra flūmen, *on this side of the river*. Cic. Contra nātūrā, *contrary to nature*. Cic. Intra mūros, *within the walls*. Cic. Post castra, *behind the camp*. Caes. Sēcundum nātūrā, *according to nature*. Cic. Trans Alpes, *across the Alps*. Cic.

1. Like *Prōpe*, the derivatives *prōpior* and *prōximus* take the Accus. dependent upon *ad* understood. *Exadversus* (um) also occurs with the Accus.:

Prōpior montem, *nearer to the mountain*. Sall. Proximus mare, *nearest to the sea*. Caes. See also 437. and for compounds, 371. 4. and 374. 6.

2. *Versus* (um) and *usque* as adverbs often accompany prepositions, especially *ad* and *in*: Ad Alpes versus, *towards the Alps*.

434. The Ablative is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sine,	tēnus:

Ab urbe, *from the city*. Caes. Cūram conventu, *in the presence of the assembly*. Nep. Cum Antiōcho, *with Antiochus*. Cic. De fōro, *from the forum*. Cic. Ex Asia, *from Asia*. Nep. Sine corde, *without a heart*. Cic.

1. Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *sūper*, admit the Ablative dependent upon the preposition:

Abire māgistrātu, *to retire from office*. Tac. Pugna excēdunt, *They retire from the battle*. Caes.

Sometimes the Prep. is repeated, or one of kindred meaning is used:

De vīta dēcēdēre, *to depart from life*. Cic. Dēcēdēre ex Asia, *to depart from Asia*. Cic.

2. The Ablative with or without *De* is sometimes used with *Fācio*, *Fīo*, or *Sum*, as follows:

Quid hoc hōmine fācias, *What are you to do with this man?* Cic. Quid te (or de te) fūtūrum est, *What will become of you?* Cic.

The Dative occurs in nearly the same sense:

Quid huic hōmini fācias, *What are you to do with (or to) this man?* Cic.

3. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, *e*, *ex*.—*A* and *e* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* either before vowels or consonants. *Abs* is antiquated, except before *te*.

4. *Tēnus* follows its case:

Collo tēnus, *up to the neck*. Ov.

5. *Cum* with the Abl. of a Pers. Pronoun is appended to it: *mēcum*, *tēcum*, etc., generally also with a relative: *quōcum*, *quibuscum*.

#### 435. THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE IS USED WITH

In, sub, subter, sūper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia*. Cic. Hannībal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. Sub montem, *toward the mountain*. Caes. Sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain*. Liv. Subter tōgam, *under the toga*. Liv. Subter testūdīne, *under a tortoise or shed*. Virg. Sūper Nūmīdiam, *beyond Numidia*. Sall. Hac sūper re scribam, *I will write on this subject*. Cic.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither?* the Ablative in answer to *where?* In Asiam (*whither?*), *into Asia*; In Itālia (*where?*), *in Italy*.

2. *Subter* and *Sūper* generally take the Accusative, but *sūper* with the force of—*concerning*, *of*, *on* (of a subject of discourse), takes the Ablative; see examples.

436. PREPOSITIONS AS ADVERBS.—The prepositions were originally adverbs, and many of them are sometimes so used in classical authors.

437. ADVERBS AS PREPOSITIONS.—Conversely several adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions with an oblique case, though in most instances a preposition could readily be supplied. Such are

1. With Accusative: *prōpius*, *proxīme*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *usque*, *dēsūper*:

Prōpius perīcūlūm (ad), *nearer to danger*. Liv. Prīdie Idus (ante), *the day before the Ides*. Cic. Usque pēdes (ad), *even to the feet*. Curt.

2. With Ablative: *pālam*, *prōcul*, *simul* (poetic):

Pālam pōpūlo, *in the presence of the people*. Liv. Prōcul castris, *at a distance from the camp*. Tac. Simul his, *with these*. Hor.

3. With Accusative or Ablative: *clam*, *insūper*:

Clam patrem, *without the father's knowledge*. Plaut. Clam vōbis, *without your knowledge*. Caes.

## CHAPTER III.

### SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

#### RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE :

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind*. Cic. Vērae amīcītiæ, *true friendships*. Cic. Māgister optimus, *the best teacher*. Cic.

1. This Rule includes Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles.

2. ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.—An adjective is called *attributive*, unless it unites with the verb (generally *sum*), to form the *predicate*; it is then called a *predicate-adjective*: as *caeca est*, above.

3. AGREEMENT WITH CLAUSE, ETC.—An adjective may agree with any word or words used substantively, as a *pronoun*, *clause*, *infinitive*, etc.:

Quis clārior, *Who is more illustrious?* Cic. Certum est liberos amāri, *It is certain that children are loved*. Quint. See 35. III.

An adjective agreeing with a clause is sometimes plural, as in Greek.

4. NEUTER WITH MASCULINE.—Sometimes the Predicate Adjective is neuter, when the subject is *Masc.* or *Fem.*:

Mors est extrēmum, *Death is the last (thing)*. Cic.

5. NEUTER WITH GENITIVE.—A neuter adjective with a genitive is often used instead of an adjective with its noun:

Multum op̄eræ (for *multa op̄era*), *much service* (much of service). Cic. Id temporis, *that time*. Cic. Vāna rerum (for *vānæ res*), *vain things*. Hor.

6. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the adjective or participle conforms to the *real meaning* of its noun, without regard to grammatical gender or number:

Pars certāre pārāti, *a part (some), prepared to contend*. Virg. Nōbis (for *me*, 446, 2), *præsentē, we (I) being present*. Plaut. Dēmōsthēnes cum cētēris erant expūsi, *Demosthenes with the others had been banished*. Nep.

7. AGREEMENT WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.—See 462.

8. AGREEMENT WITH ONE NOUN FOR ANOTHER.—When a noun governs another in the Genitive, an adjective belonging in sense to one of the two nouns, sometimes agrees with the other:

Majōra (for *majōrum*) īnītia rerum, *the beginnings of greater things*. Liv. Cursus justī (*justus*) amnis, *the regular course of the river*. Liv.

**439. WITH TWO OR MORE NOUNS.**—An adjective or participle, belonging to two or more nouns, may agree with them all conjointly, or may agree with one and be understood with the others:

Castor et Pollux vīsi sunt, *Castor and Pollux were seen.* Cic. Tēmēritas ignōrātiōque vitiōsa est, *Rashness and ignorance are bad.* Cic.

1. The ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE generally agrees with the nearest noun: Agri omnes et mǎria, *all lands and seas.* Cic.

2. DIFFERENT GENDERS.—When the nouns are of different genders, they may denote

1) *Persons*: then the adjective or participle agreeing with them conjointly is masculine: Pāter et mǎter mortui sunt, *Father and mother are dead.* Ter.

2) *Persons and Things*: then the adjective generally takes the gender of the person: Rex rēgiǎque classis prŏfecti sunt, *The king and the royal fleet set out.* Liv.

3) *Things*: then the adjective is generally neuter: Hōnōres, victōriæ fortūita sunt, *Honors and victories are accidental (things).* Cic.

3. NEUTER WITH MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—With masculine or feminine nouns denoting inanimate objects, the adjective is often neuter:

Lābor et dŏlor sunt finītima, *Labor and pain are kindred (things).* Cic. Nox atque præda hostes rēmōrāta sunt, *Night and plunder detained the enemy.* Sall.

4. TWO OR MORE ADJECTIVES.—Two or more adjectives in the singular may belong to a plural noun:

Prima et vicēsima lēgiōnes, *the first and the twentieth legions.* Tac.

So in proper names: Cnæus et Publius Scipiōnes, *Cnæus and Publius Scipio.* Cic.

**440. USE OF ADJECTIVES.**—The Adjective in Latin corresponds in its general use to the Adjective in English.

1. An adjective may qualify the complex idea formed by a noun and an adjective: *aes aliēnum grande*, a great debt. Here *grande* qualifies not *aes* alone, but *aes aliēnum*. In such cases no connective is used between the adjectives.

But the Latin uses the conjunction after *multi* even where the English omits it: *multæ et magnæ tempestātes*, many great emergencies.

**441. Adjectives are often used substantively: docti, the learned; multi, many persons; multa, many things.**

1. In the Plural, Masculine Adjectives often designate persons, and Neuter Adjectives things: *fortes*, the brave; *divites*, the rich; *paupĕres*, the poor; *multi*, many; *pauci*, few; *omnes*, all; *mei*, my friends; *utilia*, useful things; *mea, nostra*, my, our things; *omnia*, all things; *hec, illa*, these, those things.

2. In the Singular, Adjectives are occasionally used substantively, especially in the Neuter with an abstract sense: *doctus*, a learned man;

*verum*, a true thing, the truth; *nihil sinceri*, nothing of sincerity, nothing sincere.

3. NOUN UNDERSTOOD.—Many adjectives become substantives, by the omission of their nouns: *patria* (terra), native country; *dextra* (manus), right hand; *fēra* (bestia), wild beast; *hībēna* (castra), winter-quarters.

4. WITH RES.—Adjectives with *res* are used with great freedom: *res adversae*, adversity; *res secundae*, prosperity; *res publica*, republic.

5. FROM PROPER NAMES.—Adjectives from proper names are often equivalent to the English objective with *of*: *pugna Mārāthōnia*, the battle of Marathon; *Diāna Ephēsia*, Diana of Ephesus; *Hercūles Xēnōphontius*, the Hercules of Xenophon.

6. DESIGNATING A PART.—A few adjectives sometimes designate a particular part of an object: *primus*, *mēdius*, *ultimus*, *extrēmus*, *postrēmus*, *intimus*, *summus*, *infimus*, *imius*, *suprēmus*, *reliquus*, *cētera*, etc.: *prīma nox*, the first part of the night; *summus mons*, the highest part of the mountain.

In Livy and late writers, the neuter of these adjectives with a genitive sometimes occurs:

Ad ultimum inōpiæ, for ad ultimam inōpiam, to extreme destitution. Liv.

442. EQUIVALENT TO A CLAUSE.—Adjectives, like nouns in apposition, are sometimes equivalent to clauses:

*Nemo saltat sobrius*, No one dances when he is sober, or when sober. Cic.  
*Hortensium vivum amavi*, I loved Hortensius, while he was alive. Cic.  
*Homo nunquam sobrius*, a man, who is never sober. Cic.

1. *Prior*, *primus*, *ultimus*, *postrēmus*, are often best rendered by a relative clause:

*Primus morem solvit*, He was the first who broke the custom. Liv.

With the adverb *primum*, the thought would be, he first broke the custom, and then did something else.

443. INSTEAD OF ADVERBS.—Adjectives are sometimes used where our idiom employs adverbs:

*Socrātes venenum laetus hausit*, Socrates cheerfully drank the poison.  
 Sen. *Sēnātus frēquens convēnit*, The senate assembled in great numbers.  
 Cic. *Roscius erat Rōmæ frēquens*, Roscius was frequently at Rome. Cic.

Adjectives thus used are: (1) Those expressive of joy, knowledge, and their opposites: *laetus*, *libens*, *invitus*, *tristis*, *sciens*, *insciens*, *prūdēns*, *imprūdēns*, etc. (2) *Nullus*, *solus*, *tōtus*, *unus*; *prior*, *primus*, *prōpior*, *proximus*, etc. (3) In the Poets several adjectives of time and place:

*Domesticus otior*, I idle about home. Hor. *Vespertinus pēte tectum*, At evening seek your abode. Hor. See Examples above; also 335. 4.

444. COMPARISON.—A comparison between two objects requires the comparative degree; between more than two, the superlative:

*Prior hōrum*, the former of these (two). Nep. *Gallōrum fortissīmi*, the bravest of the Gauls. Caes.

1. WITH THE FORCE OF TOO OR VERY.—The comparative sometimes has the force of *too*, *unusually*, *somewhat*, and the superlative, the force of *very*: *doctior*, too learned, or somewhat learned; *doctissimus*, very learned.

2. COMPARATIVE AFTER QUAM.—When an object is said to possess one quality in a higher degree than another, both adjectives are put in the comparative; but when it is said to possess one quality rather than another, both are in the positive, the former with *māgis* or *pōtius*:

*Clārior quam grātior*, more illustrious than pleasing. Liv. *Dīsertus māgis quam sāpiens*, fluent rather than wise. Cic.

In the first case the positive is sometimes used in one or both members; and in the second case *māgis* is sometimes omitted, and occasionally the adjective before *quam* is in the comparative.

3. STRENGTHENING WORDS.—Comparatives and Superlatives are often strengthened by a Prep. with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *præter*, *supra* (417. 2. 3), *ūnus*, *ūnus omnium*, alone, alone of all, far, by far; Comparatives also by *etiam*, even, still; *multo*, much, and Superlatives by *longe*, *multo*, by far, much, *quam*, *quantus*, as possible:

*Multo maxima pars*, by far the largest part. Cic. *Res ūna omnium difficillima*, a thing by far the most difficult of all. Cic. *Quam maximæ cōpiæ*, forces as large as possible. Sall. *Quanta maxima vastitas*, the greatest possible devastation. Liv.

4. COMPARISON IN ADVERBS has the same force as in adjectives:

*Quam saepissime*, as often as possible. Cic. *Fortius quam feliciter*, with more bravery than success. Liv.



## CHAPTER IV.

### SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

#### RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON:

*Animāl quod sanguinem hābet*, an animal which has blood. Cic. *Ego, qui te confirmo*, I who encourage you. Cic. *Vis est in virtūtibus*; eas excita, There is strength in virtues, arouse them. Cic.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This rule applies to all Pronouns when used as nouns. Pronouns used as adjectives conform to the rule for adjectives. See 438.

The *Antecedent* is the word or words to which the pronoun refers, and whose place it supplies. Thus, in the examples under the rule, *animāl* is the antecedent of *quod*, and *virtūtibus* the antecedent of *eas*.



2. AGREEMENT WITH PERSONAL PRONOUN.—When the antecedent is a Demonstrative in agreement with a Personal pronoun, the relative agrees with the latter :

Tu es is qui me ornasti, *You are the one who commended me.* Cic.

3. WITH TWO ANTECEDENTS.—When a relative or other pronoun, refers to two or more antecedents, it generally agrees with them conjointly, but it sometimes agrees with the nearest :

Puëri mülïëresque, qui, *boys and women, who.* Caes. Peccātum ac culpa, quae, *error and fault, which.* Cic.

1) With antecedents of different genders, the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives (439. 2 and 3) ; hence *puëri mulieresque qui*, above.

2) With antecedents of different persons, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third, conforming to the rule for verbs. See 463. 1.

4. WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.—A pronoun sometimes agrees with a Predicate-Noun or an Appositive instead of the antecedent :

Animal quem (for *quod*) vocāmus hōmīnem, *the animal which we call man.* Cic. Thēbae, quod (*quae*) cāput est, *Thebes which is the capital.* Liv. Ea (*id*) erat confessio, *That (i. e., the action referred to) was a confession.* Liv. Flūmen Rhēnus, qui, *the river Rhine, which.* Caes.

In the last example, *qui* agrees with the appositive Rhenus ; in the other examples, the pronouns *quem*, *quod*, and *ea*, are attracted to agree with their predicate nouns *hōmīnem*, *caput*, and *confessio*.

5. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the pronoun is construed according to the *real meaning* of the antecedent, without regard to grammatical form ; and sometimes it refers to the *class of objects* to which the antecedent belongs :

Equitātūs, qui vīdērunt, *the cavalry who saw.* Caes. Eārum rērum utrumque, *each of these things.* Cic. Dēmōcriteum ōmittāmus ; āpud istos ; *let us omit Democritus ; with such (i. e., as he).* Cic.

6. ANTECEDENT OMITTED.—The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is indefinite, is the pronoun *is*, or is implied in a possessive :

Sunt qui censeant, *There are some who think.* Cic. Terra reddit quod accēpit, *The earth returns what it has received.* Cic. Vestra, qui cum integritāte vixistis, hoc intērest, *This interests you who have lived with integrity.* Cic. Here the antecedent is *vos*, implied in *vestra*.

7. CLAUSE AS ANTECEDENT.—When the antecedent is a sentence or clause, the pronoun, unless attracted (445. 4), is in the Neuter Singular, but the relative generally adds *id* as an appositive to such antecedent :

Nos, id quod dēbet, patria dēlectat, *Our country delights us, as it ought (lit. that which it owes).* Cic.

8. RELATIVE ATTRACTED.—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent, and sometimes agrees with the antecedent repeated :

Jūdīce quo (for *quem*) nosti, *the judge whom you know.* Hor. Dies in-

stat, quo die, *The day is at hand, on which day.* Caes. Cūmae, quam urbem tēnēbant, *Cumae, which city they held.* Liv.

9. ANTECEDENT ATTRACTED.—In Poetry, rarely in prose, the antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; and sometimes incorporated in the relative clause in the same case as the relative:

Urbem quam stātuo, vestra est, *The city which I am building is yours.* Virg. Mālārū, quas āmor cūras hābet, oblivisci (for *mālārū curārū quas*), *to forget the wretched cares which love has.* Hor.

## I. PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

446. The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast:

Significāmus, quid sentiāmus, *We show what we think.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tyrannos intrōdūcītis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. With *quidem* the pronoun is usually expressed, and then the third person is supplied by *hic, is, ille*, which are then often redundant: *tu quidem*, you indeed, *ille quidem*, he indeed. *Quidem* adds emphasis; *equidem* = *ego quidem*.

2. The writer sometimes speaks of himself in the plural, using *nos* for *ego*, *nos* for *meus*, and the plural verb for the singular.

3. For *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, see 396. 1.

447. Possessive Pronouns, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed, if they can be supplied from the context:

Mānus lāva, *Wash your hands.* Cic. Mihi mea vīta cāra est, *My life is dear to me.* Plaut.

For Possessive with Genitive in the sense of own, see 397. 3.

### *Reflexive use of Pronouns.*

448. *Sui* and *Suus* have a reflexive sense (*himself*, etc.); sometimes also the other Personal and Possessive pronouns, together with *Is*, *Ille*, and *Ipse*:

Se diligit, *He loves himself.* Cic. Sua vi mōvētur, *He is moved by his own power.* Cic. Me consōlor, *I console myself.* Cic. Persuādent Tulingis ūti cum iis prōficiantur, *They persuade the Tulingi to depart with them.* Caes.

1. *Inter nos, inter vos, inter se*, have a reciprocal force, *each other, one another, together*; but instead of *inter se*, the noun may be repeated in an oblique case:

Collōquimur inter nos, *We converse together.* Cic. Amant inter se, *They love one another.* Cic. Hōmīnes hōmīnibus ūtiles sunt, *Men are useful to men, i. e., to each other.* Cic.

449. *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand :

*Se diligit, He loves himself.* Cic. *Iustitia propter sēse cōlenda est, Justice should be cultivated for its own sake.* Cic. *Annūlum suum dedit, He gave his ring.* Nep.

1. In SUBORDINATE CLAUSES expressing the sentiment of the principal subject, *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to that subject :

*Sentit ānīmus se vi sua mōvēri, The mind perceives that it is moved by its own power.* Cic. *A me pētivit ut sēcum essem, He asked (from) me to be with him (that I would be).* Cic. *Pervestigat quid sui cives cōgitent, He tries to ascertain what his fellow citizens think.* Cic.

1) As *Sui* and *Suus* thus refer to subjects, the demonstratives, *Is, Ille*, etc., generally refer either to other words, or to subjects, which do not admit *sui* and *suus*.

*Deum agnoscis ex ejus opēribus, You recognize a god by (from) his works.* Cic. *Obligat civitatem nihil eos mutātūros, He binds the state not to change anything (that they will).* Just.

2) In some subordinate clauses the writer may at pleasure use either the Reflexive or the Demonstrative, according as he wishes to present the thought as that of the principal subject, or as his own. Thus in the last example under 448. *cum iis* is the proper language for the writer without reference to the sentiment of the principal subject: *sēcum*, which would be equally proper, would present the thought as the sentiment of that subject.

3) Sometimes the Reflexive occurs where we should expect the Demonstrative, and the Demonstrative where we should expect the Reflexive.

2. *Suus* = HIS OWN, ETC.—*Suus* in the sense of *his own, fitting*, etc., may refer to subject or object :

*Iustitia suum cuique tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own).* Cic.

3. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—When the subject of the verb is not the real agent of the action, *sui* and *suus* refer to the latter :

*A Caesāre invitor sibi ut sim lōgātus, I am invited by Caesar (real agent) to be his lieutenant.* Cic.

4. *Suus* SUBSTANTIVELY.—The Plural of *Suus* used substantively—*his, their, friends, possessions*, etc.—is used with great freedom, often referring to oblique cases :

*Fuit hoc luctuōsum suis, This was afflicting to his friends.* Cic. Here *suis* refers to an oblique case in the preceding sentence.

5. *Sui* and *Suus* sometimes refer to an omitted subject :

*Dēforme est de se praedicāre, To boast of one's self is disgusting.* Cic.

6. REFLEXIVES REFERRING TO DIFFERENT SUBJECTS.—Sometimes a clause has one reflexive referring to the principal subject, and another referring to the subordinate subject :

*Respondit nēmīnem sēcum sīne sua pernīcie contendisse, He replied that no one had contended with him without (his) destruction.* Caes.

Here *se* refers to the subject of *respondit* and *sua* to *nēmīnem*, the subject of the subordinate clause.

## II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

450. *Hic, Iste, Ille*, are often called respectively demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons, as *hic* designates that which is near the speaker; *iste*, that which is near the person addressed, and *ille*, that which is remote from both, and near only to some third person.

*Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city.* Cic. *Mūta istam mentem, Change that purpose of yours.* Cic. *Si illos negligis, if you disregard those.* Cic.

1. *HIC AND ILLE IN CONTRASTS.*—*Hic* designates an object conceived as near, and *ille* as remote, whether in space or time:

*Non antiquo illo mōre, sed hoc nostro fuit ērūdītus, He was educated, not in that ancient, but in this our modern way.* Cic.

2. *HIC AND ILLE, FORMER AND LATTER.*—In reference to two objects previously mentioned, (1) *Hic* generally follows *Ille* and refers to the latter object, while *Ille* refers to the former; but (2) *Hic* refers to the more important object, and *Ille* to the less important:

*Ignāvia, lābor: illa, hic; Indolence, labor: the former, the latter.* Cels. *Pax, victōria: haec (pax) in tua, illa in deōrum pōtestāte est; Peace, victory: the former is in your power, the latter in the power of the gods.* Liv.

3. *Hic* and *Ille* are often used of what immediately follows in discourse, and *Iste* sometimes indicates contempt: *haec verba*, these words, i. e., the following words; *iste*, that man, such a one.

4. *Ille* is often used of what is well known, famous:

*Mēdēa illa, that well-known Medea.* Cic.

1) *Hic* with or without *hōmo*, is sometimes equivalent to *ēgo*. Alone it is sometimes equivalent to *meus* or *noster*.

2) *Hic, ille*, and *is* are sometimes redundant, especially with *quīdem*: *Scīpio non multum ille quīdem dicēbat, Scīpio did not indeed say much.* Cic. See 446. 1.

3) A Demonstrative or Relative is sometimes equivalent to a Genitive or a Prep. with its case: *hic dōlor* = *dōlor hujus rei*, grief on account of this; *haec cūra* = *cūra de hoc*, care concerning this.

451. *Is* and *Idem* refer to preceding nouns, or are the antecedents of relatives:

*Dionysius aufūgit: is est in prōvincia, Dionysius has fled: he is in the province.* Cic. *Is qui sātis hābet, he who has enough.* Cic. *Eādē audire mālunt, They prefer to hear the same things.* Liv.

1. *Is* is often omitted, especially before a relative or a genitive:

*Flēbat pāter de filiī morte, de patris filiū, The father wept over the death of the son, the son over (that) of the father.* Cic. See also 445. 6.

2. *Is* or *Ipse* with a Conjunction is often used for emphasis, like the English *and that too*, and *that indeed*:

Unam rem explicābo eamque maximam, *One thing I will explain and that too a most important one.* Cic.

*Id* thus used often refers to a clause or to the general thought, and *et ipse* is often best rendered, *too* or *also*: Audire Cratippum, idque Athēnis, *to hear Cratippus, and that too at Athens.* Cic.

3. *Idem* is sometimes best rendered, *also, yet*:

Nihil ūtile, quod non idem honestum, *Nothing useful, which is not also honorable.* Cic. Quum dicat—nēgat idem, *Though he asserts—he yet denies* (the same denies). Cic.

4. *Is—qui* = *he—who, such—as, such—that*:

Ilī sūmus, qui esse dēbēmus, *We are such as we ought to be.* Cic. Ea est gens quae nesciat, *The race is such that it knows not.* Liv.

5. *Idem—qui*; *idem—ac, atque, quam, quāsi, ut, cum* with Abl. = *the same—who, the same—as*:

Idem mōres, qui, *The same manners which or as.* Cic. Est idem ac fuit, *He is the same as he was.* Ter.

6. *Is Reflexive.* See 448.

## 452. *Ipse* adds emphasis, generally rendered *self*:

*Ipse* Caesar, *Caesar himself.* Cic. Fac ut te ipsum custōdias, *See that you guard yourself.* Cic.

1. *IPSE* WITH SUBJECT.—*Ipse* belongs to the emphatic word, whether subject or object, but with a preference for the subject:

Me ipse consōlor, *I myself* (not another) *console myself.* Cic.

2. *IPSE, VERY.*—*Ipse* is often best rendered by *very*:

Ipse ille Gorgias, *that very Gorgias.* Cic.

3. With Numerals *Ipse* has the force of—*just so many, just*:

Triginta dies ipsi, *just thirty days.* Cic.

4. *Ipse* in the Genitive with possessives has the force of *own, one's own*:

Nostra ipsōrum amicitia, *Our own friendship.* Cic. See 397. 3.

5. *Ipse Reflexive*, sometimes supplies the place of an emphatic *sui* or *suus*:

Lēgātos misit qui ipsi vitam pētērent, *He sent messengers to ask life for himself.* Sall.

## III. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

453. The relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative or personal pronoun; sometimes even at the beginning of a sentence:

Res loquitur ipsa; quae semper vālet; *The fact itself speaks, and this (which) ever has weight.* Cic. Qui proelium committunt, *They engage battle.* Caes. Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

1. RELATIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—Relatives and Demonstratives are often correlatives to each other: *hic—qui, iste—qui*, etc. These combinations generally retain the ordinary force of the separate words, but see *is—qui, idem—qui*, 451. 4 and 5.

1) *Quicumque* and *Quisquis*, whoever, whatever, sometimes have the force of *every* by the ellipsis of *fieri pōtest*: *quicumque ratiōne*, in every way, *i. e.*, in whatever way it is possible.

2. A DEMONSTRATIVE may supply the place of a Relative when otherwise two relative clauses would be brought together:

Quae nec hābērēmus nec his ūtērēmur, *Which we should neither have nor use.* Cic.

1) A Relative Clause with *is* is often equivalent to a substantive: *ii qui audiunt* = *auditores, hearers.*

3. Two RELATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause:

Artes quas qui tēnent, *arts, whose possessors* (which, who possess). Cic.

4. A RELATIVE CLAUSE is sometimes equivalent to *Pro* with the Abl.:

Quae tua prūdētia est = qua es prūdētia = pro tua prūdētia = *such is your prudence, or you are of such prudence, or in accordance with your prudence, etc.*: Spēro, quae tua prūdētia est, te vālēre, *I hope you are well, such is your prudence* (which is, etc.).

5. RELATIVE WITH ADJECTIVE.—Adjectives belonging in sense to the antecedent, sometimes stand in the relative clause in agreement with the relative, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals:

Vāsa, quae pulcherrīma vidērat, *the most beautiful vessels which he had seen* (vessels, which the most beautiful he had seen). Cic. De servis suis, quem hābuit fidēlissimū, mīsit, *He sent the most faithful of the slaves which he had.* Nep.

6. *Quod Expletive*, or apparently so, often stands at the beginning of a sentence, especially before *nī, nīsi, etsi*, and sometimes before *quia, quōniam, ūtinam*, etc. In translating it is sometimes omitted, and sometimes rendered by *now, but, and*:

Quod si ceciderint, *if or but if they should fall.* Cic.

7. *Qui dicitur, qui vocatur*, or the corresponding active *quem dicunt, quem vocant*, are often used in the sense of *so called, the so called, what they or you call*, etc.:

Vestra quae dicitur vita, mors est, *Your so called life* (lit. *your, which is called life*) *is death.* Cic. Lex ista quam vocas non est lex, *That law as you call it, is not a law.* Cic.

#### IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

454. The Interrogative *quis*, is used substantively; *qui*, adjectively:

Quis ego sum, *Who am I?* Cic. Quid faciet, *What will he do?* Cic. Qui vir fuit, *What kind of a man was he?* Cic.

1. **QUIS AND QUI.**—Occasionally *quis* is used adjectively and *qui* substantively:

Quis rex unquam fuit, *What king was there ever?* Cic. Qui sis, *consider, Consider who you are.* Cic.

2. **QUID, why, how is it that, etc.,** is often used adverbially (§30. 2), or stands apparently unconnected, by the ellipsis of *propter* or a verb: *Quid enim*, *why then? what indeed (est or dicam)?* *Quid quod*, *what of the fact that?*

3. Two INTERROGATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause:

Quis quem fraudavit, *who defrauded, and whom did he defraud* (lit. *who defrauded whom*)? Cic.

4. **ATTRACTION.**—The interrogative often agrees with the predicate noun:

Quam (for *quid*) dicam voluptatem vidētis, *You see what I call pleasure.* Cic.

## V. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

455. *Aliquis, quis, qui, and quispiam*, are all indefinite, *some one, any one* :

Est *āliquis*, *there is some one*. Liv. Dixit *quis*, *some one said*. Cic. Si *quis rex*, *if any king*. Cic. *Alia res quæpiam*, *any other thing*. Cic.

1. *Aliquis* is less indefinite than *quis, qui, and quispiam*.

2. *Quis* and *qui* are used chiefly after *si, nisi, ne, and num.* *Quis* is generally used substantively and *qui* adjectively. *Aliquis* after *si*, etc., is emphatic.

456. *Quidam*, a certain one, is less indefinite than *āliquis* :

*Quidam rhētor antiquus*, *a certain ancient rhetorician*. Cic. Accurrit *quidam*, *A certain one runs up*. Hor.

1. *Quidam* with an Adjective is sometimes used to qualify or soften the statement :

*Justitia mīrica quædam videtur*, *Justice seems somewhat wonderful*. Cic.

2. *Quidam* with *quāsi* and sometimes without it, has the force of *a certain, a kind of, as it were* :

*Quāsi ūlumna quædam*, *a certain foster child as it were*. Cic.

457. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences, and in interrogative sentences implying a negative :

Neque me *quisquam* agnōvit, *Nor did any one recognize me*. Cic. Si *quisquam*, *if any one*. Cic. Num censēs *ullum ānimal esse*, *do you think there is any animal?* Cic.

1. *Nemo* is the negative of *quisquam*, and like *quisquam* is generally used substantively, rarely adjectively :

*Nēmīnem laesit*, *He harmed no one*. Cic. *Nemo poëta*, *no poet*. Cic.

2. *Nullus* is the negative of *ullus*, and is generally used adjectively, but it sometimes supplies the Gen. and Abl. of *nemo*, which generally wants those cases :

*Nullum ānimal*, *no animal*. Cic. *Nullius aures*, *the ears of no one*. Cic.

3. *Nullus* for *non*.—*Nullus* and *nihil* are sometimes used for an emphatic *non* : *Nullus vēnit*, *He did not come*. Cic. *Mortui nulli sunt*, *The dead are not*. Cic.

458. *Quivis, Quilibet*, any one whatever, and *Quisque*, every one, each one, are general indefinites (191) :

*Quaelibet res*, *any thing*. Cic. *Tuōrum quisque nēcessāriōrum*, *each one of your friends*. Cic.

1. *Quisque* with Superlatives and Ordinals is generally best rendered by *all* or *by ever, always*, with *primus* by *very, possible* :

*Epicūrcos doctissimus quisque contemnit*, *All the most learned despise the Epicureans, or the most learned ever despise*, etc. Cic. *Primo quōque die*, *the earliest day possible, the very first*. Cic.

2. *Ut Quisque—ita* with the superlative in both clauses is often best rendered, *the more—the more* :

*Ut quisque sibi plūrimū confidit, ita maxime excellit*, *The more one confides in himself, the more he excels*. Cic.

459. *Alius* and *Alter* are often repeated : *ālius—ālius*, one—another ; *alii—alii*, some—others ; *alter—alter*, the one—the other ; *altēri—altēri*, the one party—the other :

*Alii glōriæ serviunt, ālii pēcūniæ, Some are slaves to glory, others to money. Cic. Altēri dimicant, altēri timent, One party contends, the other fears. Cic.*

1. *Alius* repeated in different cases often involves an ellipsis :

*Alius ālia via civitātem auxerunt, They advanced the state, one in one way, another in another. Liv. So also with ālius or ālīter : Aliter ālii vivunt, Some live in one way, others in another. Cic.*

2. *Alter Alius, Aliter*, and the like, *atque, ac*, and *et* often mean *than* :

*Non ālius essem atque sum, I would not be other than I am. Cic.*

3. *Alter* means *the one, the other* (of two), *the second* ; *ālius*, *another, other*. When *alter—alter* refers to objects previously mentioned, the first *alter* usually refers to the latter object, but may refer to either :

*Inimicus, compētitor, cum altēro—cum altēro, an enemy, a rival, with the latter—with the former. Cic.*

4. *Uterque* means *both, each of two*, and in the Plu. *both, each of two parties*.



## CHAPTER V.

### SYNTAX OF VERBS.



#### SECTION I.

##### AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

#### RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON :

*Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world. Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tŷrannos intrōdūcētis, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Cic.*

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES agree with the subject according to 438. See also 301. 2 and 3 :

*Thēbāni accūsāti sunt, The Thebans were accused. Cic. .*

1) In the Infinitive, the Participle in *um* sometimes occurs without any reference to the gender or number of the subject :

*Diffidentia futūrum quæ impērāvisset, from doubt that those things which he had commanded would take place. Sall.*



2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 367. 2.

1) An Indefinite Subject is often denoted by the Second Pers. Sing., or by the First or Third Plur.: *dicas*, you (any one) may say; *dicimus*, we (people) say; *dicunt*, they say.

3. VERB OMITTED.—See 367. 3.

461. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the Predicate is construed according to the *real meaning* of the subject without regard to grammatical gender or number. Thus

1. With Collective Nouns, *pars*, *multitudo*, and the like :

*Multitudo* *ābeunt*, *The multitude depart*. Liv. *Pars* *per agros dilapsi*, *a part (some) dispersed through the fields*. Liv.

1) Here *multitudo* and *pars*, though Sing. and Fem. in form, are Plur. and Masc. in sense. See also 438. 6.

2) Conversely the Imperative Singular may be used in addressing a multitude individually: *Adde defectiōnem Siciliae*, *Add (to this, soldiers,) the revolt of Sicily*. Liv.

3) Of two verbs with the same collective noun, the former is often Sing., and the latter Plur.: *Jūventus* *ruit certantque*, *The youth rush forth and contend*. Virg.

2. With *Millia*, often masculine in sense :

*Caesi sunt tria millia*, *Three thousand men were slain*. Liv.

3. With *Quisque*, *Uterque*, *Alius—Alium*, *Alter—Alterum*, and the like :

*Uterque* *ēdūcunt*, *they each lead out*. Caes. *Alter alterum vīdēmus*, *We see each other*. Cic.

4. With Singular Subjects accompanied by an Ablative with *cum* :

*Dux cum principibus capiuntur*, *The leader with his chiefs is taken*. Liv. See 438. 6.

5. With *Partim*—*Partim* in the sense of *pars*—*pars* :

*Bōnōrum partim nēcessāria*, *partim non nēcessāria sunt*, *Of good things some are necessary, others are not necessary*. Cic.

462. AGREEMENT WITH APPOSITIVE OR PREDICATE NOUN.—Sometimes the verb agrees, not with its subject, but with an Appositive or Predicate Noun :

*Volsīnii, oppidum Tuscōrum, concremātum est*, *Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was burned*. Plin. *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, *Not every error should be called folly*. Cic.

1. The Verb regularly agrees with the appositive when that is *urbs*, *oppidum*, or *civitas*, in apposition with plural names of places, as in the first example.

1) The verb sometimes agrees with a noun in a subordinate clause after *quam*, *nisi*, etc. : *Nihil aliud nisi pax quaesita est* (not *quaesitum*), *Nothing but peace was sought*. Cic.

2. The verb agrees with the predicate noun, when that is nearer or more emphatic than the subject, as in the second example.

**463. AGREEMENT WITH COMPOUND SUBJECT.**—With two or more subjects the verb agrees—

I. With one subject and is understood with the others :

Aut mōres spectāri aut fortūna sōlet, *Either character or fortune is wont to be regarded.* Cic. Hōmērus fuit et Hēsiodus ante Rōmam conditam, *Homer and Hesiod lived (were) before the founding of Rome.* Cic.

II. With all the subjects conjointly, and is accordingly in the Plural Number :

Lentūlus, Scīpio pēriērunt, *Lentulus and Scipio perished.* Cic. Ego et Cicerō vālemus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Tu et Tullia vālētis, *You and Tullia are well.* Cic.

1. PERSON.—With subjects differing in Person, the verb takes the First Person rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third, as in the examples just given.

2. PARTICIPLES.—See 439.

3. TWO SUBJECTS AS A UNIT.—Two singular subjects forming in sense a unit or whole, admit a singular verb :

Sēnātus pōpulusque intelligit, *The senate and people (i. e., the state as a unit) understand.* Cic. Tempus nēcēssitasque postulat, *Time and necessity (i. e., the crisis) demand.* Cic.

4. SUBJECTS WITH AUT OR NEC.—With singular subjects connected by *aut*, *vel*, *nec*, *nēque* or *seu*, the verb generally agrees with the nearest subject, but with subjects differing in person, it is generally Plur. :

Aut Brūtus aut Cassius iūdicāvit, *Either Brutus or Cassius judged.* Cic. Haec nēque ēgo nēque tu fēcimus, *Neither you nor I have done these things.* Ter.

## SECTION II.

### USE OF VOICES.

**464.** In a transitive verb, the Active voice represents the subject as acting upon some object, the Passive, as acted upon by some other person or thing :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. A Deo omnia facta sunt, *All things were made by God.* Cic.

**465. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.**—With transitive verbs, a thought may at the pleasure of the writer be expressed either actively or passively. But

I. That which in the active construction would be the object must be the subject in the passive ; and

II. That which in the active would be the subject must be put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*, for persons, without it for things : (371.6) :

Deus omnia constituit, *God ordained all things*, or: A Deo omnia constituta sunt, *All things were ordained by God*. Cic. Dei providentia mundum administrat, *The providence of God rules the world*, or: Dei providentia mundus administratur, *The world is ruled by the providence of God*. Cic.

1. The PASSIVE VOICE is sometimes equivalent to the Act. with a reflexive pronoun, like the Greek Middle:

Lāvantur in flūmīnibus, *They bathe* (wash themselves) *in the rivers*. Caes.

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS (193) have regularly only the active voice, but they are sometimes used impersonally in the passive:

Currūt ad praetōrium, *They run to the praetorium* (it is run to). Cic.

3. DEPONENT VERBS, though Passive in form, are in signification transitive or intransitive:

Illud mirābar, *I admired that*. Cic. Ab urbe proficisci, *to set out from the city*. Caes.

4. SEMI-DEPONENTS (272. 3) have some of the Active forms and some of the Passive, without change of meaning.

### SECTION III.

#### TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

##### I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

466. The Present Indicative represents the action of the verb as taking place at the present time:

Ego et Cicēro vālēmus, *Cicero and I are well*. Cic. Hoc te rōgo, *I ask you for this*. Cic.

467. Hence the Present Tense is used,

I. Of actions and events which are actually taking place at the present time, as in the above examples.

II. Of actions and events which, as belonging to all time, belong of course to the present, as *general truths* and *customs*:

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue*. Cic. Fortes fortūna adjūvat, *Fortune helps the brave*. Ter.

III. Of past actions and events which the writer wishes, for effect, to picture before the reader as present. The Present, when so used, is called the Historical Present:

Jūgurtha vallo moenia circumdat, *Jugurtha surrounds the city with a rampart*. Sall.

1. HISTORICAL PRESENT.—The historical present may sometimes be best rendered by the English Imperfect, and sometimes by the English Present, as that has a similar historical use.

2. PRESENT WITH JAMDIU, JAMDUDUM.—The Present is often used of a *present* action which has been going on for some time, rendered *have*, especially after *jamdiu*, *jamdudum*, etc.

*Jamdiu ignōro quid āgas, I have not known for a long time what you are doing.* Cic.

1) The Imperfect is used in the same way of a *past* action which had been going on for some time. Thus in the example above, *Jamdiu ignōrābam*, would mean, *I had not known for a long time.*

2) The Present in the Infinitive and Participle is used in the same way of an action which has been or had been going on for some time.

3. PRESENT APPLIED TO AUTHORS.—The Present in Latin, as in English, may be used of authors whose works are extant :

*Xēnōphon fācit Socrātem dispūtantem, Xenophon represents Socrates discussing.* Cic.

4. PRESENT WITH DUM.—With *dum*, in the sense of *while*, the Present is generally used, even of past actions :

*Dum ea pārant, Sāguntum oppugnābātur, While they were (are) making these preparations, Saguntum was attacked.* Liv.

5. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Present is sometimes used of an action really future, especially in conditions :

*Si vincīmus, omnia tūta ērunt, If we conquer, all things will be safe.* Sall.

## II. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

468. The Imperfect Indicative represents the action as taking place in past time :

*Stābant nobilissīmi jūvēnes, There stood (were standing) most noble youths.* Liv. *Colles oppidūm cingēbant, Hills encompassed the town.* Caes.

469. Hence the Imperfect is used especially

I. In *lively description*, whether of scenes or events :

*Ante oppidūm plānitēs pātēbat, Before the town extended a plain.* Caes. *Fulgentes glādios vidēbant, They saw (were seeing) the gleaming swords.* Cic.

II. Of *customary* or *repeated* actions and events, often rendered by *was wont*, etc. :

*Pausānias ēpūlābātur mōre Persārūm, Pausanias was wont to banquet in the Persian style.* Nep.

1. IMPERFECT OF ATTEMPTED ACTION.—The Imperfect is sometimes used of an attempted or intended action :

*Sēdābant tūmultus, They attempted to quell the seditions.* Liv.

2. IMPERFECT IN LETTERS.—See 472. 1.

## III. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

470. The Future Indicative represents the action as one which will take place in future time:

*Scrībam ad te, I will write to you. Cic. Nunquam āberrābimus, We shall never go astray. Cic.*

1. FUTURE WITH IMPERATIVE FORCE.—In Latin as in English, the Future Indicative sometimes has the force of an Imperative:

*Cūrābis et scrībes, You will take care and write. Cic.*

2. LATIN FUTURE FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—Actions which really belong to future time are almost invariably expressed by the Future Tense, though sometimes put in the present in English:

*Nātūram si sēquēmur, nunquam āberrābimus, If we follow nature, we shall never go astray. Cic.*

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE WITH MELIUS.—With *mēlius* the Future Indicative has often the force of the Subjunctive:

*Mēlius pēribimus, We would perish rather, or it would be better for us to perish. Liv.*

## IV. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

471. The Perfect Indicative has two distinct uses:

I. AS the PRESENT PERFECT or PERFECT DEFINITE, it represents the action as at present completed, and is rendered by our Perfect with *have*:

*De gēnere belli dixi, I have spoken of the character of the war. Cic.*

II. AS the HISTORICAL PERFECT or PERFECT INDEFINITE, it represents the action as a simple historical fact:

*Miltiādes est accūsātus, Miltiades was accused. Nep.*

1. PERFECT OF WHAT HAS CEASED TO BE.—The Perfect is sometimes used where the emphasis rests particularly on the *completion* of the action, implying that what was true of the past, is not true of the present:

*Hābuit, non hābet, He had, but has not. Cic. Fuit Ilium, Ilium was. Virg.*

2. PERFECT INDICATIVE WITH PAENE, PROPE.—The Perfect Indicative with *paene*, *prope*, may often be rendered by *might*, *would*, or by the Pluperfect Indicative:

*Brūtum non mīnus āmo, paene dixi, quam te, I love Brutus not less, I might almost say, or I had almost said, than I do you. Cic.*

3. PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—The Latin sometimes employs the Perfect and Pluperfect where the English uses the Present and Imperfect, especially in repeated actions, and in verbs which want the Present (297).

Mēmīnit praetērītūrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic. Quum ad villam vēni, hoc me dēlectat, *When I come (have come) to a villa, this pleases me.* Cic. Mēmīnēram Paulum, *I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

4. PERFECT WITH POSTQUAM.—*Postquam, ut, ut primum*, etc., in the sense of *as soon as*, are usually followed by the Perfect; sometimes by the Imperfect or Historical Present. But the Pluperfect is generally used of repeated actions; also after *postquam* when a long or definite interval intervenes:

Postquam cēcīdit Ilium, *after (as soon as) Ilium fell.* Virg. Anno tertio postquam prōfūgērat, *in the third year after he had fled.* Nep.

1) As a Rare Exception the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive occur after *postquam* (*postēquam*): *Postēquam aedificasset classes, after he had built fleets.* Cic.

## V. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

472. The Pluperfect Indicative represents the action as completed at some definite past time:

Cōpias quas pro castris collēcāvērāt, rēduxit, *He led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.* Caes.

1. TENSES.—In letters the writer often adapts the tense to the time of the reader, using the Imperfect or Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Imperfect or Perfect:

Nihil hābēbam quod scribērem: ad tuas omnes ēpistōlas rescripsēram, *I have (had) nothing to write: I have already replied to all your letters (I had replied, i. e., before writing this).* Cic.

1) The Perfect is sometimes used of Future actions, as events which happen *after* the writing of the letter but *before* the receipt of it will be *Future* to the writer but *Past* to the reader.

2. PLUPERFECT FOR ENGLISH IMPERFECT.—See 471. 3.

3. PLUPERFECT TO DENOTE RAPIDITY.—The Pluperfect sometimes denotes rapidity or completeness of action:

Urbem luctu complēvērant, *They (had) filled the city with mourning.* Curt.

## VI. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

473. The Future Perfect Indicative represents the action as one which will be completed at some future time:

Rōmam quum vēnērō, scribam ad te, *When I shall have reached Rome, I will write to you.* Cic. Dum tu haec lēges, ēgo illum fortasse convēnērō, *When you read this, I shall perhaps have already met him.* Cic.

1. FUTURE PERFECT TO DENOTE CERTAINTY.—The Future Perfect is sometimes used to denote the *speedy* or *complete* accomplishment of the work:

Ego meum officiū praestitērō, *I will surely discharge my duty.* Caes.

2. The FUTURE PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT OR FUTURE is rare, but occurs in conditional clauses :

Si interpretāri pōtuerō, his verbis ūtītur, *If I can (shall have been able to) understand him, he uses these words.* Cic.

## SECTION IV.

### USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

#### RULE XXXVI.—Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Nonne expul-sus est patria, *Was he not banished from his country?* Cic. Hoc feci, dum licuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.

475. SPECIAL USES.—The Indicative is sometimes used where our idiom would suggest the Subjunctive :

1. The *Indicative* of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences (512. 2) :

Haec conditio non accipiēda fuit, *This condition should not have been accepted.* Cic.

2. The *Historical Tenses* of the *Indicative*, particularly the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used for *Effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so :

Vicērāmus, nīsi rēcēpisset Antōnium, *We should have (lit. had) conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic. See 511. 2.

3. *Pronouns* and *Relative Adverbs*, made general by being doubled or by assuming the suffix *cunque* (187. 4), take the Indicative :

Quisquis est, is est sapiens, *Whoever he is, he is wise.* Cic. Hoc ultimum, utcunque initum est, proelium fuit, *This, however it was commenced, was the last battle.* Liv.

4. In *Expressions of Duty, Necessity, Ability*, and the like, the Latin often uses the Indicative where the English does not :

Tardius quam debuērat, *more slowly than he should have done.* Cic.

1) So also in *sum* with *aequum, par, justum, melius, utilius, longum, difficile*, and the like : Longum est persēqui utilitātes. *It would be tedious (is a long task) to enumerate the uses.* Cic.

## SECTION V.

### TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

476. Tense in the Subjunctive does not designate the time of the action as definitely as in the Indicative, but it marks with great exactness its continuance or completion.

477. The Present and Imperfect express *Incomplete* action:

Valeant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Utinam vëra invënire possem, *O that I were able to find the truth.* Cic.

478. The Perfect and Pluperfect express *Completed* action:

Oblitus es quid dixërim, *You have forgotten what I said.* Cic. Thëmistocles, quum Græciam libërasset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece.* Cic.

479. The Future Tenses are wanting in the Subjunctive: the mood itself—used only of that which is merely *conceived* and *uncertain*—is so nearly related to the Future, that those tenses are seldom needed. Their place is however supplied, when necessary, by the periphrastic forms in *rus* (481. III. 1).

480. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—The Subjunctive Tenses in their use conform to the following

### RULE XXXVII.—Sequence of Tenses.

Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical upon Historical:

Nititur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Nëmo ërit qui censeat, *There will be no one who will think.* Cic. Quaesiëras nonne pütärem, *You had asked, whether I did not think.* Cic.

481. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In accordance with this rule,

I. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Principal tense—*present, present perfect, future, future perfect*—is put,

1. In the Present for Incomplete Action:

Videò quid ägas,	<i>I see what you are doing.</i>
Vidi quid ägas,	<i>I have seen what you are doing.</i>
Vidëbò quid ägas,	<i>I shall see what you do.</i>
Vidërò quid ägas,	<i>I shall have seen what you do.</i>

2. In the Perfect for Completed Action:

Videò quid ägëris,	<i>I see what you have done.</i>
Vidi quid ägëris,	<i>I have seen what you have done.</i>
Vidëbò quid ägëris,	<i>I shall see what you have done.</i>
Vidërò quid ägëris,	<i>I shall have seen what you have done.</i>



II. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Historical tense—*imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*—is put,

1. In the Imperfect for Incomplete Action:

Vidēbam quid āgēres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidi quid ageres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidēram quid ageres,	<i>I had seen what you were doing.</i>

2. In the Pluperfect for Completed Action:

Vidēbam quid ēgisses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidi quid egisses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidēram quid egisses,	<i>I had seen what you had done.</i>

III. The Periphrastic Forms in *rus* conform to the rule:

Vīdeo quid actūrus sis,	<i>I see what you are going to do.</i>
Vidēbam quid actūrus esses,	<i>I saw what you were going to do.</i>

1. FUTURE SUPPLIED.—The Future is supplied when necessary (479), (1) by the Present<sup>1</sup> or Imperfect Subjunctive of the periphrastic forms in *rus*, or (2) by *fūtūrum sit ut*,<sup>2</sup> with the regular Present, and *fūtūrum esset ut*, with the regular Imperfect. The first method is confined to the Active, the second occurs in both voices:

*Incertum est quam longa vīta fūtūra sit, It is uncertain how long life will continue.* Cic. *Incertum erat quo missūri classem fōrent, It was uncertain whither they would send the fleet.* Liv.

2. FUTURE PERFECT SUPPLIED.—The Future Perfect is supplied, when necessary, by *fūtūrum sit ut*, with the Perfect, and *fūtūrum esset ut*, with the Pluperfect. But this circumlocution is rarely necessary. In the Passive it is sometimes abridged to *fūtūrus sim* and *fūtūrus essem*, with the Perfect participle:

*Non dubito quin confecta jam res fūtūra sit, I do not doubt that the thing will have been already accomplished.* Cic.

IV. The HISTORICAL PRESENT is treated sometimes as a Principal tense, as it really is in Form, and sometimes as a Historical tense, as it really is in Sense:

1. As Principal tense according to its Form:

*Ubi ōrant, ut sibi parcat, The Ubi implore him to spare them.* Caes.

2. As Historical tense according to its Sense:

*Persuadet Castīco ut regnum occūpāret, He persuaded Castīcus to seize the government.* Caes.

V. The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE often refers to *present* time, especially in conditional sentences (510. 1); accordingly, when thus used, it is treated as a Principal tense:

<sup>1</sup> The Present, of course, after Principal tenses, and the Imperfect after Historical tenses, according to 480.

<sup>2</sup> *Fūtūrum sit*, etc., after Principal tenses, and *fūtūrum esset*, etc., after Historical tenses.

Mēmōrāre possem quibus in locis hostes fūdērit, *I might (now) state in what places he routed the enemy.* Sall.

VI. The PRESENT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES, Present and Future PARTICIPLES, as also GERUNDS and SUPINES, share the tense of the verb on which they depend, as they express only *relative* time (§40. 571):

Spēro fōre<sup>1</sup> ut contingat, *I hope it will happen* (I hope it will be that it may happen). Cic. Non spērāvērat fōre ut ad se defīcerent, *He had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv.

482. PECULIARITIES IN SEQUENCE.—The following peculiarities in the sequence of tenses deserve notice:

1. AFTER PERFECT TENSE.—The Latin Perfect is sometimes treated as a Historical tense, even when rendered with *have*, and thus admits the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*:

Quōniam quae subsidia hābēres expōsui,<sup>2</sup> nunc dīcam, *Since I have shown what aids you have (or had), I will now speak.* Cic.

2. AFTER HISTORICAL TENSES.—Conversely Historical tenses, when followed by clauses denoting *consequence* or *result*, often conform to the law of sequence for Principal tenses, and thus admit the *Present* or *Perfect*:

Epāminondas fide sic ūsus est, ut possit iūdicāri, *Epaminondas used such fidelity that it may be judged.* Nep. Adeo excellēbat Aristīdes abstinentia, ut Justus sit appellātus, *Aristides so excelled in self-control, that he has been called the Just.* Nep.

This peculiarity arises from the fact that the *Result* of a *past* action may itself be *present* and may thus be expressed by a Principal tense. When the result belongs to the present time, the Present is used: *possit iūdicāri*, may be judged now; when it is represented as at present completed, the Perfect is used: *sit appellātus*, has been called i. e. even to the present day; but when it is represented as simultaneous with the action on which it depends, the Imperfect is used in accordance with the general rule of sequence (§50).

3. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ORATIO OBLIQUA.—In indirect discourse (§28. and §33. 1) dependent upon a Historical tense, the narrator often uses the Principal tenses to give a lively effect to his narrative; occasionally also in direct discourse:

Exītus fuit ōrātiōnis: Nēque ullos vācāre agros, qui dāri possint; *The close of the oration was, that there were (are) not any lands unoccupied which could (can) be given.* Caes.

<sup>1</sup> Here *fōre* shares the tense of *spēro*, and is accordingly followed by the Present *contingat*, but below it shares the tense of *spērāvērat*, and is accordingly followed by the Imperfect *defīcerent*.

<sup>2</sup> *Expōsui*, though best rendered by our Perf. Def. with *have*, is in the Latin treated as the Historical Perf. The thought is as follows: *Since in the preceding topics I set forth the aids which you had, I will now speak, &c.*

## SECTION VI.

### USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

483. The Subjunctive represents the action of the verb, not as an actual fact, but as something supposed or conceived. It may denote that the action is conceived,

1. As Possible, Potential.
2. As Desirable.
3. As a Purpose or Result.
4. As a Condition.
5. As a Concession.
6. As a Cause or Reason.
7. As an Indirect Question.

8. As dependent upon another subordinate action: (1) By Attraction after another Subjunctive, (2) In Indirect Discourse.

484. VARIETIES.—The Subjunctive in its various uses may accordingly be characterized as follows:

- I. The Potential Subjunctive.
- II. The Subjunctive of Desire.
- III. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result
- IV. The Subjunctive of Condition.
- V. The Subjunctive of Concession.
- VI. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason.
- VII. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.
- VIII. The Subjunctive by Attraction.
- IX. The Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

#### I. THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

##### RULE XXXVIII.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action not as real, but as *possible*:

Forsitan quaerātis, *Perhaps you may inquire.* Cic. Hoc nemo dixerit, *No one would say this.* Cic. Huic cēdamus, hujus conditiōnes audiāmus, *Shall we yield to him, shall we listen to his terms?* Cic. Quis dūbitet (= nemo dūbitat), *Who would doubt, or who doubts* (= no one doubts)? Cic. Quid faciērem, *What was I to do, or what should I have done?* Virg.

486. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In the Potential sense, the Subjunctive is used,

I. In *Declarative Sentences*, to express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*, as in the first and second examples.

II. In *Questions of Appeal*,<sup>1</sup> to ask not what is, but what *may be* or *should be*, generally implying a negative answer, as in the last example under the rule.

III. In *Subordinate Clauses*, whatever the connective, to represent the action as *possible* rather than *real*:

Quamquam ēpūlis cāreat sēnectus, *though old age may be without its feasts.* Cic. Quōniam non possent, *since they would not be able.* Caes. Ubi res poscēret, *whenever the case might demand.* Liv.

Here the Subjunctive after *quamquam*, *quōniam*, and *ubi*, is entirely independent of those conjunctions. In this way many conjunctions which do not require the Subjunctive, admit that mood whenever the thought requires it.

1. USE OF THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.—This Subjunctive, it will be observed, has a wide application, and is used in almost all kinds of sentences and clauses, whether declarative or interrogative, principal or subordinate, whether introduced by conjunctions or relatives.

2. *How rendered*.—The Potential Subjunctive is generally best rendered by our Potential signs—*may, can, must, might, etc.*, or by *shall* or *will*.

3. INCLINATION.—The Subjunctive sometimes denotes inclination:

Ego censeam, *I should think, or I am inclined to think.* Liv.

4. IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.—In the Potential sense, the Imperfect is often used where we should expect the Pluperfect: *dīcēres*, you would have said; *crēdēres, pūtāres*, you would have thought; *vidēres, cernēres*, you would have seen:

Moesti, *crēdēres* victos, rēdeunt in castra, *Sad, vanquished you would have thought them, they returned to the camp.* Liv.

5. SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPEATED ACTION.—Subordinate clauses in narration sometimes take the Subjunctive to denote that the action is *often* or *indefinitely repeated*. Thus with *ubi*, whenever, *quōties*, as often as, *quicunque*, whoever, *ut quisque*, as each one, and the like:

Id fātialis ūbi dixisset, hastam mittēbat, *The fœtial priest was wont to hurl a spear whenever (i. e., every time) he had said this.* Liv.

6. PRESENT AND PERFECT.—In the Potential Subjunctive the Perfect often has nearly the same force as the Present:

Tu Plātōnem laudāveris, *You would praise Plato.* Cic.

1) The Perfect with the force of the Present occurs also in some of the other uses of the Subjunctive.

7. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.—The Subjunctive in the conclusion of conditional sentences is the Potential Subjunctive, but conditional sentences will be best treated by themselves. See 502.

<sup>1</sup> These are also variously called *Deliberative, Doubting, or Rhetorical Questions*.

## II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE.

## RULE XXXIX.—Desire, Command.

487. The Subjunctive of Desire represents the action not as real, but as *desired* :

Văleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Amemus patriam, *Let us love our country.* Cic. Rôbore utâre, *Use your strength.* Cic. Scribere ne pigrere, *Do not neglect to write.* Cic.

488. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—The Subjunctive of Desire is used,

I. To express a WISH, as in *prayers, exhortations, and entreaties*, as in the first and second examples.

II. To express a COMMAND mildly, as in *admonitions, precepts, and warnings*, as in the third and fourth examples.

1. WITH UTINAM.—The Subjunctive of *Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, and sometimes—especially in the poets, by *ut, si, o si* :

Utinam cōnata efficere possim, *May I be able to accomplish my endeavors.* Cic.

2. FORCE OF TENSES.—The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled ; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled :

Sint beati, *May they be happy.* Cic. Ne transieris Ibërum, *Do not cross the Ebro.* Liv. Utinam possem, utinam pōtuissem, *Would that I were able, would that I had been able.* Cic. See also 486. 6. 1).

The Imperfect and Pluperfect may often be best rendered, *should have been, ought to have been* :

Hec diceret. *He should have said this.* Cic. Mortem oppētisses, *You should have met death.* Cic.

3. NEGATIVE NE.—With this Subjunctive the negative is *ne*, rarely *non* :  
Ne audeant, *Let them not dare.* Cic. Non recedāmus, *Let us not recede.* Cic.

4. IN ASSEVERATIONS.—The first person of the subjunctive is often found in earnest or solemn affirmations or asseverations :

Mōriar, si pūto, *May I die, if I think.* Cic. Ne sim salvus, si scribo, *May I not be safe, if I write.* Cic.

So with *ita* and *sic* : Sollicitat, ita vivam, *As I live, it troubles me.* Cic.

Here *ita vivam* means literally, *may I so live*, i. e., *may I live only in case this is true.*

5. IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.—The Subjunctive of desire is sometimes used in relative clauses :

Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte, *Elect a king, and may it be an auspicious event* (may which be auspicious). Liv. Sēnectus, ad quam utinam pervēniātis, *old age, to which may you attain.* Cic.

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT.

## RULE XL.—Purpose or Result.

489. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result is used,

I. With *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quōmīnus* :

PURPOSE.—*Enītūtur ut vincat*, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic.  
*Pūnit ne peccētur*, *He punishes that crime may not be committed.* Sen.

RESULT.—*Ita vixit ut Athēniensibus esset cārissīmus*, *He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep.

II. With *qui* = *ut is*, *ut ēgo*, *tu*, etc. :

PURPOSE.—*Missi sunt, qui (ut ii) consūlērēt Apollīnem*, *They were sent to consult Apollo (who should or that they should).* Nep.

RESULT.—*Non is sum qui (ut ego) his ūtar*, *I am not such an one as to use these things.* Cic.

1. *Ut* with the Subjunctive sometimes forms with *fācio*, or *ēgo*, rarely with *est*, a circumlocution for the Indicative : *fācio ut dicam* = *dīco*; *fācio ut scribam* = *scribo*: *Invītus fācio ut rēcorder*, *I unwillingly recall.* Cic.

## Conjunctions of Purpose or Result.

490. *UT* AND *NE*.—*Ut* and *ne* are the regular conjunctions in clauses denoting Purpose or Result. *Ut* and *ne* denote Purpose; *ut* and *ut non*, Result.

1. With connective *ne* becomes *nēve*, *neu*, rarely *nēque*. *Nēve*, *neu*, = *aut ne* or *et ne*: *Lēgem tālīt nēquis accūsārētur nēve multārētur*, *He proposed a law that no one should be accused or punished.* Nep.

491. PURE PURPOSE.—*Ut* and *ne*—*that*, *in order that*, *that not*, *in order that not*, *lest*, etc.—are used after verbs of a great variety of significations to express simply the Purpose of the action. A correlative—*īdeo*, *īdcirco*, etc.—may or may not precede :

*Lēgum īdeīreo servi sūmus, ut libēri esse possīmus*, *We are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free.* Cic. See also the examples under the Rule.

492. MIXED PURPOSE.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ne* are used to denote a Purpose which partakes more or less of the character of a *Direct Object*, sometimes of a *Subject*, *Predicate* or *Appositive*—Mixed Purpose. Thus with verbs and expressions denoting

1. EFFORT.—striving for a purpose; attaining a purpose:

*nītor*, *contendo*, *stūdeo*,—*cūro*, *id āgo*, *ōpĕram do*, etc., *fācio*, *efficio*, *impetro*, *consēquor*, etc.:

Contendit, ut vincat, *He strives to conquer*. Cic. Cūrāvi ut bene vivērem, *I took care to lead a good life*. Sen. Efficit ut impērātor mittērētur, *He caused a commander to be sent* (attained his purpose). Nep. But see 495.

## 2. EXHORTATION, IMPULSE—urging one to effort :

admōneo, mōneo, hortor,—cōgo, impello, mōveo,—ūro, rōgo,—impēro, praecipio, etc. :

Te hortor ut lēgas, *I exhort you to read*. Cic. Mōvēmur ut bōni simus, *We are influenced to be good*. Cic. Te rōgo ut eum jūves, *I ask you to aid him*. Cic. See also 551. II. 1 and 2 ; 558. VI.

## 3. DESIRE AND ITS EXPRESSION : hence *decision, decree*, etc. :

opto, postūlo,—censeo, dēcerno, stātuo, constituo, etc.—rarely vōlo, nōlo, mālō :

Opto ut id audiātis, *I desire (pray) that you may hear this*. Cic. Sēnātus censuērat, ūti Aeduos dēfendēret, *The senate had decreed that he should defend the Aedui*. Caes. See 551. II. and 558. II. and VI.

## 4. FEAR, DANGER :

mētuo, timeo, vēreor,—pēricūlum est, cūra est, etc. :

Timeo, ut sustīneas, *I fear you will not endure them*. Cic. Vēreor ne lābōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor*. Cic.

1) By a Difference of Idiom *ut* must here be rendered *that not*, and *ne* by *that* or *lest*. The Latin treats the clause as a wish, a desired purpose.

2) After verbs of fearing *ne non* is sometimes used for *ut*, regularly so after negative clauses: Vēreor ne non possit, *I fear that he will not be able*. Cic.

3) After verbs of fearing, especially *vēreor*, the infinitive is sometimes used: Vēreor laudāre, *I fear (hesitate) to praise*. Cic.

**493. PECULIARITIES.**—Expressions of Purpose present the following peculiarities :

### 1. *Ut ne*, rarely *ut non*, is sometimes used for *ne* :

Praedixit, ut ne lēgātos dimittērent, *He charged them not to* (that they should not) *release the delegates*. Nep. Ut plūra non dicam, *not to say more*, i. e., that I may not. Cic.

2. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, especially with *vōlo, nōlo, mālō, fūcio*, and verbs of directing, urging, etc. *Ne* is often omitted with *cāve* :

Tu vēlim sis, *I desire that you may be*. Cic. Fac hābeas, *see (make) that you have*. Cic. Sēnātus decrevit, dārent ōpēram consūles, *The senate decreed that the consuls should see to it*. Sall. See also 535. 1, 2).

3. Clauses with *Ut* and *Ne* may depend upon a noun or upon a verb omitted :

Fēcit pācem his conditōnibus, ne qui afficērentur exsilio, *He made peace on these terms, that none should be punished with exile*. Nep. Ut ita dicam, *so to speak* (that I may speak thus). Cic. This is often inserted in a sentence, like the English *so to speak*.

4. *Nēdum* and *Ne* in the sense of *much less*, *not to say*, are used with the Subjunctive :

*Vix in tectis frigus vitātur, nēdum in māri sit faciē, The cold is avoided with difficulty in our houses, much less is it easy (to avoid it) on the sea.* Cic.

494. PURE RESULT.—*Ut* and *ut non*—*so that, so that not*—are often used with the Subjunctive, to express simply a *Result* or a *Consequence* :

*Ita vixit ut Athēniensibus esset cārissimus, He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. *Ita laudo, ut non pertimescam, I so praise as not to fear.* Cic.

A correlative—*ita* in these examples—generally precedes: thus, *ita, sic, tam, adeo, tantūpère, tālis, tantus, ejusmodi.*

495. MIXED RESULT.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ut non* are used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Result* which partakes of the character of a *Direct Object, Subject, Predicate, or Appositive*: Thus

1. Clauses as OBJECT AND RESULT occur with *fūcio, efficiō*, of the action of irrational forces:

*Sol efficit ut omnia floreant, The sun causes all things to bloom, i. e., produces that result.* Cic. See 492. 1.

2. Clauses as SUBJECT AND RESULT occur with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, remains, follows, is distant*, etc.:

*accidit, contingit, evenit, fit, restat, sequitur, adest*, etc.

*Fit ut quisque delectetur, The result is (it happens) that every one is delighted.* Cic. *Sequitur ut falsum sit, It follows that it is false.* Cic.

1) The Subjunctive is sometimes, though rarely, used when the predicate is a Noun or Adjective with the copula *sum* :

*Mos est ut nōlint, It is their custom not to be willing (that they are unwilling).* Cic. *Proximum est, ut doceam, The next point is, that I show.* Cic. See 556. I. 1 and 2.

2) Subjunctive Clauses with *ut*, in the form of questions expressive of surprise, sometimes stand alone, by the omission of some predicate, as *credendum est, verisimile est*, is it to be credited, is it probable?

*Tu ut unquam te corrigas, that you should ever reform? i. e., Is it to be supposed that you will ever reform?* Cic.

3) See also 556 with its subdivisions.

3. Clauses as APPOSITIVE AND RESULT, or PREDICATE AND RESULT, occur with Demonstratives and a few Nouns :

*Habet hoc virtus ut delectet, Virtue has this advantage, that it delights.* Cic. *Est hoc vitium, ut invidia glōriæ cōmes sit, There is this fault, that envy is the companion of glory.* Nep.



496. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Result present the following peculiarities :

1. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, regularly so with *oportet*, generally with *opus est* and *necesse est* :

Te oportet virtus trahat, *It is necessary that virtue should attract you.*  
Cic. Causam habeat necesse est, *It is necessary that it should have a cause.*  
Cic.

2. The Subjunctive occurs with *Quam*—with or without *ut* :

Liberalius quam ut posset, *too freely to be able* (more freely than so as to be able). Nep. Impōnēbat amplius quam ferre possent, *He imposed more than they were able to bear.*

3. *Tantum ābest*.—After *tantum ābest ut*, denoting result, a second *ut* of result sometimes occurs :

Philōsōphia, tantum ābest, ut laudētur ut etiam vitūpērētur, *So far is it from the truth* (so much is wanting), *that philosophy is praised that it is even censured.* Cic.

497. *Quo*.—*Quo*, *by which*, *that*, is sometimes used for *ut*, especially with comparatives :

Mēdico dāre quo sit stūdiōsior, *to give to the physician, that* (by this means) *he may be more attentive.* Cic.

For *non quo* of Cause, see 520. 3.

498. *Quin*.—*Quin* (*quī* and *ne*), *by which not*, *that not*, is often used to introduce a Purpose or Result after negatives and interrogatives implying a negative. Thus

1. *Quin* is often used in the ordinary sense of *ne* and *ut non* :

Rētīnēri non pōtērant, quin tēla conjiēcērent, *They could not be restrained from hurling* (that they might not) *their weapons.* Caes. Nihil est tam diffīcile quin (*ut non*) investigāri possit, *Nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated.* Ter.

After verbs of *hindering*, *opposing*, and the like, *quin* has the force of *ne*.

2. *Quin* is often used after *Nemo*, *Nullus*, *Nihil*, *Quis*?

Adest nēmo, quin vīdeat, *There is no one present who does not see.* Cic.  
Quis est quin cernat, *Who is there who does not perceive?* Cic.

*Is* or *id* is sometimes expressed after *quin* :

Nihil est quin id intēreat, *There is nothing which does not perish.* Cic.

3. *Quin* is often used in the sense of *that*, *but that*, *without* with a participial noun, especially after negative expressions, implying *doubt*, *uncertainty*, *omission*, and the like :

Non est dūbium quin bēnēfīcium sit, *There is no doubt that it is a benefit.* Sen. Nullum intērmisi diem quin āliquid dārem, *I allowed no day to*

*pass, without giving something.* Cic. *Făcēre non possum quin littēras mit-tam, I cannot but send a letter.* Cic.

1) Such expressions are: non dūbīto, non dūbium est—non multum ābest, pau-lum ābest, nihil ābest, quid ābest?—non, vix, aegre abstīneo; mihi non tempōro; non, nihil praetermitto—făcēre non possum, făci non pōtest.

2) The Infinitive, for *Quin* with the Subjunctive, occurs with verbs of doubting: Quis dūbitat pătēre Eurōpam, *Who doubts that Europe is exposed?* Curt.

3) *Non Quin* of Cause. See 520. 3.

4) *Quin* is used in questions in the sense of *why not?* and with the Imperative in the sense of *well, but*: Quin āgite, *but come.* Virg. It occasionally means *nay, even, rather.*

499. QUOMINUS.—Quōmīnus (quo and mīnus), *that thus the less, that not*, is sometimes used for *ne* and *ut non*, after verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like:

Non dēterret sāpientem mors quōmīnus reipublicae consūlat, *Death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic.* Cic. Non rēcūsāvit, quominus poenam sūbīret, *He did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep. Per eum stētīt quōmīnus dimīcārētur, *It was owing to him (stood through him), that the engagement was not made.* Caes.

1. Expressions of *hindering*, etc., are: dēterreo, impēdio, prōhibeo,—obsto, obsto, officio,—rēcūso, per me stat, etc.

2. Verbs of *hindering* admit a variety of constructions: the Infinitive, the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, or *quōmīnus*.

### *Relative of Purpose or Result.*

500. A Relative Clause denoting a Purpose or a Result is equivalent to a clause with *ut*, denoting purpose or result, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason. The relative is then equivalent to *ut* with a pronoun: *qui* = *ut* *ēgo*, *ut tu*, *ut is*, etc.:

PURPOSE.—Missi sunt qui (ut ii) consūlērēt Apollīnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo (who should, or that they should).* Nep. Missi sunt dēlecti qui Thermōpylas occūpārent, *Picked men were sent to take possession of Thermopylae.* Nep.

RESULT.—Non is sum qui (= *ut* *ēgo*) his ūtar, *I am not such a one as to use these things.* Cic. Innōcentia est affectio tālis ānīmī, quae (= *ut ea*) nō-ceat nēmīni, *Innocence is such a state of mind as injures no one, or as to in-jure no one.* Cic.

1. RELATIVE PARTICLES.—The subjunctive is used in the same way in clauses introduced by *relative particles*; *ūbi*, *unde*, etc.:

Dōmum ūbi hābitāret, lēgit, *He selected a house that he might dwell in it (where he might dwell).* Cic.

2. PURPOSE AND RESULT.—Relative clauses denoting purpose are readily recognized; those denoting result are used, in their more obvious applications, after such words as *tam*, so; *tālis*, is, *ejusmōdi*, such, as in the above examples; but see also 501.

3. INDICATIVE AFTER TALIS, ETC.—In a relative clause after *tālis*, is, etc., the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the fact:

*Mihi causa tālis oblāta est, in qua oratio deesse nēmīni pōtest, Such a cause has been offered me, (one) in which no one can fail of an oration.* Cic.

501. Relative clauses of Result, in their less obvious applications, include,

I. Relative clauses after *Indefinite* and *General antecedents*. Here *tam*, *tālis*, or some such word, may often be supplied:

*Nunc dicis āliquid (ejusmōdi, or tāle) quod ad rem pertineat, Now you state something which belongs to the subject (i. e., something of such a character as to belong, etc.).* Cic. *Sunt qui pūtent, there are some who think.* Cic. *Nemo est qui non cūpiat, there is no one who does not desire, i. e., such as not to desire.* Cic.

1. In the same way *quod*, or a relative particle, *ūbi*, *unde*, *quo*, *cur*, etc., with the *Subjunctive*, is used after *est*, there is reason, *non est*, *nihil est*, there is no reason, *quid est*, what reason is there? *non habeo*, *nihil habeo*, I have no reason:

*Est quod gaudeas, There is reason why you should rejoice, or so that you may.* Plaut. *Non est quod crēdas, There is no reason why you should believe.* Sen. *Nihil habeo, quod incūsem sēnectūtem, I have no reason why I should accuse old age.* Cic.

2. INDICATIVE AFTER INDEFINITE ANTECEDENT.—A Relative clause after an indefinite antecedent also takes the Indicative, when the fact itself is to be made prominent:

*Sunt qui non audent dicere, There are some who (actually) do not dare to speak.* Cic. *Multa sunt, quae dici possunt, There are many things which may be said.* Cic. So also clauses with Rel. particles. See 1 above.

In poetry and late prose the Indicative often follows *sunt qui*:

*Sunt quos jūvat, there are some whom it delights.* Hor.

3. RESTRICTIVE CLAUSES with *quod*, as *quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod mēmīnērīm*, as far as I remember, etc., take the subjunctive.

II. Relative clauses after *Unus*, *Sōlus*, and the like, take the subjunctive:

*Sāpientia est ūna, quae moestitiam pellat, Wisdom is the only thing which dispels sadness (such as to dispel).* Cic. *Sōli centum erant qui creāri possent, There were only one hundred who could be appointed (such that they could be).* Liv.

III. Relative clauses after *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *Idōneus*, and *Apus* take the subjunctive:

*Fābulae dignae sunt, quae lēgantur, The fables are worthy to be read (that they should be read).* Cic. *Rūfum Caesar idōneum jūdicāverat quem mittēret, Caesar had judged Rufus a suitable person to send (whom he might send).* Caes.

IV. Relative clauses after Comparatives with *Quam* take the subjunctive:

*Damna majōra sunt quam quae (= ut ea) aestimāri possint, The losses are too great to be estimated (greater than so that they can be).* Liv.

#### IV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION.

502. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood,—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion*:

*Si nēgem, mentiar, If I should deny it, I should speak falsely.* Cic.  
Here *si nēgem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

#### RULE XLI.—Subjunctive of Condition.

503. The Subjunctive of Condition is used,

I. With *dum, mōdo, dummōdo*:

*Mānent ingēnia, mōdo permāneat industria, Mental powers remain, if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With *ac si, ut si, quāsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si*:

*Crūdēlītatem, vĕlut si ādēssēt, horrēbant, They shuddered at his cruelty, as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with *si, nīsi, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis*:

*Dies dēficiat, si vĕlim nūmērāre, The day would fail me, if I should wish to recount.* Cic. *Imprōbe fēcēris, nīsi mōnuēris, You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. *Si vōluisset, dīmīcasset, If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep.

1. *SI OMITTED*.—Two clauses without any conjunction sometimes have the force of a conditional sentence:

*Nēgat quis, nēgo, Does any one deny, I deny.* Ter. *Rōges me, nihil rēpondeam, Should you ask me, I should make no reply.* Cic. See also *Imperative*, 535. 2.

2. *CONDITION SUPPLIED*.—The condition may be supplied,

1) By *Participles*: *Non pōtestis, vōluptāte omnia dirīgentes (si dirīgētis), rētīnēre virtūtem, You cannot retain your manhood, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure.* Cic.

2) By *Oblique Cases*: *Nēmo sine spe (nīsi spem hābēret) se offerret ad mortem, No one without a hope (if he had not a hope) would expose himself to death.* Cic.

3. **IRONY.**—The condition is sometimes ironical, especially with *nisi* *vĕro*, *nisi forte* with the Indicative, and with *quāsi*, *quāsi vĕro* with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive:

*Nisi forte insānit*, unless perhaps he is insane. Cic. *Quāsi vĕro nēcesse sit*, as if indeed it were necessary. Caes.

4. **ITA—SI, ETC.**—*Ita—si*, so—if, means *only—if*. *Si quīdem*, if indeed, sometimes has nearly the force of *since*.

5. **ET OMITTED.**—See 587. I. 6.

**504. FORCE OF TENSES.**—In conditional sentences the Present and Perfect tenses represent the supposition as not at all improbable, the Imperfect and Pluperfect represent it as contrary to the fact. See examples above. See also 476 to 478.

1. **PRESENT FOR IMPERFECT.**—The Present Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Imperfect, when a condition, in itself contrary to reality, is still conceived of as possible:

*Tu si hic sis, ālīter sentias*, If you were the one (or, should be), you would think differently. Ter.

2. **IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.**—The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Pluperfect, with the nice distinction that it contemplates the supposed action as *going on*, not as completed:

*Num Opīmium, si tum esses, tēmērārium cīvem pūtāres?* Would you think Opimius an audacious citizen, if you were living at that time (Pluperf. would you have thought—if you had lived)? Cic.

**505. DUM, MŌDO, DUMMŌDO.**—*Dum*, *mōdo*, and *dummōdo*, in conditions, have the force of—*if only*, *provided that*, or with *ne*, *if only not*, *provided that not*:

*Dum res māneant, verba fingant*, Let them make words, if only the facts remain. Cic. *Mōdo permāneat industria*, if only industry remains. Cic. *Dummōdo rēpellat pēricūlum*, provided he may avert danger. Cic. *Mōdo ne laudārent*, if only they did not praise. Cic.

When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the indicative:

*Dum lēges vīgēbant*, while the laws were in force. Cic.

**506. AC SI, UT SI, QUĀSI, ETC.**—*Ac si*, *ut si*, *quam si*, *quāsi*, *tanquam*, *tanquam si*, *vĕlut*, *vĕlut si*, involve an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

*Misērior es, quam si ōcūlos non hābēres*, You are more unhappy than (esses, you would be) if you had not eyes. Cic. *Crūdēlītātem, vĕlut si adēsset, horrēbant*, They shuddered at his cruelty as (they would) if he were present. Caes. *Ut si in suam rem āllēna convertant*, as if they should appropriate others' possessions to their own use. Cic. *Tanquam audiant*, as if they may hear. Sen.

*Ceu* and *Sicūti* are sometimes used in the same way:

*Ceu bella fōrent*, as if there were wars. Virg. *Sicūti audiri possent*, as if they could be heard. Sall.

**507. SI, NISI, NI, SIN, QUI.**—The Latin distinguishes three distinct forms of the conditional sentence with *si, nisi, ni, sin*:

- I. Indicative in both Clauses.
- II. Subjunctive, Present or Perfect, in both Clauses.
- III. Subjunctive, Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both Clauses.

**508. First Form.**—*Indicative in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *real*, basing upon it any statement which would be admissible, if it were a known fact:

*Si hæc civitas est, civis sum* čgo, *If this is a state, I am a citizen.* Cic. *Si non licēbat, non necesse erat*, *If it was not lawful, it was not necessary.* Cic. *Dolōrem si non pōtēro frangere, occultābo*, *If I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it.* Cic. *Parvi sunt fōris arma, nisi est consilium dūmi*, *Arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic.

1. **CONDITION.**—The condition is introduced, when affirmative, by *si*, with or without other particles, as *quidem, mōdo*, etc., and when negative, by *si non, nisi, ni*. The time may be either *present, past, or future*. See examples above.

2. **CONCLUSION.**—The conclusion may take the form of a command: *Si peccāvi, ignosee*, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic.

3. **SI NON, NISI.**—*Si non* and *nisi* are often used without any perceptible difference of meaning; but strictly *si non* introduces the negative condition on which the conclusion depends, while *nisi* introduces a qualification or an exception. Thus in the second example above the meaning is, *If it was not lawful*, it follows that *it was not necessary*, while in the fourth the meaning is, *Arms are of little value abroad, except when there is wisdom at home.*

**509. Second Form.**—*Subjunctive Present or Perfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the condition as possible:

*Hæc si tēcum patria lōquātur, nonne impetrāre dēbeat*, *If your country should speak thus with you, ought she not to obtain her request?* Cic. *Improbe feceris, nisi mōnueris*, *You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule, 503; also 486. 7.

When dependent upon a Historical tense, the Present and Perfect are of course generally changed to the Imperfect and Pluperfect, by the law for Sequence of tenses (480).

*Mētuit ne, si iret, retrāhērētur*, *He feared lest if he should go, he might be brought back.* Liv.

**510. Third Form.**—*Subjunctive Imperfect or Pluperfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *contrary to the reality*, and simply states what would have been the result, if the condition had been fulfilled:

Sāpientia non expētērētur, si nihil effīcēret, *Wisdom would not be sought (as it is), if it accomplished nothing.* Cic. Si optīma tēnere possēmus, haud sāne consīlio ēgērēmus, *If we were able to secure the highest good, we should not indeed need counsel.* Cic. Si vōlūisset, dīmīcasset, *If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep. Nunquam ābisset, nīsi sibi viam mūnīvisset, *He would never have gone, if he had not prepared for himself a way.* Cic. See also 486. 7.

1. Here the *Imperfect* relates to Present time, as in the first and second examples: the *Pluperfect* to Past time, as in the third and fourth examples.

2. In the Periphrastic forms in *rus* and *dus* and in expressions of *Duty*, *Necessity*, and *Ability*, the *Perfect* and *Imperfect Indicative* sometimes occur in the conclusion.

Quid fūtūrum fuit, si plebs āgītāri coepta esset, *What would have been the result, if the plebeians had begun to be agitated?* Liv. See also 512. 2.

1) When the context, irrespective of the condition, requires the Subjunctive, the tense remains unchanged without reference to the tense of the principal verb:

Adeo est inōpia coactus ut, nīsi timuisset, Galliam rēpētītūrus fuērīt, *He was so pressed by want that if he had not feared, he would have returned to Gaul.* Liv.

Here *rēpētītūrus fuērīt* is in the Subj. not because it is in a conditional sentence, but because it is the Subj. of Result with *ut*; but it is in the Perfect, because, if it were not dependent, the Perfect Indicative would have been used.

**511. MIXED FORMS.**—The Latin sometimes unites a condition belonging to one of the three regular forms with a conclusion belonging to another, thus producing certain Mixed Forms.

I. The Indicative sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Subjunctive in the Conclusion, but here the Subjunctive is generally dependent not upon the condition, but upon the very nature of the thought:

Pēream, si pōtērunt, *May I perish (subj. of desire, 487), if they shall be able.* Cic. Quid timeam, si beātus fūtūrus sum, *Why should I fear (486. II.), if I am to be happy?* Cic.

II. The Subjunctive sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion. Here the Indicative often gives the effect of reality to the conclusion, even though in fact dependent upon contingencies; but see also 512:

Dies dēficiet, si vēlim causam dēfendēre, *The day would (will) fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.* Cic. Vicērāmus nīsi rēcēpīssēt Antōnium, *We had conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic.

1. The *Future Indicative* is often thus used in consequence of its near relationship in force to the Subjunctive, as whatever is Future is more or less contingent. See first example.

2. The *Historical tenses*, especially the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used, for effect, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so, as in the last example.

3. Conditional sentences made up partly of the *second form* (509) and partly of the *third* are rare.

**512. SUBJUNCTIVE AND INDICATIVE.**—The combination of the Subjunctive in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion is often only apparent. Thus

1. When the truth of the conclusion is not in reality affected by the condition, as when *si* has the force of *even if, although* :

*Si hoc plāceat, tāmen vōlunt, Even if (although) this pleases them, they still wish.* Cic.

2. When that which stands as the conclusion is such only in appearance, the real conclusion being understood. This occurs

1) With the Indicative of *Dībeo, Possum*, and the like :

*Quem, si ulla in te pietas esset, cōlère dēbēbas, Whom you ought to have honored (and would have honored), if there were any filial affection in you.* Cic. *Dēlēri exercitus pōtuit, si persēcūti victōres essent, The army might have been destroyed (and would have been), if the victors had pursued.* Liv.

2) With the Imperfect and Perfect Indicative of other verbs, especially if in a periphrastic conjugation or accompanied by *Paene* or *Prōpe* :

*Rēlictūri agros ērant, nīsi littēras mīsisset, They were about to leave their lands (and would have done so), had he not sent a letter.* Cic. *Pons iter paene hostībūs dēdit, nī ūnus vir fuisset, The bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy (and would have done so), had there not been one man.* Liv.

**513. RELATIVE INVOLVING CONDITION.**—The relative takes the subjunctive when it is equivalent to *si* or *dum* with the subjunctive :

*Errat longe, qui crēdat, etc., He greatly errs who supposes, etc., i. e., if or provided any one supposes, he greatly errs.* Ter. *Haec qui vīdeat, cōgātur, If any one should see these things, he would be compelled.* Cic.

## V. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCESSIONS.

**514.** A concessive clause is one which concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although* :

*Quamquam intelligunt, though they understand.* Cic.



## RULE XLII.—Subjunctive of Concession.

515. The Subjunctive of Concession is used,

I. With *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum*, although :

*Licet* irrideat, plus tamen ratio valebit, *Though he may deride, reason will yet avail more.* Cic. *Ut* desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas, *Though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid.

II. With *qui* = *quum* (*licet*) *is*, *quum* *ego*, etc., though he :

Absolvite Verrem, qui (*quum* *is*) se fateatur pecunias cepisse, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses (who may confess) that he has accepted money.* Cic.

III. Generally with *etsi*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi* :

Quod sentiunt, etsi optimum sit, tamen non audent dicere, *They do not dare to state what they think, even if (though) it be most excellent.* Cic.

516. Concessive Clauses may be divided into three classes :

I. Concessive Clauses with *quamquam* in the best prose generally take the Indicative :

*Quamquam* intelligunt, tamen nunquam dicunt, *Though they understand, they never speak.* Cic.

1. The *Subjunctive* may of course follow *quamquam*, whenever the thought itself, irrespective of the concessive character of the clause, requires that mood (455).

2. The *Subjunctive*, even in the best prose, sometimes occurs with *quamquam* where we should expect the Indicative: *Quamquam* ne id quidem suspicionem habuerit, *Though not even that gave rise to any suspicion.* Cic.

3. In poetry and some of the later prose, the subjunctive with *quamquam* is not uncommon. In Tacitus it is the prevailing construction.

4. *Quamquam* and *etsi* sometimes have the force of *yet*, *but yet*, and *yet*: *Quamquam* quid loquor, *And yet what do I say?* Cic.

II. Concessive Clauses with *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum*, although ;—*qui* = *quum* (or *licet*) *is*, *ego*, *tu*, etc., take the Subjunctive :

Non tu possis, quantumvis excellas, *You would not be able, however much (although) you excel.* Cic. Ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est, *Though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. See 518.

I. *UT* AND *NE*.—This concessive use of *ut* and *ne* may readily be explained by supplying some verb like *fac* or *sine*: thus, *ut* desint vires (515. I.) = *fac* or *sine* *ut* desint vires, *make or grant that strength fails.* See 459.

The *Concessive Particle* is sometimes omitted :

Sed habeat, tamen, *But grant that it has it, yet.* Cic.

*UT*—*SIC* OR *ITA*, *as—so*, *though—yet*, does not require the subjunctive.

2. **QUAMVIS AND QUANTUMVIS.**—These are strictly adverbs, in the sense of *however much*, but they generally give to the clause the force of a concession. When used with their simple adverbial force to qualify adjectives, they do not affect the mood of the clause: *quamvis multi*, however many.

3. **MOOD WITH QUAMVIS.**—In Cicero and the best prose, *quamvis* takes the Subjunctive almost without exception, generally also in Livy and Nepos; but in the poets and later prose writers it often admits the Indicative:

Erat dignitate regia, *quamvis cärebat nōmine*, *He was of royal dignity, though he was without the name.* Nep.

4. **RELATIVE IN CONCESSIONS.**—The relative denoting concession is equivalent to *licet*, or *quum*, in the sense of *though*, with a Demonstrative or Personal pronoun, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason: *qui* = *licet* (*quum*) *is*, *licet ego, tu*, etc. See examples under the Rule, 515.

III. Concessive Clauses with the compounds of *si*: *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tāmet si* in the use of Moods and Tenses conform to the rule for conditional clauses with *si*:

*Etsi nihil hābeat in se glōria, tāmen virtutem sēquitur*, *Though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue.* Cic. *Etiamsi mors oppōtenda esset*, *even if death ought to be met.* Cic.

## VI. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE AND TIME.

### RULE XLIII.—Subjunctive of Cause.

517. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason is used,

I. With **quum** (*eum*), since; **qui** = **quum is**, etc.:

*Quum vita mētus plēna sit*, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. *Quae quum ita sint*, *perge*, *Since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. *O vis veritātis, quae (quum ea) se dēfendat*, *O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic.

II. With **quod**, **quia**, **quōniam**, **quando**, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

*Socrātes accūsātus est, quod corruppēret jūventutem*, *Socrates was accused, because (on the alleged ground that) he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

### Causal Clauses with Quum and Qui.

518. **QUUM.**—*Quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes,

I. **CAUSE OR CONCESSION:**

*Quum sint in nōbis rātio, prūdētia*, *since there is in us reason and prudence.* Cic. *Phōcion fuit pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset*, *Phocion was poor, though he might have been very rich.* Nep. See also 515.

## II. TIME with the accessory notion of CAUSE or CONCESSION :

Quum dīmīcāret, occīsus est, *When he engaged battle, he was slain.* Nep. Zēnōnem, quum Athēnis essem, audiēbam frēquenter, *I often heard Zeno, when I was at Athens.* Cic.

1. QUUM IN NARRATION.—*Quum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is very frequent in narration even in temporal clauses. See examples under II. above.

This use of *Quum* with the Subjunctive may in most instances be readily explained by the fact that it involves *Cause* as well as *Time*. Thus *quum dīmīcāret*, in the first example, not only states the *time* of the action—*occīsus est*, but also its *cause* or *occasion*: the engagement was the *occasion* of his death. So with *quum essem*, as presence in Athens was an indispensable condition of hearing Zeno. But in some instances the notion of *Cause* or *Concession* is not at all apparent.

2. QUUM WITH TEMPUS, ETC.—*Quum* with the Subjunctive is sometimes used to characterize a period :

Id saeculum quum plēna Graecia poētārum esset, *that age when* (such that) *Greece was full of poets.* Cic. Erit tempus, quum dēsīdēres, *the time will come, when you will desire.* Cic. So without *tempus*, etc. : Fuit quum arbitrārer, *there was* (a time) *when I thought.* Cic.

3. QUUM WITH INDICATIVE.—*Quum* denoting time merely, with perhaps a few exceptions in narration, takes the Indicative :

Quum quiescunt, prōbant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Pāruit, quum nēcesse ērat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic.

519. QUI, CAUSE OR REASON.—A Relative clause denoting cause or reason, is equivalent to a Causal clause with *Quum*, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason :

O fortunāte ādōlescens, qui (*quum tu*) tuae virtūtis Hōmērum praecōnem invēnēris, *O fortunate youth, since you* (lit. who) *have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.* Cic.

1. EQUIVALENTS.—In such clauses, *qui* is equivalent to *quum ēgo*, *quum tu*, *quum is*, etc.

2. INDICATIVE.—When the statement is to be viewed as a *fact* rather than as a *reason*, the Indicative is used :

Hābeo sēnectūti grātiā, quae mihi sermōnis āvīdītātem auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic.

3. QUI WITH CONJUNCTIONS.—When a conjunction accompanies the relative, the mood varies with the conjunction. Thus,

1) The Subjunctive is generally used with *quum*, *quippe*, *ut*, *utpōte* :

Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. Quippe qui blandiatur, *since he flatters.* Cic. Ut qui cōlōni essent, *since they were colonists.* Cic.

But the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact*.

2) The Indicative is generally used with *quia*, *quōniam* :

Quae quia certa esse non possunt, *since these things cannot be sure.* Cic. Qui quōniam intellīgi nōluit, *since he did not wish to be understood.* Cic.

*Causal Clauses with Quod, Quia, Quoniam, Quando.*

520. *Quod, quia, quoniam, and quando* generally take,

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively on one's own authority* :

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed*. Cic. Gaude quod spectant te, *Rejoice that (because) they behold you*. Hor.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully, or on another's authority* :

Aristides nonne expulsus est patria, quod justus esset, *Was not Aristides banished because (on the alleged ground that) he was just?* Cic.

1. QUOD WITH DICO, ETC.—*Dico* and *puto* are often in the Subjunctive instead of the verb depending upon them :

Quod se bellum gesturos dicerent = quod bellum gesturi essent, ut dicebant, *because they were about, as they said, to wage war*. Caes.

2. CLAUSES WITH QUOD UNCONNECTED. See 554. IV.

3. NON QUO, ETC.—*Non quo, non quod, non quin*, rarely *non quia*, also *quam quod*, etc., are used with the Subjunctive to denote that something was *not* the true reason :

Non quo habērem quod scribērem, *not because (that) I had anything to write*. Cic. Non quod dōleant, *not because they are pained*. Cic. Quia nēquiverat quam quod ignorāret, *because he had been unable, rather than because he did not know*. Liv.

4. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. See 485 and 486.

**RULE XLIV.—Time with Cause.**

521. The Subjunctive of Time with the accessory notion of Cause or Purpose is used,

I. With *dum, donec, quoad*, until :

Exspectas dum dicat, *You are waiting till he speaks*, i. e., that he may speak. Cic. Ea continebis quoad te videam, *You will keep them till I see you*. Cic.

II. With *antēquam, priusquam*, before, before that :

Antēquam de re publica dicam, exponam consilium, *I will set forth my plan before I (can) speak of the republic*, i. e., preparatory to speaking of the republic. Cic. Priusquam incipias, *before you begin*. Sall.

1. EXPLANATION.—Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time* : *dum dicat* is nearly equivalent to *ut dicat*, which is also often used after *expecto*. *Antēquam dicam* is nearly equivalent to *ut postea dicam* : *I will set forth my views, that I may afterwards speak of the republic*.

2. WITH OTHER CONJUNCTIONS.—The Subjunctive may of course be used in any temporal clause, when the thought, irrespective of the temporal particle, requires that mood; see 486. III.

Ubi res poscēret, *whenever the case might require.* Liv.

## 522. DUM, DONEC, and QUOAD take

I. The *Indicative*,—(1) in the sense of *while, as long as*, and (2) in the sense of *until*, if the action is viewed as an *actual fact*:

Dum lēges vigēbant, *as long as the laws were in force.* Cic. Quoad rēnūtiātum est, *until it was (actually) announced.* Nep.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed not so much as a fact as something *desired or proposed*:

Diffērant, dum dēfervescat ira, *Let them defer it, till their anger cools,* i. e., that it may cool. Cic. See also examples under the rule.

1. DONEC, IN TACITUS, generally takes the Subjunctive:

Rhēnus servat viōlentiam cursus, dōnec Oceāno misceātur, *The Rhine preserves the rapidity of its current, till it mingles with the ocean.* Tac.

2. DONEC, IN LIVY, occurs with the Subjunctive even in the sense of *while*, but with the accessory notion of *cause*:

Nihil trēpīdābant dōnec ponte āgērentur, *They did not fear at all while (and because) they were driven on the bridge.* Liv.

## 523. ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM generally take,

I. The *Indicative*, when they denote mere priority of time:

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic. Antēquam in Siciliam vēni, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when they denote a dependence of one event upon another. Thus,

1. In any *Tense*, when the accessory notion of *purpose or cause* is involved:

Priusquam incīpias, consulto ōpus est, *Before you begin there is need of deliberation,* i. e., as preparatory to your beginning. Sall. Tempestas minūatur, antēquam surgat, *The tempest threatens, before it rises,* i. e., the threatening of the tempest naturally precedes its rising. Sen.

2. In the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as the regular construction in *narration*, because the one event is generally treated as the occasion or natural antecedent of the other. See also 471. 4.

Antēquam urbem cāpērent, *before they took the city.* Liv. Priusquam de meo adventu audire pōtuisent, in Mācēdōniam perrexi, *Before they were able to hear of my approach, I went into Macedonia.* Cic.

3. *Prīdie quam* takes the same moods as *Priusquam*.

1) INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.—With *antēquam* and *priusquam*, the Indicative and Subjunctive are sometimes used without any apparent difference of meaning, but the Subjunctive probably denotes a closer connection between the two events:

Ante de incommōdis dico, pauca dicenda, *Before I (actually) speak of disadvantages, a few things should be mentioned.* Cic. Antēquam de re pūblica dicam, expōnam consilium, *Before I speak of the republic, I will set forth my plan.* Cic.

2) ANTE—QUAM, PRIUS—QUAM.—The two parts of which *antēquam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam* are compounded are often separated, so that *ante*, *prius*, or *post* stands in the principal clause and *quam* in the subordinate clause:

Paucis ante diēbus, quam Syracūsae cāpērentur, *a few days before Syracuse was taken.* Liv. See *Timesis*, 704. IV. 3.

## VII. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

524. A clause which involves a question without directly asking it, is called an indirect or dependent question.

### RULE XLV.—Indirect Questions.

525. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions:

Quid dies fērat incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Quaeritur, cur doctissīmi hōmīnes dissentiant, *It is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. Quaesiēras, nonne pūtārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Quālis sit ānīmus, ānīmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. WITH INTERROGATIVES.—*Indirect* or *Dependent* questions, like those not dependent, are introduced by interrogative words: *quid*, *cur*, *nonne*, *quālis*, etc.; rarely by *sī*, *sive*, *seu*, *whether*; *ut*, *how*. See examples above.

2. SUBSTANTIVE FORCE.—*Indirect* questions are used *substantively*, and generally, though not always, supply the place of subjects or objects of verbs. But an Accusative, referring to the same person or thing as the subject of the question, is sometimes inserted after the leading verb.

Ego illum nescio qui fuērit, *I do not know (him), who he was.* Ter.

3. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—An *indirect* question may be readily changed to a *direct* or *independent* question.

Thus the direct question involved in the first example is: *Quid dies fēret*, *What will a day bring forth?* So in the second: *Cur doctissīmi hōmīnes dissentiunt*, *Why do the most learned men disagree?*

4. SUBJUNCTIVE OMITTED.—After *nescio quis*, *I know not who* = *quīdam*, *some one*; *nescio quōmōdo*, *I know not how*, etc., as also after *mīrum quantum*, it is wonderful how much = wonderfully much, very much, there is an ellipsis of the Subjunctive:

Nescio quid ānīmus praesāgit, *The mind forebodes, I know not what (it forebodes, praesāgiat, understood).* Ter. Id mīrum quantum prōfuit, *This profited, it is wonderful how much, i. e., it wonderfully profited.* Liv.

5. INDIRECT QUESTIONS DISTINGUISHED.—Indirect Questions must be carefully distinguished from certain similar forms. Thus,

1) *From Relative Clauses*.—Clauses introduced by Relative Pronouns or Relative Adverbs always have an antecedent or correlative expressed or understood, and are never, as a whole, the subject or object of a verb, while Indirect Questions are generally so used :

Dicam quod sentio (*rel. clause*). *I will tell that which (id quod) I think.*  
Cic. Dicam quid intelligam (*indirect question*), *I will tell what I know.*  
Cic. Quaeramus ubi mālōficium est, *Let us seek there (ibi) where the crime is.* Cic.

In the first and third examples, *quod sentio* and *ubi—est* are not questions, but relative clauses; *id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*, and *ibi* as the antecedent or correlative of *ubi*; but in the second example, *quid intelligam* is an indirect question and the object of *dicam*: *I will tell (what?) what I know*, i. e., will answer that question.

2) *From Direct Questions and Exclamations* :

Quid āgendum est? Nescio, *What is to be done? I know not.* Cic.  
Vide! quam conversa res est, *See! how changed is the case.* Cic.

6. INDICATIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—The Indicative in Indirect Questions is sometimes used in the poets; especially in *Plautus* and *Terence* :

Si mēmōrāre vēlim, quam fidēli ānimo fui, possum, *If I wish to mention how much fidelity I showed, I am able.* Ter.

7. QUESTIONS IN THE ORATIO OBLIQUA. See 530. II. 2.

526. SINGLE AND DOUBLE QUESTIONS.—Indirect questions, like those which are direct (346. II.), may be either single or double.

I. An Indirect Single Question is generally introduced by some interrogative word—either a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the particles *ne*, *nonne*, *num*. Here *num* does not imply negation :

Rōgītāt qui vir esset (481. IV.), *He asked who he was.* Liv. Epāmīon-das quaesīvit, salvusne esset clipeus, *Epaminondas inquired whether his shield was safe.* Cic. Dūbīto num dēbeam, *I doubt whether I ought.* Plin. See also the examples under the Rule, 525.

II. An Indirect Double Question (*whether—or*) admits of two constructions :

1. It generally takes *utrum* or *ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second :

Quaerītūr, virtus suamne propter dignitātem, an propter fructus āliquos expētātūr, *It is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

2. But sometimes it omits the particle in the first member, and takes *an* or *ne* in the second. Other forms are rare :

Quaerītūr, nātūra an doctrīna possit effīci virtus, *It is asked whether virtue can be secured by nature or by education.* Cic. See also 516. 1. 1).

1) In the second member, *necne*, sometimes *an non*, is used in the sense of *or not*: *Săpientia beātos efficiat necne*, *quaestio est*, *Whether or not wisdom makes men happy, is a question*. Cic.

2) *An*, in the sense of *whether not*, implying an affirmative, is used after verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty: *dūbīto an*, *nescio an*, *haud scio an*, I doubt whether not, I know not whether not = I am inclined to think; *dūbium est an*, *incertum est an*, it is uncertain whether not = it is probable:

*Dūbīto an Thrāsýbūlum primum omnium pōnam*, *I doubt whether I should not place Thrasybulus first of all*, i. e., I am inclined to think I should. Nep.

3) *An* sometimes has the force of *aut*, perhaps by the omission of *incertum est*, as used above:

*Simōnides an quis ālius*, *Simonides or some other one*. Cic.

## VIII. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

### RULE XLVI.—Attraction.

527. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive:

*Vēreor, ne, dum mīnuēre vēlim lābōrem, augeam*, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it*. Cic. *Tempus est hujusmodi, ut, ūbi quisque sit, ibi esse mīnime vēlit*, *The time is of such a character that every one wishes to be least of all where he is*. Cic. *Mos est, ut dicat sententiam, qui vēlit*, *The custom is that he who wishes expresses his opinion*. Cic.

1. APPLICATION.—This rule is applicable to clauses introduced by conjunctions, adverbs, or relatives. Thus, in the examples, the clauses introduced by *dum*, *ubi*, and *qui*, take the subjunctive, because they are dependent upon clauses which have the subjunctive.

2. INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.—Such clauses generally take,

1) The *Indicative*, when they are in a measure *parenthetical* or give special prominence to the *fact* stated:

*Mīlites mīsīt, ut eos qui fūgērānt persēquērentur*, *He sent soldiers to pursue those who had fled*, i. e., the fugitives. Caes. *Tanta vis prōbitātis est, ut eam, vel in iis quos nunquam vīdīmus, diligāmus*, *Such is the force of integrity that we love it even in those whom we have never seen*. Cic.

The Indicative with *dum* is very common, especially in the poets and historians:

*Fuēre qui, dum dūbitat Scaevīnus, hortārentur Pisonem*, *There were those who exhorted Piso, while Scaevinus hesitated*. Tac. See also 467. 4.

2) The *Subjunctive*, when the clauses are essential to the general thought of the sentence, as in the examples under the rule.

3. AFTER INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—The principle just stated (2) applies also to the use of Moods in clauses dependent upon the Infinitive. This



often explains the Subjunctive in a condition belonging to an Infinitive, especially with *non possum* :

Nec bōnitas esse pōtest, si non per se expētātur, *Nor can goodness exist (= it is not possible that), if it is not sought for itself.* Cic.

But clauses dependent upon the Infinitive are found most frequently in the *Oratio Obliqua* and are accordingly provided for by 529.

## IX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE,—

### *Oratio Obliqua.*

528. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Obliqua* :

Plātōnem fērunt in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Respondeo te dōlōrem ferre mōdērāte, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. Utilem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

1. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—In distinction from the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Obliqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the Direct Discourse—*Oratio Recta*. Thus in the first example, *Plātōnem in Itāliam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse ; in the direct, i. e., in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be : *Plāto in Itāliam vēnit.*

2. QUOTATION.—Words quoted without change belong of course to the Direct Discourse :

Rex “duumvīros” inquit “sēcundum lēgem fācio,” *The king said, “I appoint duumvirs according to law.”* Liv.

## RULE XLVII.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

529. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the *Oratio Obliqua* :

Ad postūlāta Caesāris respondit, cur vēnīret (*direct*: cur vēnis ?), *To the demands of Caesar he replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scribit Lābiōno cum lēgiōne vēniat (*direct*: cum lēgiōne vēni), *He writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion.* Caes. Hippias glōriātus est, annūlum quem hābēret (*direct*: hābeo) se sua mānu confēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

NOTE.—For convenience of reference the following outline of the use of Moods, Tenses, Pronouns, etc. in the *Oratio Obliqua* is here inserted.

**530. MOODS IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.**—The Principal clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, undergo the following changes of Mood :

**I. When *Declarative*, they take the Infinitive (551) :**

*Dicēbat ānimos esse dīvīnos* (direct: *ānīmī sunt dīvīnī*), *He was wont to say that souls were divine.* Cic. *Plātōnem Tārentum vēnisse rēpērio* (*Plāto Tārentum vēnit*), *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. *Cāto mīrārī se (mīror) ālēbat*, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic.

**II. When *Interrogative* or *Imperative*, they generally take the Subjunctive according to Rule XLVII.**

**1. VERB OMITTED.**—The verb on which the Infinitive depends is often omitted, or only implied in some preceding verb or expression ; especially after the Subjunctive of Purpose :

*Pŷthia praecepit ut Miltiādem impērātōrem sūmērent* ; *incepta prospēra fūtūra*, *Pythia commanded that they should take Miltiades as their commander, (telling them) that their efforts would be successful.* Nep.

**2. RHETORICAL QUESTIONS.**—Questions which are such only in form, requiring no answer, are generally construed, according to sense, in the Infinitive. They are sometimes called Rhetorical questions, as they are often used for Rhetorical effect instead of assertions : thus *num possit*, can he? for *non pōtest*, he can not ; *quid sit turpius*, what is more base? for *nihil est turpius*, nothing is more base.

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or third person :

*Respondit num mēmōriam dēpōnēre posse*, *He replied, could he lay aside the recollection.* Caes. Here the direct question would be: *Num mēmōriam dēpōnēre possim?*

**3. IMPERATIVE CLAUSES WITH THE INFINITIVE.** See 551. II. 1.

**531. MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.**—The Subordinate clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, put their finite verbs in the Subjunctive :

*Orābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret quod prēmērentur* (direct: *nōbis auxilium fer, quod prēmimur*), *They prayed that he would bring them help, because they were oppressed.* Caes.

**1. INFINITIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.**—It must be remembered (453), that Relative clauses, though subordinate in form, sometimes have the force of Principal clauses. When thus used in the Oratio Oblīqua, they may be construed with the Infinitive :

*Ad eum dēfertur, esse cīvem Rōmānum qui quōrērētur: quem (= et eum) asservātum esse*, *It was reported to him that there was a Roman citizen who made a complaint, and that he had been placed under guard.* Cic. So also comparisons: *Te suspīcor iisdem, quibus me ipsum, commōvēri*, *I suspect that you are moved by the same things as I am.* Cic.

2. INFINITIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.—The Infinitive occurs, especially in Livy and Tacitus, even in clauses after *quia*, *quum*, *quamquam*, and some other conjunctions :

Dicit, se moenibus inclūsos tēnēre eos; *quia per agros vāgārī*, *He says that he keeps them shut up within the walls, because (otherwise) they would wander through the fields.* Liv. See also 551. I. 5 and 6.

3. INDICATIVE IN PARENTHETICAL CLAUSES.—Clauses may be introduced parenthetically in the oratio obliqua without strictly forming a part of it, and may accordingly take the Indicative :

Rēfērunt silvam esse, quae appellātur Bācēnis, *They report that there is a forest which is called Bacenis.* Caes.

4. INDICATIVE IN CLAUSES NOT PARENTHETICAL.—Sometimes clauses not parenthetical take the Indicative to give prominence to the *fact* stated. This occurs most frequently in Relative clauses :

Certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes discessisse, *He was informed that all had withdrawn from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls.* Caes.

532. TENSES.—Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua generally conform to the ordinary rules for Infinitive and Subjunctive Tenses (480, 540), but the law of Sequence of Tenses admits of certain qualifications :

1. The Present and Perfect may be used even after a Historical tense, to impart a more lively effect to the narrative :

Caesar respondit, si obsides sibi dentur, sēse pācem esse factūrum, *Caesar replied, that if hostages should be given him, he would make peace.* Caes.

2. In Conditional sentences of the third form (510),

1) The condition retains the Imperfect or Pluperfect without reference to the tense of the Principal verb ;

2) The Conclusion changes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive into the Periphrastic Infinitives in *rus esse* and *rus fuisse* :

Censes Pompēium laetātūrum fuisse, si sciret, *Do you think Pompey would have rejoiced, if he had known?* Cic. Clāmītābat, si ille ādesset, ventūros esse, *He cried out that they would come, if he were present.* Caes.

But the Regular Infinitive, instead of the periphrastic forms, sometimes occurs in this construction, especially in expressions of *Duty*, etc. (475. 4).

3. Conditional Sentences of the second form (509), after Historical tenses, sometimes retain in their conditional clauses the Present or Perfect and sometimes change it to the Imperfect or Pluperfect, according to the Rule for Sequence of Tenses (480) :

Respondit, si expēriri vēlint, pārātum esse, *He replied, if they wished to make the trial he was ready.* Caes. Lēgātōs mittit, si ita fēcisset, āmicītiām fūtūram, *He sent messengers saying that, if he would do thus, there would be friendship.* Caes.

Here *mittit* is the Historical Present. See 467. III.

4. The Future Perfect in a Subordinate clause of the Direct discourse is changed in the Indirect into the Perfect Subjunctive after a Principal tense, and into the Pluperfect Subjunctive after a Historical tense :

Agunt ut dimicent ; ibi imperium fore, unde victoria fuerit, *They arrange that they shall fight ; that the sovereignty shall be on the side which shall win the victory* (whence the victory may have been). Liv. Apparebat regnaturum, qui viceret, *It was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

**533. PRONOUNS, ADVERBS, ETC.**—Pronouns and adverbs, as also the persons of the verbs, are often changed in passing from the *Direct* discourse to the *Indirect* :

Gloriatus est annulum se sua manu confecisse (*direct* : annulum ego mea manu confeci), *He boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic.

1. Pronouns of first and second persons are often changed to the third. Thus above *ego* in the direct discourse becomes *se*, and *mea* becomes *sua*. In the same way *hic* and *iste* are often changed to *ille*.

2. Adverbs meaning *here* or *now* are often changed to those meaning *there* or *then* ; *nunc* to *tum* ; *hic* to *illic*.

3. In the use of pronouns observe

1) That references to the **SPEAKER** whose words are reported are made, if of the 1st Pers. by *ego*, *meus*, *noster*, etc., if of the 2d Pers. by *tu*, *tuus*, etc., and if of the 3d Pers. by *sui*, *suus*, *ipse*, etc., though sometimes by *hic*, *is*, *ille*.

2) That references to the **REPORTER**, or **Author**, are made by *ego*, *meus*, etc.

3) That references to the **PERSON ADDRESSED** by the reporter are made by *tu*, *tuus*, etc.

Ariovistus respondit nos esse iniquos qui se interpellaremus (*direct* : vos estis iniqui qui me, etc.), *Ariovistus replied that we were unjust who interrupted him.* Caes.

Here *nos* refers to the *Reporter*, Caesar, *we Romans*. *Se* refers to the *Speaker*, Ariovistus. In the second example under 523, *te* refers to the *Person Addressed*.

## SECTION VII.

### IMPERATIVE.

#### I. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

**534.** The Imperative has but two Tenses :

I. The **PRESENT** has only the Second person, and corresponds to the English Imperative :

Justitiam cole, *Practise justice.* Cic. Perge, Cătilina, *Go, Catiline.* Cic.

II. The Future has the Second and Third persons, and corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall*, or to the Imperative *let* :

Si consules appellantor, *They shall be called consuls*, or *let them be called consuls*. Cic. Quod dixero, facitote, *You shall do what I say* (shall have said). Ter.

1. FUTURE FOR PRESENT.—The Future Imperative is sometimes used where we should expect the Present :

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebratote illos dies, *Since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days*. Cic.

This is particularly common in certain verbs: thus *scio* has only the forms of the Future in common use.

2. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Imperative Present is often used in poetry, and sometimes in prose, of an action which belongs entirely to the future :

Ubi aciem videris, tum ordines dissipa, *When you shall see the line of battle, then scatter the ranks*. Liv.

## II. USE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

### RULE XLVIII.—Imperative.

535. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties :

Iustitiam cõle, *Practise justice*. Cic. Tu ne cede malis, *Do not yield to misfortunes*. Virg. Si quid in te peccavi, ignosce, *If I have sinned against you, pardon me*. Cic.

1. CIRCUMLOCUTIONS.—Instead of the simple Imperative, several circumlocutions are common :

1) *Cura ut, fac ut, fac*, each with the Subjunctive :

*Cura ut venias*, *See that you come*. Cic. See 489.

2) *Fac ne, cave ne, cave*, with the Subjunctive :

*Cave facias*, *Beware of doing it*, or *see that you do not do it*. Cic.

3) *Noli, noli te*, with the Infinitive :

*Noli imitari*, *do not imitate*. Cic. See 538. 2.

2. IMPERATIVE CLAUSE FOR CONDITION.—An Imperative clause may be used instead of a Conditional clause :

Lacesse; jam videbis furem, *Provoke him* (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic*. Cic.

3. IMPERATIVE SUPPLIED.—The place of the Imperative may be variously supplied :

1) By the Subjunctive of Desire (487) :

Sint beati, *Let them be happy*. Cic. Impii ne audeant, *Let not the impious dare*. Cic.

2) By the Indicative Future :

Quod optimum vidēbitur, faciēs, *You will do* (for Imper. do) *what shall seem best.* Cic.

536. The Imperative Present, like the English Imperative, is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties. See examples under the Rule.

537. The Imperative Future is used,

I. In commands involving future rather than present action :

Rem penditōte, *You shall consider the subject.* Cic. Cras pētito; dābitur, *Ask to-morrow; it shall be granted.* Plaut.

II. In laws, orders, precepts, etc. :

Consūles nēmīni pārento, *The consuls shall be subject to no one.* Cic. Sālus pōpūli suprēma lex esto, *The safety of the people shall be the supreme law.* Cic.

538. IMPERATIVE IN PROHIBITIONS.—In prohibitions or negative commands,

1. The negative *ne*, rarely *non*, accompanies the Imperative, and if a connective is required, *nēve*, or *neu*, is generally used, rarely *nēque* :

Tu ne cēde mālīs, *Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. Hōmīnem mortuum in urbe ne sēpēlito, *Thou shalt not bury or burn a dead body in the city.* Cic.

2. Instead of *ne* with the Present Imperative, the best prose writers generally use *nōli* and *nōlite* with the Infinitive :

Nōlite pūtāre (*for ne pūtāte*), *do not think* (be unwilling to think). Cic.

## SECTION VIII.

### INFINITIVE.

539. The treatment of the Latin Infinitive embraces four topics :

I. The Tenses of the Infinitive.

II. The Subject of the Infinitive.

III. The Predicate after the Infinitive.

IV. The Construction of the Infinitive.

## I. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

540. The Infinitive has three tenses, *Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future*. They express however not absolute, but *relative* time, denoting respectively Present, Past, or Future time, relatively to the Principal verb.

1. PECULIARITIES.—These tenses present the leading peculiarities specified under these tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

541. The PRESENT INFINITIVE represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Cūpio me esse clēmentem, *I desire to be mild*. Cic. Māluit se dilīgi quam mētui, *He preferred to be loved rather than feared*. Nep.

1. REAL TIME.—Hence the real time denoted by the Present Infinitive is the time of the verb on which it depends.

2. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Present is sometimes used for the Future and sometimes has little or no reference to time :

Cras argentum dare dixit. *He said he would give the silver to-morrow*. Ter.

3. PRESENT WITH DEBEO, POSSUM, ETC.—After the past tenses of *dēbeo*, *oportet*, *possum*, and the like, the Present Infinitive is used where our idiom would lead us to expect the Perfect; sometimes also after *mēmīni*, and the like :

Dēbuit officiōsior esse. *He ought to have been more attentive*. Cic. Id pōtuit facere, *He might have done this*. Cic.

542. The PERFECT INFINITIVE represents the action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Plātōnem fērant in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic. Consciū mihi ēram, nihil a me commissum esse, *I was conscious to myself that no offence had been committed by me*. Cic.

1. REAL TIME.—Hence the real time denoted by the Perfect Infinitive is that of the Perfect tense, if dependent upon the Present, and that of the Pluperfect, if dependent upon a Historical tense, as in the examples.

2. PERFECT FOR PRESENT.—In the poets the Perfect Infinitive is sometimes used for the Present, rarely in prose :

Tētigisse timent pōctam, *They fear to touch (to have touched) the poet*. Hor.

3. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—The Passive Infinitive with *esse* sometimes denotes the *result* of the action: *victus esse*, to have been vanquished, and so, to be a vanquished man. *Fuisse* for *esse* emphasizes the *completeness* of the action: *victus fuisse*, to have been vanquished. See 575. 1.

543. The FUTURE INFINITIVE represents the action as about to take place in time subsequent to that of the principal verb :

Brūtū vīsum iri a me pūto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me*. Cic. Orāculū dātū erat victrīces Athēnas fōre, *An oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious*. Cic.

Hence after a Principal tense the real time of the Future Infinitive is Future, but after a Historical tense the real time can be determined only by the context.

544. CIRCUMLOCUTION FOR FUTURE INFINITIVE.—Instead of the regular Future Infinitive, the circumlocution *fütürum esse ut*, or *före ut*, with the Subjunctive,—Present after a Principal tense, and Imperfect after a Historical tense,—is frequently used:

Spëro före ut contingat id nöbis, *I hope this will fall to our lot* (I hope it will come to pass that this may happen to us). Cic. Non spërävërat Hannibal, före ut ad se dëficerent, *Hannibal had not hoped that they would revolt to him*. Liv. See 556. II. 1.

1. CIRCUMLOCUTION NECESSARY.—*Fütürum esse ut*, or *före ut*, with the Subjunctive, for the Future Infinitive, is common in the Passive, and is moreover necessary in both voices in all verbs which want the Supine and the Participle in *rua*.

2. FORE UT WITH PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—Sometimes *före ut* with the Subjunctive, Perfect or Pluperfect, is used with the force of a Future Perfect; and in Passive and Deponent verbs, *före* with the Perfect Participle may be used with the same force:

Dico me sätis ädeptum före, *I say that I shall have obtained enough*. Cic.

3. FUTURUM FUISSE UT WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Fütürum fuisse ut* with the Subjunctive may be used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of the third form when made dependent:

Nisi nuntii essent alläti, existimäbant fütürum fuisse, ut oppidum ämittëretur, *They thought that the town would have been lost, if tidings had not been brought*. Caes. See 553. 2.

## II. SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

### RULE XLIX.—Subject.

545. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

Sentimus cälëre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot*. Cic. Plätönem Tärentum vënisse rëpërio, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum*. Cic.

1. HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.—In lively description the Infinitive is sometimes used for the Indicative Imperfect. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative:

Hostes gaesa conjicëre, *The enemy hurled their javelins*. Caes.

The Historical Infinitive may often be explained by supplying *coepit* or *coepërunt*; but in most instances it is better to treat it simply as an *idiom* of the language.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The Subject of an Infinitive may be omitted:

1) When it denotes the same person or thing as the subject of the principal clause, or may be readily supplied from the context:

Magna nëgötia völnnt ägëre, *They wish to accomplish great undertakings*. Cic. Peccäre licet nëminì, *It is not lawful for any one to sin*. Cic.



2) When it is indefinite or general :

*Diligi jūcundum est, It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE OMITTED.—*Esse* and *fuisse* are often omitted in the compound forms of the Infinitive and with predicate adjectives, other infinitives less frequently (551. 5) :

*Andīvi sōlītum Fabricium, I have heard that Fabricius was wont.* Cic.  
*Spērāmus nōbis prōfūtūros, We hope to benefit you.* Cic.

### III. PREDICATE AFTER INFINITIVE.

546. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after an Infinitive regularly agrees with the Subject, expressed or understood (362.3) :

*Ego me Phīdīam esse malle, I should prefer to be Phidias.* Cic. *Trādītum est, Hōmērum caecum fuisse, It has been handed down by tradition that Homer was blind.* Cic. *Jūgurtha omnibus cārus esse (historical infinitive), Jugurtha was dear to all.* Sall.

547. A Predicate Noun or Adjective, after an Infinitive whose Subject is omitted, is often attracted into the Nominative or Dative :

I. It is attracted into the Nominative to agree with the Subject of the principal verb, when the latter is the same person or thing as the omitted Subject :

*Nōlo esse laudātor, I am unwilling to be an eulogist.* Cic. *Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo pōtest, No one can be happy without virtue.* Cic.

1. This occurs most frequently (1) after verbs of *duty, ability, courage, custom, desire, beginning, continuing, ending*, and the like—*dēbeo, possum, audeo, sōleo, cūpio, vōlo, mālo, nōlo, incipio, pergo, dēsīno*, etc., and (2) after various Passive verbs of *saying, thinking, finding, seeming*, and the like—*dicor, trādor, fēror—crēdor, existīmor, pūtor—rēpērior—videor*, etc.:

*Quis scientior esse dēbuit, Who ought to have been more learned?* Cic. *Pārens dici pōtest, He can be called a parent.* Cic. *Stoīcus esse vōluit, He wished to be a Stoic.* Cic. *Dēsīnant esse tīmīdi, Let them cease to be timid.* Cic. *Inventor esse dicītur, He is said to be the inventor.* Cic. *Prūdēns esse pūtabātur, He was thought to be prudent.* Cic.

2. Participles in the compound tenses of the Infinitive are also attracted :  
*Pollīcītus esse dicītur, He is said to have promised.* Cic.

II. The Predicate Noun or Adjective is sometimes attracted into the Dative to agree with a Dative in the principal clause, when the latter denotes the same person or thing as the omitted Subject :

*Patrīcio tribūno plēbis fieri non licēbat, It was not lawful for a patrician to be made tribune of the people.* Cic. *Mihi negligenti esse non licuit, It was not permitted me to be negligent.* Cic.

1. This is rare, but is the regular construction after *licet*, and sometimes occurs after *nēcesse est*, when used after *licet*, and occasionally in other connections :

Illis timīdis licet esse, nōbis nēcesse est fortibus viris esse, *It is permitted them to be timid, it is necessary for us to be brave men.* Liv. But,

2. Even with *Licet* the attraction does not always take place :

Ei consulem fieri licet, *It is lawful for him to be made consul.* Caes.

#### IV. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

548. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, has in general the construction of a Noun in the Nominative or Accusative, and is used,

I. As a Nominative—Subject of a Verb.

II. As an Accusative—Object of a Verb.

III. In Special Constructions.

##### *I. Infinitive as Subject.*

549. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as a Nominative, and is thus made the Subject of a sentence, according to Rule III.:

WITH SUBJECT.—*Fācīnus est vincēri cīvem Rōmānum, That a Roman citizen should be bound is a crime.* Cic. *Certum est liberos amāri, It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. *Lēgem brevem esse oportet, It is necessary that a law be brief.* Sen.

WITHOUT SUBJECT.—*Ars est difficīlis rem publicam regēre, To rule a state is a difficult art.* Cic. *Cārum esse jucundum est, It is pleasant to be held dear.* Cic. *Haec scīre jūvat, To know these things affords pleasure.* Sen. *Peccāre licet nēmīni, To sin is not lawful for any one.* Cic.

1. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.—When the subject is an Infinitive, the Predicate is either (1) a Noun or Adjective with *Sum*, or (2) an Impersonal verb or a verb used Impersonally. See the examples above.

1) *Tempus* = *tempestivum* is thus used with the Infinitive :

*Tempus est dicere, It is time to speak.* Cic.

2. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT OF AN INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may be the subject of another Infinitive :

*Intelligi nēcesse est esse deos, It must be understood that there are gods.* Cic. *Esse deos* is the subject of *intelligi*, and *intelligi esse deos* of *nēcesse est*.

3. INFINITIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—The Infinitive sometimes takes a Demonstrative as an attributive in agreement with it :

*Quībusdam hoc displicet philōsōphāri, This philosophizing (this to philosophize) displeases some persons.* Cic. *Vivere ipsum turpe est nōbis, To live is itself ignoble for us.* Cic.

4. PERSONAL CONSTRUCTION FOR IMPERSONAL.—With Passive verbs, instead of the Infinitive with a subject accusative, a Personal construction is

common, by which the Subject Accusative becomes the Subject Nominative of the leading verb :

*Aristides justissimus fuisse traditur* (for *Aristidem justissimum fuisse traditur*), *Aristides is said to have been most just.* Cic.

1) The Personal Construction is used, (1) regularly with *videor*, *jubeor*, *citor*, and the Simple Tenses of many verbs of saying, thinking, and the like—*dicor*, *trador*, *feror*, *perhibeor*, *putor*, *existimor*, etc., also with *coepit sum* and *desit sum* with a Passive Infinitive, and (2) sometimes with other verbs of saying, showing, perceiving, finding, and the like.

*Solem e mundo tollere videntur*, *They seem to remove the sun from the world.* Cic. *Platōnem audivisse dicitur*, *He is said to have heard Plato.* Cic. *Dii beati esse intelliguntur*, *The gods are understood to be happy.* Cic.

2) In successive clauses the Personal construction is often followed by the Impersonal.

3) *Videor* with or without a Dative often means *to fancy, think*: *mihi videor* or *videor*, *I fancy*; *ut videmur*, *as we fancy.*

## II. Infinitive as Object.

550. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as an Accusative, and is thus made the object of a verb, according to Rule V.:

*Te dicunt esse sapientem*, *They say that you are wise.* Cic. *Haec vitare cupimus*, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. *Mānere decrēvit*, *He decided to remain.* Nep.

551. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as object with a great variety of verbs. Thus,

I. With Verbs of Perceiving and Declaring,—*Verba Sentiendi et Declārandi.*

II. With Verbs of Wishing and Desiring.

III. With Verbs of Emotion and Feeling.

I. WITH VERBS OF PERCEIVING AND DECLARING.—*Sentimus cālere ignem*, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. *Mihi narravit te sollicitum esse*, *He told me that you were troubled.* Cic. *Scripterunt Thēmistoclem in Asiam transisse*, *They wrote that Themistocles had gone over to Asia.* Nep.

1. VERBA SENTIENDI.—*Verbs of Perceiving* include those which involve (1) the exercise of the senses: *audio*, *video*, *sentio*, etc., and (2) the exercise of the mind: thinking, believing, knowing, *cogito*, *puto*, *existimo*, *credo*, *spero*,—*intelligo*, *scio*, etc.

2. VERBA DECLARANDI.—*Verbs of Declaring* are such as state or communicate facts or thoughts: *dico*, *narro*, *nuntio*, *dōceo*, *ostendo*, *prōmitto*, etc.

3. EXPRESSIONS WITH THE FORCE OF VERBS.—The Infinitive with a subject may be used with expressions equivalent to verbs of perceiving and declaring. Thus:

With *fāma fert*, report says, *testis sum*, I am a witness = I testify; *conscius mihi sum*, I am conscious, I know:

*Nullam mihi relātam esse grātam, tu es testis*, *You are a witness* (can testify) *that no grateful return has been made to me.* Cic.

4. PARTICIPLE FOR INFINITIVE.—Verbs of Perceiving take the Accusative with the Present Participle, when the object is to be represented as actually seen, heard, etc., while engaged in a given action:

*Cātōnem vīdi in bibliōthēca sēdentem*, *I saw Cato sitting in the library.* Cic.

5. SUBJECTS COMPARED.—When two subjects with the same predicate are compared by means of *quam*, *idem*—*qui*, etc.; if the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Accusative with its Infinitive omitted may follow in the second:

*Plātōnem fērunt idem sensisse, quod Pŷthāgōram*, *They say that Plato held the same opinion as Pythagoras.* Cic.

6. PREDICATES COMPARED.—When two predicates with the same subject are compared and the Infinitive with a Subject is used in the first clause, the Infinitive with its subject omitted often follows in the second:

*Num pŭtātis, dixisse Antōnium mīnācius quam factŭrum fuisse*, *Do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted?* Cic.

But the second clause may take the subjunctive, with or without *ut*:

*Audeo dicere ipsos pŭtius cultōres agrŏrum fore quam ut cŏli prohibeant*, *I dare say that they will themselves become tillers of the fields rather than prevent them from being tilled.* Liv.

II. WITH VERBS OF WISHING AND DESIRING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Wishing* and *Desiring*:

*Te tua frui virtute cŭpinus*, *We desire that you should enjoy your virtue.* Cic. *Pontem jŭbet rescindi*, *He orders the bridge to be broken down* (that the bridge should be broken down). Caes. *Lex eum necāri vŕtuit*, *The law forbade that he should be put to death.* Liv.

1. VERBS OF WISHING.—The Infinitive is thus used not only with verbs which directly express a wish, *cŭpio*, *vŕlo*, *nŕlo*, *mālo*, etc., but also with many which involve a wish or command: *pŭtior*, *sŕno*, to permit; *impŕro*, *jŭbeo*, to command; *prohibeo*, *vŕto*, to forbid. See also 558. II.

2. SUBJUNCTIVE FOR INFINITIVE.—Several verbs involving a wish or command admit the Subjunctive:

1) Opto. See 492. 3.

2) Vŕlo, mālo, nŕlo, impŕro, and jŭbeo admit the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

*Vŕlo ut respondeas*, *I wish you would reply.* Cic. *Mālo te hostis mŕtŭat*, *I prefer that the enemy should fear you.* Cic.

3) *Concedo*, *permitto*, rarely *pŭtior* and *sŕno*, admit the Subjunctive with *ut*:  
*Concedo ut haec apta sint*, *I admit that these things are suitable.* Cic.

III. WITH VERBS OF EMOTION OR FEELING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling*:

Gaudeo, te mihi suādere, *I rejoice that you advise me.* Cic. Mirāmur, te laetari, *We wonder that you rejoice.* Cic.

Verbs of emotion are *gaudeo, dōleo, miror, quēror*, and the like; also *aegre fero, graviter fero*, etc.

**552. INFINITIVE WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.**—This is used as Object with many verbs:

Vincere scis, *You know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Crēdūli esse coepērunt, *They began to be credulous.* Cic. Haec vitare cupimus, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Solent cogitare, *They are accustomed to think.* Cic. Nemo mortem effugere potest, *No one is able to escape death.* Cic.

**1. VERBS WITH THE INFINITIVE.**—The Infinitive may depend upon verbs signifying *to dare, desire, determine—begin, continue, end—know, learn, neglect—owe, promise*, etc., also *to be able, be accustomed, be wont*, etc.

**2. INFINITIVE AS A SECOND OBJECT.**—With a few verbs—*dōceo, cōgo, assuefacio, arguo*, etc.—the Infinitive is used in connection with a direct object; see 374. 4:

Te sapere docet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic. Natiōnes parere assuefecit, *He accustomed the nations to obey.* Cic.

In the Passive these verbs of course retain the Infinitive:

Num sum Graece loqui docendus, *Must I be taught to speak Greek?* Cic.

**3. INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.**—By a construction according to sense, the Infinitive is used after adjectives in the sense of participles or verbs with the Infinitive:

Est parātus (*vult*) audire, *He is prepared to hear* (is willing to hear). Cic. Pelides cedere nescius (= nesciens), *Pelides not knowing how to yield.* Hor. Aridi committere pugnam, *eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

This construction is rare in good prose, but common in poetry.

**4. INFINITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.**—The Infinitive regarded as a noun in the accusative, sometimes depends upon a preposition:

Multum interest inter dare et accipere, *There is a great difference between giving and receiving.* Sen.

### III. Infinitive in Special Constructions.

**553.** The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is generally used as the Subject or Object of a verb, but sometimes occurs in other relations. It is thus used,

#### I. As Predicate; see 362:

Exitus fuit orationis: sibi nullam cum his amicitiam, *The close of his oration was that he had no friendship with these.* Caes. Vivere est cogitare, *To live is to think.* Cic.

Here *sibi—amicitiam* is used substantively, and is the Predicate Nominative after *fuit*, according to Rule I. *Cogitare* is in the same construction after *est*.

## II. As Appositive ; see 363 :

Orācūlum dātum erat victrīces Athēnas fōre, *The oracle that Athens would be victorious had been given.* Cic. Illud sōleo mīrārī non mē accīpēre tuas littēras, *I am accustomed to wonder at this, that I do not receive your letter.* Cic.

1. WITH SUBJECT.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a subject accusative, as in the examples.

2. EXPLANATION.—In the examples, the clause *victrīces Athēnas fōre* is in apposition with *orācūlum*, and the clause *non mē accīpēre tuas littēras*, in apposition with *illud*.

## III. In Exclamations ; see 381 :

Te sic vexārī, *that you should be thus troubled!* Cic. Mēne incepto dēsistēre victam, *that I vanquished should abandon my undertaking!* Virg.

1. WITH SUBJECT.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a Subject, as in the examples.

2. EXPLANATION.—This use of the Infinitive conforms, it will be observed, to the use of Accusative and Nominative in exclamations (351, 351. 3). It may often be explained as an Accus. by supplying some verb, as *dōleo*, etc., or as a Nom. by supplying *crēdendum est* or *crēdibile est*. Thus the first example becomes: *I grieve* (*dōleo*) *that you*, etc., and the second becomes: *Is it to be supposed* (*crēdendum est*) *that I vanquished*, etc.

3. IMPASSIONED QUESTIONS.—This construction is most frequent in impassioned questions, as in the second example.

## IV. As Ablative Absolute. See 431. 4.

## V. To express Purpose :

Pēcus ēgit altos vīsere montes, *He drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains.* Hor. Non pōpūlāre pēnātes vēmīmus, *We have not come to lay waste your homes.* Virg.

This construction is confined to poetry.

## VI. Poetic Infinitive for Gerund. See 563. 6.

# SECTION IX.

## SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES.

554. Subject and Object Clauses, in which, as we have just seen (549 and 550), the Infinitive is so freely used, assume four distinct forms :

I. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—These represent the Subject or Object as *Interrogative* in character :

Quærītūr, cur dissentiant, *It is asked why they disagree.* Cic. Quid āgendum sit, nescio, *I do not know what ought to be done.* Cic. See 525.

II. INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—These have simply the force of Nouns, merely supplying the place of the Nominative, or the Accusative:

Antēcellēre contigit, *It was his good fortune to excel* (to excel happened).

Cic. Magna nēgōtia vōluit āgēre, *He wished to achieve great undertakings.*

Cic. See 549, 550.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.—These clauses introduced by *ut*, *ne*, etc., are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then involve Purpose or Result:

Contigit ut patriam vindicāret, *It was his good fortune to save his country.* Nep. Volo ut mihi respondeas, *I wish you would answer me.* Cic. See 492, 495.

Here *ut—vindicāret* is at once subject and result: it was his good fortune to save his country, or his good fortune was such that he saved his country. In the second example, *ut—respondeas* expresses not only the object desired, but also the purpose of the desire.

IV. CLAUSES WITH QUOD.—These again are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then either give prominence to the fact stated, or present it as a Ground or Reason:

Bēnēficiū est quod nēcesse est mōri, *It is a blessing that it is necessary to die.* Sen. Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (because) I have interrupted you.* Cic. See 520.

Clauses with *quod* sometimes stand at the beginning of sentences to announce the subject of remark:

Quod me Agāmemnōnem aemulāri pūtas, fallēris, *As to the fact that you think I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.* Nep.

## I. FORMS OF SUBJECT CLAUSES.

555. INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are interrogative in character, of course take the form of indirect questions. See 525. 2 and 554. I.

556. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are not interrogative, with some predicates take the form of Infinitive clauses, or clauses with *quod*; while with other predicates they take the form of Subjunctive clauses with *ut*, *ne*, etc. Thus,

I. With most impersonal verbs and with predicates consisting of *est* with a Noun or Adjective, the Subject may be supplied (1) by the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative, or, (2) if

the fact is to be made prominent or adduced as a reason, by a clause with *quod*:

Me poenitet vixisse, *I regret that I have lived*. Cic. Quod te offendi me poenitet, *I regret that (or because) I have offended you*. Cic.

1. SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—Mos est, mōris est, consuetūdo est, consuetūdinis est, *It is a custom*, etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

Mos est hōmīnum ut nōlint, *It is a custom of men that they are not willing*. Cic.

2. ADJECTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—Rēliqum est, proxīmum est, extrēmum est—vērū est, vērīsimile est, falsum est—glōriōsum est, mirū est, optimū est, etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

Rēliqum est ut certēmus, *it remains that we contend*. Cic. Vērū est ut bōnos diligant, *It is true that they love the good*. Cic.

II. With Impersonal verbs signifying to *happen*—accēdit, contingit, ēvenit, fit—*ut*, *ut non*, with the Subjunctive, is generally used (495. 2):

Thrāsŷbūlo contigit, ut patriam vindicāret, *It was the good fortune of Thrasybulus (happened to him) to deliver his country*. Nep.

1. Here belong *accēdit ut*, *est ut*, *fūtūrum esse ut*, or *fore ut*. See 544.

2. Clauses with *quod* also occur with verbs of happening.

III. With Impersonal verbs signifying *it follows*, *remains*, *is distant*, and the like, the Subjunctive clause with *ut* is generally used:

Rēlinquitur, ut quiescāmus, *It remains that we should submit*. Cic. See 495. 2.

\* IV. Subjunctive clause standing alone. See 495. 2. 2).

## II. FORMS OF OBJECT CLAUSES.

557. INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are interrogative in character, of course, take the form of indirect questions. See 554. I.

558. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are not interrogative in character, supplying the place of direct objects after transitive verbs, sometimes take the form of Infinitive clauses, sometimes of Subjunctive clauses, and sometimes of clauses with *quod*. Thus,

I. Verbs of DECLARING take,

1. Regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. See 551. I.

2. But the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, when they involve a command:



Dolābellae dixit, ut ad me scribēret ut in Itāliam venīrem, *He told Dolabella to write to me to come into Italy.* Cic. See 492. 2.

II. Verbs of DETERMINING, *stātuo*, *constituo*, *dēcerno*, and the like, take,

1. Generally the Infinitive, when the subject is the same as that of the principal verb, rarely the Subjunctive:

Mānere dēcrēvit, *He determined to remain.* Nep. Stātuerunt, ut libertātem dēfendērent, *They determined to defend liberty.* Cic. See 551. II.

2. The Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne* (expressed or understood), when a new subject is introduced:

Constituērat, ut tribūnus quērērētur, *He had arranged that the tribune should enter the complaint.* Sall. Sēnātus dēcrēvit, dārent op̄eram consules, *The senate decreed that the consuls should attend to it.* Sall. See 492. 3.

*Stātuo*, *dēcerno*, etc., when they mean to think, deem, suppose, etc., become *verba sentiendi* (551. I. 1), and of course take the infinitive:

Laudem sapiētiæ stātuo esse maximam, *I deem it to be the highest praise of wisdom.* Cic.

III. Verbs of STRIVING, ENDEAVORING, take the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*. See 492. 1. But *contendo*, *nitor*, *stūdeo*, and *tento*, generally take the Infinitive when the subject is the same:

Lōcum oppugnāre contendit, *He proceeds to storm the city.* Caes. Tentābo de hoc dicere, *I will attempt to speak of this.* Quint. See 552.

IV. Verbs of CAUSING, MAKING, ACCOMPLISHING, take the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *ut non*. See 492, 495.

1. EXAMPLES.—Fācio, effīcio, perfīcio—ādīpiscor, impetro—assēquor, consēquor, and sometimes fēro, are examples of verbs of this class.

2. FACIO AND EFFICIO.—Fācio in the sense of *assume*, *suppose*, takes the Infinitive; effīcio in the sense of *prove*, *show*, either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive with *ut*, etc.:

Fac ānimos non rēmānere post mortem, *Assume that souls do not survive after death.* Cic. Vult effīcere ānimos esse mortāles, *He wishes to show that souls are mortal.* Cic.

V. Verbs of EMOTION OR FEELING, whether of joy or sorrow, take,

1. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative, to express the Object in view of which the feeling is exercised. See 551. III.

2. Clauses with *quod*, to make more prominent the Reason for the feeling:

Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (or because) I have interrupted you.* Cic. Dolēbam quod sōcium amīsēram, *I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic. See 520. I.

For VERBS OF DESIRING, see 551. II. 2.

VI. Verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, ADVISING, WARNING, COM-

MANDING, and the like, take the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Oro ut hūmīnes mīseros conserves, *I implore that you would preserve the unhappy men.* Cic. Postulant ut signum detur, *They demand that the signal be given.* Liv. See 492. 2.

1. EXAMPLES.—Verbs of this class are numerous—the following are examples: ōro, rōgo, pēto, prēcō, obsēcō—flūgito, postūlo, praecipio—hortor, mōneo, suādeo, persuādeo—impello, incito, mōveo, commōveo.

2. USED AS VERBA DECLARANDI.—Some of these verbs in particular significations become *verba declarandi* (551. 2), and accordingly take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative: thus *mōneo*, in the sense of *remind* and *persuādeo* in the sense of *convince*.

3. INFINITIVE.—Even in their ordinary significations some of these verbs, especially *hortor*, *mōneo*, and *postūlo*, sometimes take the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative:

Postulat se absolvi, *He demands that he should be acquitted.* Cic. See 551.

II. 1 and 2.

The Infinitive is much more common in poetry than in prose.

## SECTION X.

### GERUND.

559. The Gerund is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases and takes adverbial modifiers, as a noun it is itself governed.

560. The Gerund has four cases: Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, governed like nouns in the same situation:

Beāte vīvendi cūpīdītāte incensi sūmus, *We are animated with the desire of living happily.* Cic. Charta inūtilis scrībendo, *paper unfit for writing.* Plin. Ad āgendum nātus, *born for action.* Cic. In āgendo, *in acting.* Cic.

1. ACCUSATIVE.—The Accusative of the Gerund is used only after Prepositions.

2. GERUND AND INFINITIVE.—The gerund and the infinitive are kindred forms, expressing the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun (196. II.). They are also complements of each other, the one supplying the parts which are wanting in the other. Thus the infinitive supplies the nominative and the accusative after verbs (548); the gerund supplies the genitive, dative, and ablative, and the accusative after prepositions.

561. Gerunds with Direct Objects are regularly used only in the Genitive and in the Ablative without a preposition:

Jus vōcandi sēnātum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Injūrias fērendo laudem mērēbēris, *You will merit praise by bearing wrongs.* Cic.

562. GERUNDIVE.—The place of the Gerund with a Direct Object is supplied by putting that object in the case of the Gerund and changing the latter into the participle in *-dus* in agreement with it. The participle is then called a *Gerundive*:

*Inīta sunt consilia urbis dēlendae* = *urbem dēlendi*, *Plans have been formed for destroying the city* (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. *Nūma sacerdotibus creandis animum adjecit*, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests*. Liv.

1. EXPLANATION.—With the Gerund, the first example would be: *Inīta sunt consilia urbem dēlendi*, in which *dēlendi* is governed by *consilia*, and *urbem* by *dēlendi*. In changing this to the Gerundive construction,

1) *Urbem*, the object, is changed into *urbis*, the case of the gerund, and is governed by *consilia*.

2) *Dēlendi*, the gerund, is changed into *dēlendae*, the gerundive, in agreement with *urbis*.

2. GERUNDIVE.—For the sake of brevity, the term *Gerundive* is used not only to designate the *Participle*, but also the *Construction as a whole*, including both the participle and the noun with which it agrees.

3. USE OF GERUNDIVE.—The Gerundive may be used for the Gerund with a Direct Object, and is almost invariably so used when the Gerund would be in the Dative or would depend upon a preposition. But see 563. 2.

But in a few instances the Gerund with a Direct Object occurs in the Dative or dependent upon a preposition. See 564. 1; 565. 2; and 566. 2.

4. GERUNDIVES OF UTOR, FRUOR, ETC.—In general only the gerundives of transitive verbs are used with their nouns as equivalents for Gerunds with Direct Objects; but the gerundives of *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, and *vescor*, originally transitive verbs, admit this construction:

*Ad munus fungendum*, *for discharging the duty*. Cic. *Spes potiundorum castrorum*, *the hope of getting possession of the camp*. Caes.

5. PASSIVE SENSE.—In a few instances, the Gerund has in appearance a passive sense:

*Nēque habent propriam percipiendi notam*, *Nor have they any proper mark of distinction*, i. e., to distinguish them. Cic.

## I. GENITIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

563. The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives:

GERUND.—*Ars vivendi*, *the art of living*. Cic. *Stūdīosus erat audiendi*, *He was desirous of hearing*. Nep. *Jus vocandi senatum*, *the right of summoning the senate*. Liv. *Cūpīdus te audiendi*, *desirous of hearing you*. Cic.

GERUNDIVE.—*Lībīdo ejus videndi*, *the desire of seeing him*. Cic. *Plātōnis stūdīosus audiendi fuit*, *He was fond of hearing Plato*. Cic.

1. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive occurs most frequently—

1) With *ars, scientia, consuetudo, cupiditas, libido, studium, consilium, voluntas, spes, potestas, facultas, difficultas, occasio, tempus, genus, modus, ratio, causa, gratia, etc.*

2) With adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection*, and their *opposites*: *avidus, cupidus, studiosus—consciis, gnarus, ignarus—peritus, imperitus, insuetus, etc.*

2. GERUND PREFERRED.—A gerund with a neuter pronoun or adjective as object should not be changed to the participial construction, because the latter could not distinguish the gender:

*Artem vera ac falsa diiudicandi, the art of distinguishing true things from the false. Cic.*

3. GERUND WITH GENITIVE.—The Gerund in the Genitive sometimes assumes so completely the force of a noun as to govern the Genitive instead of the Accusative:

*Rejiciendi iudicum potestas, the power of challenging (of) the judges. Cic.*

Here *rejiciendi* may be governed by *potestas*, and may itself by its substantive force govern *iudicum*, the challenging of the judges, etc. But these and similar forms in *di* are sometimes explained not as Gerunds but as Gerundives, like Gerundives with *mei, nostri, etc.* See 4 below.

4. PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION WITH *MEI, NOSTRI, ETC.*—With the Genitive of personal pronouns—*mei, nostri, tui, vestri, sui*—the participle ends in *di* without reference to Number or Gender:

*Copia placandi tui (of a woman), an opportunity of appeasing you. Ov. Sui conservandi causa, for the purpose of preserving themselves. Cic. Vestri adhortandi causa, for the purpose of exhorting you. Liv.*

This apparent irregularity may be accounted for by the fact that these genitives, though used as Personal Pronouns, are all strictly in form in the neuter singular of the Possessives *meum, tuum, suum, etc.*, hence the participle in *di* agrees with them perfectly.

5. PURPOSE.—The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is sometimes used to express Purpose or Tendency:

*Haec tradendae Hannibali victoriae sunt, These things are for the purpose of giving victory to Hannibal. Liv. Leges pellendi claros viros, laws for driving away illustrious men. Tac. Proficiscitur cognoscendae antiquitatis, He sets out for the purpose of studying antiquity. Tac.*

This genitive is sometimes best explained as Predicate Genitive (401), as in the first example; sometimes as dependent upon a noun, as *pellendi* dependent upon *leges* in the second example; and sometimes simply as a Genitive of Cause (393, 409. 4), as in the third example; though in such cases, especially in the second and third, *causa* may be supplied.

6. INFINITIVE FOR GERUND.—The Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is often used in the poets with nouns and adjectives, sometimes even in prose:

*Cupido Stygios innare lacus, the desire to sail upon the Stygian lakes. Virg. Avidus committere pugnam, eager to engage battle. Ovid.*

## II. DATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

564. The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

GERUND.—Quum solvendo non essent, *Since they were not able to pay.* Cic. Aqua utilis est bibendo, *Water is useful for drinking.* Plin.

GERUNDIVE.—Locum oppido condendo cēperunt, *They selected a place for founding a city.* Liv. Tempora dēmētendis fructibus accommodāta, *seasons suitable for gathering fruits.* Cic.

1. GERUND.—The Dative of the Gerund is rare and confined mostly to late writers; with an object it is almost without example.

2. GERUNDIVE OF PURPOSE.—In Livy, Tacitus, and late writers, the Dative of the Gerundive often denotes purpose:

Firmandae vālētūdīni in Campāniam concessit, *He withdrew into Campania to confirm his health.* Tac.

3. GERUNDIVE WITH OFFICIAL NAMES.—The Dative of the Gerundive also stands after certain official names, as *dēcemvīri*, *trīumvīri*, *comitia*:

Dēcemvīros lēgibus scribendis creāvīmus, *We have appointed a committee of ten to prepare laws.* Liv. But the Dative is perhaps best explained as dependent upon the verb.

## III. ACCUSATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

565. The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used after a few prepositions:

GERUND.—Ad discendum prōpensi sūmus, *We are inclined to learn (to learning).* Cic. Inter lūdendum, *in or during play.* Quint.

GERUNDIVE.—Ad cōlendos agros, *for cultivating the fields.* Cic. Ante condendam urbem, *before the founding of the city.* Liv.

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The Accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *ad*; sometimes after *inter* and *ob*; very rarely after *ante*, *circa*, and *in*.

2. WITH OBJECT.—The accusative of a gerund with a direct object sometimes occurs, but is rare:

Ad plācandum deos pertīnet, *It tends to appease the gods.* Cic.

3. PURPOSE.—With verbs of *giving*, *permitting*, *leaving*, *taking*, etc., the purpose of the action is sometimes denoted by the Gerund with *ad*, or by the Gerundive in agreement with a noun:

Ad imītandum mihi prōpōsitum exemplar illud, *That model has been set before me for imitation.* Cic. Attribuit Itāliam vastandam (for *ad vastandum*) Cātīlināe, *He assigned Italy to Catiline to ravage (to be ravaged).* Cic.

## IV. ABLATIVE OF GERUNDS OR GERUNDIVES.

566. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used,

## I. As Ablative of Means or Instrument:

GERUND.—*Mens discendo ālitur, The mind is nourished by learning. Cic. Sālūtem hōmīnībūs dādo, by giving safety to men. Cic.*

GERUNDIVE.—*Lēgendis ōrātōribūs, by reading the orators. Cic.*

## II. With Prepositions :

GERUND.—*Virtūtes cernuntur in āgendo, Virtues are seen in action. Cic. Dēterrere a scribendo, to deter from writing. Cic.*

GERUNDIVE.—*Brūtus in liberanda patria est interfectus, Brutus was slain in liberating his country. Cic.*

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *in* ; sometimes after *a* (ab), *de*, *ex* (e) ; very rarely after *cum* and *pro*.

2. WITH OBJECT.—After prepositions, the ablative of the gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare :

*In tribuendo suum cuique, in giving every one his own. Cic.*

3. WITHOUT A PREPOSITION, the ablative of the gerund or gerundive denotes in a few instances some other relation than that of means, as *time*, *separation*, etc. :

*Incipiēdo rēfūgi, I drew back in the very beginning. Cic.*

## SECTION XI.

## SUPINE.

567. The Supine, like the Gerund, is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases, as a noun it is itself governed.

568. The Supine has but two cases: the Accusative in *um* and the Ablative in *u*.

RULE L.—Supine in *Um*.

569. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE :

*Lēgātī vērērunt res rēpētītum, Deputies came to demand restitution. Liv. Ad Cēsārem congrātulātum convērērunt, They came to Caesar to congratulate him. Caes.*

1. The Supine in *um* occurs in a few instances after verbs which do not directly express motion :

Filiam Agrippae nuptum dedit, *He gave his daughter in marriage to Agrippa.* Suet.

2. The Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is equivalent to the forms of the first Periphrastic Conjugation, and may often be rendered literally :

Bonos omnes perditum eunt, *They are going to destroy all the good.* Sall.

But in subordinate clauses the Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is often used for the simple verb :

Ultum ire, (= ulcisci) injurias festinat. *He hastens to avenge the injuries.* Sall.

3. The Supine in *um* with *iri*, the infinitive passive of *eo*, forms, it will be remembered (241. III. 1), the Future Passive Infinitive :

Brutum visum iri a me puto. *I think Brutus will be seen by me.* Cic.

4. The Supine in *um* as an expression of purpose is not very common, its place is often supplied even after verbs of motion by other constructions :

1) By *ut* or *qui* with the Subjunctive. See 459.

2) By *Gerunds* or *Gerundives*. See 563. 5; 564. 2; 565. 3.

3) By *Participles*. See 573. V.

**570.** The Supine in *u* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (429) :

Quid est tam jucundum auditu, *What is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)? Cic. Difficile dictu est, *It is difficult to tell.* Cic.

1. The Supine in *u* is used chiefly with—jucundus, optimus—facilis, praelivis, difficilis—incredibilis, memorabilis—honestus, turpis, fas, nefas—dignus, indignus—opus est.

2. The Supine in *u* is very rare, and does not occur with an object. The only examples in common use are : *auditu, cognitu, dictu, and factu.*

3. As the Supine in *u* is little used, its place is supplied by other constructions :

1) By *ad* with the Gerund : Verba ad audiendum jucunda, *words agreeable to hear.* Cic.

2) By the Infinitive : Facile est vincere, *It is easy to conquer.* Cic.

3) By a Finite Mood with an adverb : Non facile judicatur amor fictus, *Pre-tended love is not easy to detect* (is not easily detected). Cic.

## SECTION XII.

### PARTICIPLES.

#### I. TENSES OF PARTICIPLES.

**571.** Participles, like Infinitives, express only relative time, and represent the action as Present, Past, or Future, relatively to the principal verb.

PECULIARITIES.—Tenses in Participles present the leading peculiarities specified under the corresponding tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

**572. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.**—The present participle represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Oculus se non videns alia cernit, *The eye, though it does not see itself* (not

seeing itself), *discerns other things*. Cic. Plāto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*. Cic.

**573. FUTURE PARTICIPLE.**—The future active participle represents the action as about to take place, in time subsequent to that of the principal verb :

Sāpiens bōna semper plācītūra laudat, *The wise man praises blessings which will always please* (being about to please). Sen.

But the Future Passive generally loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is often best rendered by a verbal noun. See 562 and 580.

**574. PERFECT PARTICIPLE.**—The perfect participle represents the action as completed at the time of the principal verb.

Uva mātūrāta dulcescit, *The grape, when it has ripened* (having ripened), *becomes sweet*. Cic.

1. The Perfect Participle, both in Deponent and in Passive verbs, is sometimes used of present time, and sometimes in Passive verbs it loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is best rendered by a verbal noun. See 580.

2. For the Participle with *habeo*, see 353. 1. 2).

## II. USE OF PARTICIPLES.

**575.** Participles are verbs in force, but Adjectives in form and inflection. As verbs they govern oblique cases, as adjectives they agree with nouns :

Anīmus se non vīdens ālia cernit, *The mind, though it does not see itself, discerns other things*. Cic.

1. Participles in the Present or Perfect, rarely in the Future, may be used as adjectives or nouns: *scripta epistōla*, a written letter; *mortui*, the dead. Participles with the force of adjectives may be used as predicate adjectives with *sum*: *occūpātī erant*, they were occupied; as a verb, *had been occupied*.

**576.** Participles are used to abridge or shorten discourse by supplying the place of finite verbs with relatives or conjunctions. They are used with much greater freedom in Latin than in English.

**577. PARTICIPLE FOR RELATIVE CLAUSE.**—In abridged sentences, the Participle often supplies the place of a Relative Clause :



Omnes aliud agentes, aliud simulantés impröbi sunt, *All who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.* Cic.

**578. FOR OTHER SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.**—The Participle often supplies the place of a subordinate clause with a conjunction. It may express,

**I. Time :**

Pläto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Itüri in proelium cānunt, *They sing when about to go into battle.* Tac.

**II. Cause, Manner, Means :**

Sol üriens diem conficit, *The sun by its rising causes the day.* Cic. Milites rēnuntiant, se perfīdiam vērītos rēvertisse, *The soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy (having feared).* Caes.

**III. Condition :**

Mendāci hōmīni ne vērū quīdem dicenti crēdēre non sölēmus, *We are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth.* Cic. Rēluctante nātūra, irrītus lābor est, *If nature opposes, effort is vain.* Sen.

**IV. Concession :**

Scripta tua jam diu exspectans, non audeo tāmen flāgītāre, *Though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it.* Cic.

**V. Purpose :**

Perseus rēdiit, bellī cāsum tentātūrus, *Perseus returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war.* Liv. Attribuit nos trucidandos Cēthēgo, *He assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter.* Cic.

**579. PARTICIPLE FOR PRINCIPAL CLAUSE.**—The Participle sometimes supplies the place of a principal or coördinate clause, and may accordingly be best rendered by a finite verb with *and* or *but* :

Classem dēvictam cēpit, *He conquered and took the fleet* (took the fleet conquered). Nep. Re consentientes vōcābūlis diffērebant, *They agreed in fact, but differed in words.* Cic.

**580. PARTICIPLE FOR VERBAL NOUN.**—The Passive Participle is often used in Latin where the English idiom requires a participial noun, or a verbal noun with *of* :

In āmīcis ēlīgendis, *in selecting friends.* Cic. Hōmērus fuit ante Rōmam condītā, *Homer lived (was) before the founding of Rome* (before Rome founded). Cic.

**581. PARTICIPLE WITH NEGATIVE.**—The Participle

with a negative, as *non, nihil*, is often best rendered by a participial noun and the preposition *without* :

*Misĕrum est, nihil prŏficiĕntem angī, It is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything. Cic. Non ĕrŭbescens, without blushing. Cic.*

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

#### RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :

*Săpientes feliciter vĭvunt, The wise live happily. Cic. Făcile doctissĭmus, unquestionably the most learned. Cic. Haud Ălĭter, not otherwise. Virg.*

583. Adverbs are sometimes used with nouns :

1. When the nouns are used with the force of adjectives or participles :

*Mĭnĭme largĭtor dux, a leader by no means liberal. Liv. Pŏpŭlus lăte rex, a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively). Virg.*

2. When in sense a participle or verb may be supplied :

*Mărius, plăne vir, Marius, truly a man. Cic. Omnes circa pŏpŭli, all the surrounding peoples. Liv. See also 353. 2.*

584. The Common Negative Particles are : *non, ne, haud*.

1. *Non* is the usual negative, *ne* is used in prohibitions, wishes and purposes (489), and *haud*, in *haud scĭo an* and with adjectives and adverbs ; *haud mirăbile*, not wonderful ; *haud Ălĭter*, not otherwise. *Nĭ* for *ne* is rare. *Nĕ non* after *vĭde* is often best rendered *whether*.

2. In *non mŏdo non* and in *non sĭlum non*, the second *non* is generally omitted before *sed*, or *vĕrum*, followed by *ne—quĭdem* or *vix* (rarely *ĕtiam*), when the verb of the second clause belongs also to the first :

*Assentătio non mŏdo Ămĭco, sed ne libĕro quĭdem digna est. Flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man. Cic.*

3. *Minus* often has nearly the force of *non* ; *si minus* = *si non*. *Sin Ălĭter* has nearly the same force as *si mĭnus*.

585. Two Negatives are generally equivalent to an affirmative, as in English :

Nihil non arröget, *Let him claim everything.* Hor. Néque hoc Zëno non videt, *Nor did Zeno overlook this.* Cic.

1. *Non* before a general negative gives it the force of an indefinite affirmative, but after such negative the force of a general affirmative :

Nonnëmo, *some one* ; nonnihil, *something* ; nonnunquam, *sometimes*.

Nëmo non, *every one* ; nihil non, *everything* ; nunquam non, *always*.

2. After a general negative, *ne—quidem* gives emphasis to the negation, and *nëque—nëque*, *nëve—nëve*, and the like, repeat the negation distributively :

Non practëreundum est ne id quidem, *We must not pass by even this.* Cic. Nëmo unquam nëque poëta nëque örätor fuit, *No one was ever either a poet or orator.* Cic.

3. *Sic* and *ita* mean *so, thus*. *Ita* has also a limiting sense *in so far* which does not belong to *sic*, as in *ita—si* (503. 4). *Adëo*, to such a degree or result ; *tam, tantöpëre*, so much, *tum* used mostly before adjectives and adverbs, and *tantöpëre* before verbs.

586. For the use of Prepositions, see 432 to 437.

587. Coördinate Conjunctions unite similar constructions (309). They comprise five classes :

### I. Copulative Conjunctions denote union :

Castor et Pollux, *Castor and Pollux.* Cic. Sënätus pöpulusque, *the senate and people.* Cic. Nec ërat diffïcile, *Nor was it difficult.* Liv.

1. LIST. See 310. 1.

2. DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.—*Et* simply connects ; *que* implies a more intimate relationship ; *atque* generally gives prominence to what follows, especially at the beginning of a sentence ; *ac*, abbreviated from *atque*, has generally the force of *et*. *Nëque* and *nec* have the force of *et non*. *Et* and *ëtiam* sometimes mean *even*.

*Atque* and *ac* generally mean *as, than* after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness ; *similis*, *dissimilis*, *similiter*, *par*, *päriter*, *aeque*, *älius*, *äliter*, *sëcus* : *aeque ac*, equally as ; *äliter atque*, otherwise than. See also 451. 5.

3. QUE, AC, ATQUE.—*Que* is an enclitic, i. e., is always appended to some other word. *Ac* in the best prose is used only before consonants ; *atque*, either before vowels or consonants.

4. ETIAM, QUOQUE, ADEO, and the like, are sometimes associated with *et*, *atque*, *ac*, and *que*, and sometimes even supply their place. *Quöque* follows the word which it connects : *is quöque*, he also. *Etiam*, also, further, even, is more comprehensive than *quöque* and often adds a new circumstance.

5. CORRELATIVES.—Sometimes two copulatives are used : *et (que)—et (que)*, *tum—tum*, *quum—tum*, *both—and* ; but *quum—tum* gives prominence to the second word or clause ; *non solum (non mödo, or non tantum)—sed ëtiam (vërum ëtiam)*, *not only—but also* ; *nëque (nec)—nëque (nec)*, *neither—nor* ; *nëque (nec)—et (que)*, *not—but (and)* ; *et—nëque (nec)*, *(both)—and not*.

6. OMITTED.—Between two words connected copulatively the conjunction is generally expressed, though sometimes omitted, especially between the names of two colleagues. Between several words it is in the best prose generally repeated or

omitted altogether, though *que* may be used with the last even when the conjunction is omitted between the others: *pax et tranquillitas et concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordiaque*.

*Et* is often omitted between conditional clauses, except before *non*.

## II. Disjunctive Conjunctions denote separation :

*Aut vestra aut sua culpa, either your fault, or his own.* Liv. *Duābus tribusve hōris, in two or three hours.* Cic.

1. LIST. See §10. 2.

2. *Aut, vel, ve.*—*Aut* denotes a stronger antithesis than *vel*, and must be used if the one supposition excludes the other: *aut verum aut falsum*, either true or false. *Vel* implies a difference in the expression rather than in the thing. It is generally corrective and is often followed by *pōtius, etiam* or *dicam*: *laudatur vel etiam amatur*, he is praised, or even (rather) loved. It sometimes means *even* and sometimes *for example*. *Velut* often means *for example*. *Ve* for *vel* is appended as an enclitic.

In negative clauses *aut* and *ve* often continue the negation: *non hōnor aut virtus*, neither (not) honor nor virtue.

3. *Sive (si—ve)* does not imply any real difference or opposition; it often connects different names of the same object: *Pallas sive Minerva*, Pallas or Minerva (another name of the same goddess).

## III. Adversative Conjunctions denote opposition or contrast :

*Cūpio me esse clēmentem, sed me inertiae condemnō, I wish to be mild, but I condemn myself for inaction.* Cic.

1. LIST. See §10. 3.

2. DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.—*Sed* and *verum* mark a direct opposition; *autem* and *vērō* only a transition; *at* emphasizes the opposition; *atqui* often introduces an objection; *cit̄erum*, but still, as to the rest; *tāmen*, yet.

3. COMPOUNDS OF TAMEN are: *attāmen, sedtāmen, vēruntāmen*, but yet.

4. *AUTEM* and *VERO* follow the words which they connect: *hic autem, hic vērō*, but this one. They are often omitted, especially before *non*. They are admissible with *qui* only when it is followed by its antecedent.

## IV. Illative Conjunctions denote inference :

*In umbra igitur pugnābimus, We shall therefore fight in the shade.* Cic.

1. LIST. See §10. 4.

2. OTHER WORDS.—Certain other words, sometimes classed with adverbs and sometimes with conjunctions, are also illatives: *eo, ideo, idcirco, propt̄erea, quāobrem, quāpropter, quāre, quōcirca*.

3. *IGITUR*.—This generally follows the word which it connects: *hic igitur*, this one therefore. After a digression *igitur, sed, sed tāmen, verum, verum tāmen*, etc., are often used to resume an interrupted thought or construction. They may often be rendered *I say*: *Sed si quis*; if any one, I say.

## V. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

*Difficile est consilium: sum enim sōlus, Counsel is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic. *Et̄nim jus amant, For they love the right.* Cic.

1. LIST. See §10. 5.

2. ETENIM and NAMQUE denote a closer connection than *enim* and *nam*.

3. ENIM follows its word.

588. Subordinate Conjunctions connect subordinate with principal constructions (309. II.). They comprise eight classes.

### I. Temporal Conjunctions denote time :

Pāruit quum nēcesse ērat, *He obeyed when it was necessary*. Cic. Dum ēgo in Sicīlia sum, *while I am in Sicily*. Cic. See also 311. 1 ; 521-523.

1. DUM added to a negative means *yet*; *nondum*, not yet; *vixdum*, scarcely yet.

### II. Comparative Conjunctions denote comparison :

Ut optasti, ita est, *It is as you desired*. Cic. Vēlut si ādasset, *as if he were present*. Caes. See also 311. 2 ; 503, 506.

1. CORRELATIVES are often used: Tam—quam, *as, so—as, as much as*; tam—quam quod maxime, *as much as possible*; non minus—quam, *not less than*; non māgis—quam, *not more than*.

Tam—quam and ut—ita with a superlative are sometimes best rendered by *the* with the comparative: *ut maxime—ita maxime*, the more—the more.

### III. Conditional Conjunctions denote condition :

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me*. Cic. Nisi est concīlium dōmi, *unless there is wisdom at home*. Cic. See also 311. 3 ; 503, 507.

1. Nisi, if not, in negative sentences often means *except*, and *nisi quod*, except that, may be used even in affirmative sentences. Nisi may mean *than*. Nihil aliud nisi = nothing further (more, except); nihil aliud quam = nothing else (other than).

### IV. Concessive Conjunctions denote concession :

Quamquam intelligunt, *though they understand*. Cic. Etsi nihil hābeat, *although he has nothing*. Cic. See also 311. 4 ; 515, 516.

### V. Final Conjunctions denote purpose :

Esse oportet, ut vivas, *It is necessary to eat, that you may live*. Cic. See also 311. 5 ; 489-499.

### VI. Consecutive Conjunctions denote consequence or result :

Atticus ita vixit, ut Athēniensibus esset cārissimus, *Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians*. Nep. See also 311. 6 ; 489-499.

### VII. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

Quae quum ita sint, *Since these things are so*. Cic. See also 311. 7 ; 517, 518.

### VIII. Interrogative Conjunctions or Particles denote inquiry or question :

Quaesieras, nonne putārem, *You had asked whether I did not think*. Cic. See also 311. 8 ; 346. II., 525, 526.

## IV. INTERJECTIONS.

589. Interjections are sometimes used entirely alone, as *heu*, *alas*! and sometimes with certain cases of nouns. See 381 and 381. 3.

590. Various parts of speech, and even oaths and imprecations, sometimes have the force of interjections. Thus:

*Pax* (*peace*), *be still*! *miserum*, *miserabile*, *sad*, *lamentable*! *oro*, *pray*! *age*, *age*, *come*, *well*! *mehercules*, *by Hercules*! *per deum fidem*, *in the name of the gods*! *sodes* = *si audes* (*for audies*), *if you will hear*!

## CHAPTER VII.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

591. For convenience of reference, the principal Rules of Syntax are here introduced in a body. The enclosed numerals refer to the various articles in the work where the several topics are more fully discussed.

## NOUNS.

## AGREEMENT.

I. A PREDICATE NOUN denoting the same person or thing as its Subject, agrees with it in CASE (362):

*Ego sum nuntius*, *I am a messenger*. Liv.

II. An APPOSITIVE agrees with its Subject in CASE (363):

*Cluilius rex moritur*, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv.

## NOMINATIVE.

III. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative (367):

*Servius regnavit*, *Servius reigned*. Liv.

## VOCATIVE.

IV. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative (369):

*Perge*, *Laeli*, *Proceed*, *Laelius*. Cic.

ACCUSATIVE.

V. The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative (371):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

VI. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing (373):

Hāmilcārem impērātōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep.

VII. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive (374):

Me sententiam rōgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic.

VIII. DURATION OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative (378):

Septem et trīginta regnāvit annos, *He reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv.  
Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *to walk five miles.* Cic.

IX. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative (379):

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.

X. A Verb or Adjective may take an Adverbial Accusative to define its application (380):

Cāpita vėlāmur, *We have our heads veiled.* Virg. Nūbe hūmēros āmictus, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud.* Hor.

XI. The Accusative, either with or without an Interjection, may be used in Exclamations (381):

Heu me mīsērum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic.

DATIVE.

XII. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative (384):

Tempōri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic.

Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage (385).

Dative with Compounds (386).

Dative of Possessor (387).

Dative of Apparent Agent (388).

Ethical Dative (389).

XIII. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs (390):

Mālo est hōmīnibus āvāritia, *Avarice is (for) an evil to men.* Cic.

XIV. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative (391):

Omnibus cārum est, *It is dear to all.* Cic.

XV. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives (392):

Obtempērātio lēgibus, *obedience to the laws.* Cic. Congruenter nātūrae, *agreeably to nature.* Cic.

### GENITIVE.

XVI. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive (395):

Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic.

XVII. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning (399):

Avīdus laudis, *desirous of praise.* Cic.

XVIII. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject, is put in the Genitive (401):

Omnia hostium ērant, *All things belonged to (were of) the enemy.* Liv.

XIX. The Genitive is used (406),

I. With **mīsēreor** and **mīsēresco**:

Mīsērēre lābōrum, *pity the labors.* Virg.

II. With **rēcordor**, **mēmīni**, **rēmīniscor**, and **obliscor**:

Mēmīnit prætērītōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic.

III. With **rēfert** and **intērest**:

Intērest omnium, *It is the interest of all.* Cic.

XX. A few verbs take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing (410):

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing*:

Te āmicītiæ commōnēfācit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic.

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting*:

Vīros scēlēris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic.

III. *Misēret, Poenitet, Pūdet, Taedet, and Piget*:

Eōrum nos mīsēret, *We pity them.* Cic.



For the *Genitive of Place*, see Rule XXVI.

# ABLATIVE.

**XXI. CAUSE, MANNER, and MEANS** are denoted by the Ablative (414):

Utilitāte laudātur, *It is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic.

**XXII. PRICE** is generally denoted by the Ablative (416):

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg.

**XXIII. Comparatives** without **QUAM** are followed by the Ablative (417):

Nihil est amabilius virtute, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.

**XXIV. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE** is denoted by the Ablative (418):

Uno die longior, *longer by one day.* Cic.

**XXV. The Ablative** is used (419),

I. With **ūtōr**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **pētior**, **vescor**, and their compounds:

Plūrimis rebus fruimur, *We enjoy very many things.* Cic.

II. With **fido**, **confido**, **nitor**, **innitor**:

Sālus veritate nititur, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With **VERBS** and **ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY** and **WANT**:

Non egeō medicīna, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic.

IV. With **dignus**, **indignus**, **contentus**, and **frētus**:

Digni sunt amicitia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

V. With **opus** and **usus**:

Auctoritate tua nobis opus est, *We need your authority.* Cic.

**XXVI. I. The PLACE IN WHICH** and the **PLACE FROM WHICH** are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. **NAMES OF TOWNS** drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the **PLACE IN WHICH** by the Genitive (421):

In Itālia fuit, *He was in Italy.* Nep. Ex Afrīca, *from Africa.* Liv. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

**XXVII. SOURCE** and **SEPARATION** are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition (425):

Oriundi ab Săbīnis, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you*. Cic.

**XXVIII.** The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative (426):

Octōgēsīmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year*. Cic.

**XXIX.** The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing (428):

Summa virtūte ādōlescens, *a youth of the highest virtue*. Caes.

**XXX.** The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application (429):

Nōmīne, non pōtestāte fuit rex, *He was king in name, not in power*. Nep.

**XXXI.** The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE (431):

Servio regnante, *in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic.

#### CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

**XXXII.** The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions (432):

Ad āmicū, *to a friend*. Cic. In Itālia, *in Italy*. Nep.

#### ADJECTIVES.

**XXXIII.** An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE (438):

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind*. Cic.

#### PRONOUNS.

**XXXIV.** A Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (445):

Animāl, quod sanguinem hābet, *an animal which has blood*. Cic.

#### VERBS.

##### AGREEMENT.

**XXXV.** A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON (460):

Ego rēges ejēcī, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

XXXVI. The Indicative is used in treating of facts (474):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES.

XXXVII. Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical, upon Historical (480):

Nītitur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Quaesiēras nonne pūtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

+

XXXVIII. The POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE represents the action not as real, but as *possible* (485):

Forsītan quaerātis, *perhaps you may inquire.* Cic.

XXXIX. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE represents the action not as real, but as *desired* (487):

Vāleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic.

XL. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT is used (489),

I. With **ut, ne, quo, quin, quōmīnus**:

Enītitur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic.

II. With **quī = ut is, ut ēgo, tu, etc.**:

Missi sunt, qui (*ut ii*) consūlērent Apollīnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo.* Nep.

XLI. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION is used (503),

I. With **dum, mōdo, dummōdo**:

Mōdo permāneat industria, *if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With **ac si, ut si, quāsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si**:

Vĕlut si ādesset, *as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with **si, nīsi, nī, sin, quī = si is, si quis**:

Si vĕlim nūmērāre, *if I should wish to recount.* Cic.

XLII. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONCESSION is used (515),

I. With **licet, quamvis, quantumvis, ut, ne, quum**, although:  
Licet irrīdeat, *though he may deride.* Cic.

II. With **qui** = **quum** (licet) **is**, **quum** **ĕgo**, etc., though he :

Absolvite Verrem, qui (*quum is*) fāteātur, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses.* Cic.

III. Generally with **etsi**, **tāmetſi**, **ĕtiamſi** :

Etsi optimum sit, *even if* (though) *it be most excellent.* Cic.

**XLIII.** The **SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE OR REASON** is used (517),

I. With **quum** (cum), since ; **qui** = **quum is**, etc.

Quum vita mētus plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic.

II. With **quod**, **quia**, **quōniam**, **quando**, to introduce a reason on another's authority :

Quod corrupĕret jūventūtem, *because* (on the ground that) *he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

**XLIV.** The **SUBJUNCTIVE OF TIME** with the accessory notion of **CAUSE OR PURPOSE** is used (521),

I. With **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, until :

Exspectas, dum dicat, *You are waiting till he speaks*, i. e., that he may speak. Cic.

II. With **antēquam**, **priusquam**, before :

Antēquam de re pūblica dicam, *before I (can) speak of the republic.* Cic.

**XLV.** The **Subjunctive** is used in **INDIRECT QUESTIONS** (525) :

Quid dies fērat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

**XLVI.** The **Subjunctive by Attraction** is often used in clauses dependent upon the **Subjunctive** (527) :

Vĕreor, ne, dum mīnuĕre vēlim lābōrem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.* Cic.

**XLVII.** The **Subjunctive** is generally used in the **Interrogative**, **Imperative**, and **Subordinate** clauses of the **Oratio Oblīqua** (529) :

Respondit, cur vēnīret, *He replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scribit Lābiēno vēniat, *He writes to Labienus to come.* Caes.

#### IMPERATIVE.

**XLVIII.** The **Imperative** is used in **commands**, **exhortations**, and **entreaties** (535) :

Justitiam cōle, *Practise justice.* Cic.

### INFINITIVE.

XLIX. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative (545):

Sentimus cālēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

### PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Participles are construed as adjectives (575), Gerunds and Supines as nouns (559, 567). But

L. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE (569):

Vēnērunt res rēpētum, *They came to demand restitution.* Liv.

### PARTICLES.

LI. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS (582):

Sāpientes feliciter vivunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic.

1. For PREPOSITIONS, see Rule XXXII.

2. CONJUNCTIONS are mere connectives. See 587 and 588.

3. INTERJECTIONS are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address. See 589.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

---

#### SECTION I.

##### ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

592. The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. But with all this freedom and variety, there are certain general laws of arrangement which it will be useful to notice.

## I. GENERAL RULES.

593. The Subject followed by its modifiers occupies the first place in the sentence, and the Predicate preceded by its modifiers the last place:

Sol oriens diem conficit, *The sun rising makes the day.* Cic. Animus aeger semper errat, *A diseased mind always errs.* Cic. Miltiades Athēnas liberāvit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

594. Emphasis and euphony often affect the arrangement of words:

I. BEGINNING.—Any word, except the subject, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Silent lēges inter arma, *Laws are silent in war.* Cic. Nūmītōri Rēmus dēditur, *Remus is delivered to Numitor.* Liv. Igni āger vastābātur, *The field was ravaged with fire.* Sall.

II. END.—Any word, except the predicate, may be rendered *emphatic* by being placed at the end of the sentence:

Nōbis non sātisfācit ipse Dēmōsthēnes, *Even Demosthenes does not satisfy us.* Cic. Consūlātum pētīvit nunquam, *He never sought the consulship.* Cic. Exsistit quaedam quæstio subdifficilis, *There arises a question somewhat difficult.* Cic.

III. SEPARATION.—Two words naturally connected, as a noun and its adjective, or a noun and its genitive, are sometimes made *emphatic* by separation:

Objurgātiōnes nonnunquam incidunt nēcessāriæ, *Sometimes necessary reproofs occur.* Cic. Justitiæ fungātur officiis, *Let him discharge the duties of justice.* Cic.

† 595. CONTRASTED GROUPS.—When two groups of words are contrasted, the order of the first is often reversed in the second:

Frāgile corpus ānīmus sempiternus mōvet, *The imperishable soul moves the perishable body.* Cic.

596. KINDRED WORDS.—Different forms of the same word, or different words of the same derivation, are generally placed near each other:

Ad sēnem sēnex de sēnectūte scripsi, *I, an old man, wrote to an old man on the subject of old age.* Cic. Inter se āliis ālii prūsunt, *They mutually benefit each other.* Cic.

**597. WORDS WITH A COMMON RELATION.**—A word which has a common relation to two other words connected by conjunctions, is placed,

**I. Generally before or after both :**

*Pācis et artes et glōria, both the arts and the glory of peace.* Liv. *Belli pācisque artes, the arts of war and of peace.* Liv.

A Genitive or Adjective following two nouns may qualify both, but it more frequently qualifies only the latter :

*Hæc percunctatio ac denuntiatio belli, this inquiry and this declaration of war.* Liv.

**II. Sometimes directly after the first before the conjunction :**

*Hōnōris certāmen et glōriae, a struggle for honor and glory.* Cic. *Agri omnes et mǎria, all lands and seas.* Cic.

## II. SPECIAL RULES.

**598. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.**—The modifiers of a noun generally follow it. They may be either adjectives or nouns :

*Pōpulus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, The Roman people decreed.* Cic. *Hērōdōtus, pāter histōriae, Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. *Liber de officiis, the book on duties.* Cic.

1. **NOUN.**—A noun as modifier of another noun is generally an appositive, a genitive, or a case with a preposition, as in the examples.

2. **WITH EMPHASIS.**—Modifiers when emphatic are placed before their nouns :

*Tuscus āger Rōmāno adjācet, The Tuscan territory borders on the Roman.* Liv. *Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, Cato's orations.* Cic.

3. **ADJECTIVE AND GENITIVE.**—When a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the usual order is, *adjective—genitive—noun* :

*Magna cīvium pēnūria, a great scarcity of citizens.* Cic.

**599. MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.**—The modifiers of the adjective generally precede it, but, if not adverbs, they may follow it :

*Fācile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. *Omni aetāti commūnis, common to every age.* Cic. *Avidus laudis, desirous of praise.* Cic.

**600. MODIFIERS OF VERBS.**—The modifiers of the verb generally precede it :

*Glōria virtūtem sēquītur, Glory follows virtue.* Cic. *Mundus deo pāret, The world is subject to God.* Cic. *Vehēmenter dixit, He spoke vehemently.* Cic. *Glōria dūcitur, He is led by glory.* Cic.

1. **AFTER THE VERB.**—When the verb is placed for the sake of emphasis at the beginning of the sentence, the modifiers, of course, follow. See first example under 594. I.

2. **EMPHASIS.**—An emphatic modifier may of course stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence (594):

*Facillime cognoscuntur adolescentes, Most easily are the young men recognized.* Cic.

3. **TWO OR MORE MODIFIERS.**—Of two or more modifiers belonging to the same verb, that which in thought is most intimately connected with the verb stands next to it, while the others are arranged as emphasis and euphony may require:

*Rex Scythis bellum intulit, The king waged war against the Scythians.*  
*Nep. Mors propter brevitatē vitæ nunquam longe abest, Death is never far distant, in consequence of the shortness of life.* Cic.

**601. MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.**—The modifiers of the adverb generally precede it, but a Dative often follows it:

*Valde vehementer dixit, He spoke very vehemently.* Cic. *Congruenter naturæ vivit, He lives agreeably to nature.* Cic.

**602. SPECIAL WORDS.**—Some words have a favorite place in the sentence, which they seldom leave. Thus,

I. The *Demonstrative* generally precedes its noun:

*Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city.* Cic.

1. *Ille* in the sense of well-known (450. 5) generally follows its noun, if not accompanied by an adjective:

*Mēdēa illa, that well-known Medea.* Cic.

2. *Quisque*, the indefinite pronoun, follows some other word:

*Justitia suum cuique tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own).* Cic.

II. *Prepositions* generally stand directly before their cases, but *tēnus* and *versus* follow their cases:

*In Asiam profūgit, He fled into Asia.* Cic. *Collo tēnus, up to the neck.* Ov.

1. **AFTER A PRONOUN.**—The preposition frequently follows the relative, sometimes other pronouns, and sometimes even nouns, especially in poetry:

*Res qua de āgitur, the subject of which we are treating.* Cic. *Itāliam contra, over against Italy.* Virg.

2. **CUM APPENDED.**—See 154. 6 and 157. 2.

3. **INTERVENING WORDS.**—Genitives, adverbs, and a few other words sometimes stand between the preposition and its case. In adjurations *per* is usually separated from its case by the Acc. of the object adjured, or by some other word; and sometimes the verb *oro* is omitted:

*Post Alexandri magni mortem, after the death of Alexander the Great.* Cic. *Ad bēne vivendum, for living well.* Cic. *Per te deos oro, I pray you in the name of the gods.* Ter. *Per ego vos deos = per deos ego vos oro (oro understood).* I pray you in the name of the gods. Curt.

III. *Conjunctions and Relatives*, when they introduce clauses, generally



stand at the beginning of such clauses; but *autem*, *enim*, *quidem*, *quōque*, *vēro*, and generally *igitur*, follow some other word:

*Si peccāvi, ignosce, If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. *Hi qui sup̄eriōres sunt, those who are superior.* Cic. *Ipse autem omnia vidēbat, But he himself saw all things.* Cic.

1. EMPHATIC WORDS and RELATIVES often precede the conjunction.

*Id ut audivit, as he heard this.* Nep. *Quae quum ita sint, since these things are so.* Cic.

2. *NE—QUIDEM* takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts:

*Ne in oppidis quidem, not even in the towns.* Cic.

3. *Quidem* often follows pronouns, superlatives, and ordinals:

*Ex me quidem nihil audiet, He will hear nothing from me.* Cic.

4. *Que, re, ne*, introducing a clause or phrase, are generally appended to the first word, but if that word is a monosyllabic preposition, they are often appended to the next word: *ad plēbemre*, for *adve*, etc., or to the people; *in fōrōque* = *inque fōro*, and in the forum. *Apud quosque*, and before whom, occurs for euphony.

IV. *Non*, when it qualifies some single word, stands directly before that word, but when it is particularly emphatic, or qualifies the entire clause, it generally stands at the beginning of the clause:

*Hac villa cārēre non possunt, They are not able to do without this villa.* Cic. *Non fuit Jūpiter mētendus, Jupiter was not to be feared.* Cic.

V. *Inquam*, sometimes *Aio*, introducing a quotation, follows one or more of the words quoted. The subject, if expressed, generally follows its verb:

*Nihil, inquit Brūtus, quod dicam, Nothing which I shall state, said Brutus.* Cic.

VI. The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word:

*Perge, Laeli, Proceed, Laelius.* Cic.

## SECTION II.

### ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

#### I. IN COMPLEX SENTENCES.

603. SUBJECT OR PREDICATE.—A clause used as the subject of a complex sentence (357) generally stands at the beginning of the sentence, and a clause used as the predicate at the end:

*Quid dies fērat incertum est, What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. *Exītus fuit orātiōis: sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse, The close of the oration was, that he had no friendship with these men.* Caes.

1. This arrangement is the same as that of the simple sentence. See 593.

2. Emphasis and euphony often have the same effect upon the arrangement of clauses as of words. See 594.

604. SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS.—Clauses used as the subordinate elements of complex sentences, admit three different arrangements:

I. They are generally inserted within the principal clause, like the subordinate elements of a simple sentence:

Hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt, *The enemy, as soon as they saw our cavalry, quickly put our men to rout.* Caes. Sententia, quae tutissima videbatur, vicit, *The opinion which seemed the safest prevailed.* Liv.

II. They are often placed before the principal clause:

Quum quiescunt, probant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Quis sit animus, animus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic. Si haec civitas est, civis sum ego, *If this is a state I am a citizen.* Cic.

This arrangement is especially common when the subordinate clause either refers back to the preceding sentence, or is preparatory to the thought of the principal clause. Hence *temporal*, *conditional*, and *concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. Hence also, in sentences composed of correlative clauses with *is—qui, talis—qualis, tantus—quantus, tum—quum, ita—ut*, etc., the relative member, i. e., the clause with *qui, quālis, quantus, quum, ut*, etc., generally precedes.

III. They sometimes follow the principal clause:

Enititur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic. Sol efficit ut omnia florescat, *The sun causes all things to bloom.* Cic.

This arrangement is common when the subordinate clause is either intimately connected in thought with the following sentence or is explanatory of the principal clause. Hence clauses of *Purpose* and *Result* generally follow the principal clause, as in the examples. See also examples under articles 489–499.

605. LATIN PERIOD.—A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause, as under I., is called a Period in the strict sense of the word.

In a freer sense the same term is also applied to any sentence in which the clauses are so arranged as not to make complete sense before the end of the sentence. In this sense the examples under II. are periods.

## II. IN COMPOUND SENTENCES.

606. Clauses connected by coördinate conjunctions (587) generally follow each other in the natural order of the thought, as in English:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg. Gyges a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

## PART FOURTH.

### P R O S O D Y.

607. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### QUANTITY.

608. The time occupied in pronouncing a syllable in poetry is called its quantity. Syllables are accordingly characterized as *long*, *short*, or *common*.<sup>1</sup>

609. The quantity of syllables is determined by poetic usage. But this usage conforms in many cases to general laws, while in other cases it seems somewhat arbitrary.

1. Syllables whose quantity conforms to known rules are said to be long or short by *rule*.

2. Syllables whose quantity does not conform to known rules are said to be long or short by *authority*.

3. The rules for quantity are either *general*, i. e., applicable to most syllables, or *special*, i. e., applicable to particular syllables.

#### SECTION I.

##### GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

610. RULE I.—Diphthongs and Contracted syllables are LONG :

Haec, coena, aura ; ālius *for* ālius, cōgo *for* cōigo, occīdo *for* occae-do, nīl *for* nīhil.

1. *Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel : *prāēcūtus*, *prāēustus*.

2. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, and *uu*, are not strictly diphthongs, and accordingly do not come under this rule.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes long and sometimes short.

611. RULE II.—A vowel is LONG BY POSITION before *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants:<sup>1</sup>

*Mājor, rēxi, gāza, mēnsa, servus.*

1. But one of the consonants at least must belong to the same word as the vowel: *āb rūpe, pēr saxa.*

1) A final vowel is not usually affected by consonants at the beginning of the following word, except before *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, and *st*, where a short vowel is rare.

2) *H* and *U* must never be treated as consonants under this rule,<sup>2</sup> except in rare instances where *u* is so used by Synaeresis. See 669. II. .

2. Before a mute followed by *L* or *R*, a vowel naturally short becomes common: *dūplex, āgri, pātres.*

1) In Greek words a vowel is also common before a mute with *M* or *N*: *Tēmessa, cēnus.*

2) A mute at the end of the first part of a compound before a liquid at the beginning of the second part makes the preceding vowel long by position: *āb-rumpo, ōb-rōgo.*

3) A vowel naturally long, of course, remains long before a Mute and Liquid: *ācer, āeris.*

3. Compounds of *jūgum* retain the short vowel before *j*: *bi-jūgus, quadr-jūgus.*

612. RULE III.—A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is SHORT BY POSITION :

*Pīus, pīae, dōcēo, trāho.*

No account is taken of the breathing *h*; hence *a* in *traho* is treated as a vowel before another vowel.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are long before a vowel :

1. **A**,—(1) in the genitive ending *āi* of Dec. I.: *aulāi*,—(2) in proper names in *āius*: *Cāius* (Cajus),—(3) before *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *iu*, in the verb *aio*.

2. **E**,—(1) in the ending *ēi* of Dec. V. when preceded by a vowel: *dīēi*; and sometimes in *fīdēi*, *rēi*, *spēi*,—(2) in proper names in *eius*: *Pompēius*,—(3) in *ēheu*.

3. **I**,—(1) in the verb *fīo*, when not followed by *er*: *fīam*, *fīebam*, but *fīēri*,—(2) in the genitive *ālius*. In other genitives *i* in *ius* is common in poetry, though long in prose, but the *i* in *altērīus* is short,—(3) in *dīus*, *a*, *um*, for *dīvus*, *a*, *um*,—(4) sometimes in *Dīāna*.

4. **O**,—is common in *ōhe*.

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, the syllable, and not the vowel, is lengthened, but the language of convenience refers the quantity of the syllable to the vowel.

<sup>2</sup> *Qu*, *gu*, and *su*, when *u* has the sound of *wo*, are treated as single consonants.

5. In Greek words vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original: *der*, *Aenēas*, *Brisēis*, *Mēnēlāus*, *Trōes*.

This often occurs in proper names in—*ēa*, *īa*, *ēus*, *īus*, *āon*, *īon*, *āis*, *ōis*, *ōius*: *Mēdēa*, *Alexandria*, *Pēncus*, *Dārius*, *Orion*.

## SECTION II.

### SPECIAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

#### I. QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

##### I. Monosyllables.

613. RULE IV.—Monosyllables are long:

ā, dā, tē, sē, dē, sī, quī, dō, prō, tū, dōs, pēs, sīs, bōs, sūs, pār, sōl.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are short:

1. Enclitics: *quē*, *vē*, *nē*, *cē*, *tē*, *psē*, *ptē*.

2. Monosyllables in **b, d, l, t**: *āb*, *ād*, *fēl*, *mēl*, *āt*, *ēt*; except *sāl*, *sōl*.

3. *An*, *bīs*, *cīs*, *cōr*, *ēs*, *fūc*, *fēr*, *īn*, *īs*, *nēc*, *ōs* (ossis), *pēr*, *tēr*, *quā* (plur. indef.), *quīs*, *vēr*; probably also *vās* (vādis), and sometimes *hīc* and *hōc* as Nom. or Acc. forms.

##### II. Polysyllables.

#### 1. FINAL VOWELS.

614. RULE V.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **a**, **e**, and **y** are short; **i** and **u**, long; **o**, common:

*Viā*, *māriā*, *mārē*, *mīsŷ*; *mārī*, *audī*, *fructū*, *cornū*; *āmō*, *sermō*.

615. **A** final is short: *mensā*, *templā*, *bōnā*.

EXCEPTIONS.—**A** final is long,

1. In the Ablative: *mensā*, *bōnā*, *illā*.

2. In the Vocative of Greek nouns in *as* (rarely *es*): *Aenēā*, *Pallā*.

3. In Verbs and Indeclinable words: *āmā*, *cūrā*; *circā*, *juxtā*, *antēā*, *frustrā*. Except *itā*, *quā*, *ejā*, and *pūtā* used adverbially.

616. **E** final is short: *servē*, *urbē*, *rēgē*.

EXCEPTIONS.—**E** final is long,

1. In Dec. I. and V.: *ēpitōmē*, *rē*, *diē*. Hence in the compounds—*hōdīē*, *prīdīē*, *postrīdīē*, *quārē*.

2. In Greek plurals of Dec. III.: *Tempē*, *mēlē*.

3. In the Sing. Imperative Act. of Conj. II.: *mōnē, dōcē*. But *e* is sometimes short in *cāvē*.

4. In *fērē, fermē, olē*, and in Adverbs from adjectives of Dec. II.: *doctē, rectē*. Except *bēnē, mālē, infernē, internē, supernē*.

617. **Y** *final* is short: *mīsŷ, mōlŷ, cōtŷ*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are, of course, long: *mīsŷ = mīsŷi*.

618. **I** *final* is long: *scrī, bōnī, audī*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* *final* is,

1. COMMON in *mihī, tībī, sībī, ībī, ūbī*. But

Observe compounds *ibidem, ibique, ubique, ubinam, ubivis, ubicunque, necūbī, sicūbī*.

2. SHORT,—(1) in *nīsī, quāsī, cū* (when a dissyllable),—(2) in the Greek ending *ŷī* of Dat. and Abl. Plur.: *Troāsī*,—(3) in the Dat. and Voc. Sing., which end short in the Greek: *Alexī, Pārīdī*.

*Ūī* follows the rule, but not the compounds, *ūtinam, ūtique, sicūū*.

619. **U** *final* is long: *fructū, cornū, dictū*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Indū* for *in*, and *nēnu* for *non*.

620. **O** *final* is common: *āmō, scrmō, virgō*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* *final* is,

1. LONG,—(1) in Datives and Ablatives: *scrō, illō, quō*,—(2) in Greek words, when it represents a long Greek vowel: *ēchō, Argō*,—(3) in Adverbs: *falsō, multō, ergō, quandō, omnīnō*; except those mentioned under 2 below.

2. SHORT in *duō, ēgō, octō*, and the adverbs *citō, illū, immō, mōdō*, and its compounds, *dummōdō, quōmōdō*, etc.

## 2. FINAL SYLLABLES IN MUTES OR LIQUIDS,—

C, D, L, M, N, R, T.

621. RULE VI.—In words of more than one syllable,

Final syllables in **c** are long;

Final syllables in **d, l, m, n, r, t**, are short:

*ālēc, illūc; illūd, consūl, āmēm, carmēm, āmōr, cāpūt*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following occur,

1. *Dōnēc* and *liēc*.

2. *M* *final* with the preceding vowel is generally elided before a vowel.  
See 669. I.

3. In Greek words,—(1) **en** is long; often also *an, in, on, yn*: *Hymēn, Anchisen, Titān, Delphīn, Actaeōn, Phorcyn*,—(2) **er** is long in *aēr, aethēr, crāter*, and a few other words with long ending in the original.

4. This rule does not, of course, apply to syllables long by previous rules.

### 3. FINAL SYLLABLES IN S.

**622. RULE VII.**—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **as, es, and os** are long; **is, us, ys**, short:

*āmās, mensās, mōnēs, nūbēs, hūs, servōs; āvis, urbīs, bōnūs, servūs, chlāmŷs.*

**623. As final** is long: *Aeneās, bōnās, illās.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*As final* is short,

1. In *anūs* and in a few Greek nouns in **ās**: *Arcūs, lampās.*

2. In Greek Accusatives of Dec. III.: *Arcādās, hērōās.*

**624. Es final** is long: *nūbēs, mōnēs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Es final* is short,

1. In Nominatives Singular of Dec. III., which increase short in the Gen.: *mīlēs* (ītis), *obsēs* (īdis), *interpretēs* (ētis). Except *ābiēs, āriēs, pāriēs, Cērēs*, and compounds of *pēs*; as *bīpēs, trīpēs*, etc.

2. In *pēnēs* and the compounds of *ēs*; as *ādēs, pōtēs.*

3. In Greek words,—(1) in the plural of those which increase in the Gen.: *Arcādēs, Troūdēs*,—(2) in a few neuters in **es**: *Hippōmērēs*,—(3) in a few Vocatives singular: *Dēmōsthēnēs.*

**625. Os final** is long: *custōs, virōs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Os final* is short,

1. In *compōs, impōs, exōs.*

2. In Greek words with the ending short in the Greek: *Dēlōs, mēlōs.*

**626. Is final** is short: *āvis, cānis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Is final* is long,

1. In Plural Cases: *mensīs, servīs, vōbīs.*

Hence *fōris, grātis, ingrātis.*

2. In Nominatives of Dec. III., increasing long in the Gen.: *Quīrīs* (ītis), *Sālāmīs* (īnis).

3. In the Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of Conj. IV.: *audīs.*

*Māvis, quīvīs, ūterrīs* follow the quantity of *vīs*.

4. In the Sing. Pres. Subjunct. Act.: *possīs, vėlīs, nōlīs, mālīs.*

5. Sometimes in the Sing. of the Fut. Perf. and of the Perf. Subj.: *āmā-vērīs, dōcuērīs.*

627. **Us** *final* is short: *servūs, bōnūs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Us* *final* is long,

1. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Gen.: *virtūs* (ūtis), *tellūs* (ūris).

But *pālūs* (u short) occurs in Horace. Ars P. 65.

2. In Dec. IV., in the Gen. Sing., and in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur.: *fructūs*.

3. In Greek words ending long in the original: *Panthūs, Sapphūs, triphūs*.

But we have *Oedipūs* and *pōtīphūs*.

628. **Ys** *final* is short: *chlāmīys, chēlīys*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are of course long: *Erynnīys* for *Erynnyes*.

## II. QUANTITY IN INCREMENTS.

629. A word is said to *increase* in declension, when it has in any case more syllables than in the nominative singular, and to have as many *increments of declension* as it has additional syllables: *sermo, sermōnis, sermōnibus*.

*Sermōnis*, having one syllable more than *sermo*, has one increment, while *sermōnibus* has two increments.

630. A verb is said to *increase* in conjugation, when it has in any part more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active, and to have as many *increments of conjugation* as it has additional syllables: *āmās, amātis, amābātis*.

*Amātis* has one increment, *amābātis* two.

631. If there is but one increment, it is uniformly the penult, if there are more than one, they are the penult with the requisite number of syllables before it. The increment nearest the beginning of the word is called the *first* increment, and those following this are called successively the *second, third, and fourth* increments. Thus

In *ser-mōn-i-bus*, the first increment is *mon*, the second *i*; and in *mon-u-ē-ra-mus*, the first is *u*, the second *e*, the third *ra*.

### I. Increments of Declension.

632. RULE VIII.—In the Increments of Declension, **a** and **o** are long; **e, i, u,** and **y**, short:

*aetas, aetātis, aetātibus; sermo, sermōnis; puer, puēri, puērōrum;*



fulgur, fulgūris; chlāmys, chlamýdis; bōnus, bonārum, bonōrum; ille, illārum, illōrum; miser, misēri; supplex, supplicis; sātur, satūri.

Vowels long or short by position are of course excepted.

**633. A** in the increments of declension is long: *par, pācis; bōnus, bonārum; duo, duābūs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment,

1. Of masculines in **āl** and **ar**: *Hannībal, Hannībālis; Caesar, Caesāris.*

Except *Car* and *Nar*.

2. Of nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant: *daps, dāpis; Arabs, Arābis.*

3. Of Greek nouns in **a** and **ās**: *poēma, poēmātis; Pallas, Pallādīs.*

4. Of the following:—(1) *baccar, hēpar, jūbar, lar, nectar, par* and its compounds,—(2) *ānas, mas, vas* (vādis),—(3) *sal, fax*, and a few rare Greek words in *ax*.

**634. O** in the increments of declension is long: *hōnor, honōris; bōnus, bonōrum; duo, duōbus.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* is short in the first increment,

1. Of Neuters: *aequor, aequōris; tempus, tempōris.* Except *os* (ōris), *ādor* (adōris), and comparatives.

2. Of words in **s** preceded by a consonant: *inops, inōpis.* Except *Cyclops* and *hydrops*.

3. Of *arbor, bos, lēpus*,—*compos, impos, mēmor, immēmor*,—*Allōbrox, Cappūdox, praecox.*

4. Of most Patrials: *Mācēdo, Macedōnis.*

5. Of many Greek nouns,—(1) those in **or**: *rhētor, Hector*,—(2) many in **o** and **on** increasing short in Greek: *aēdon, aedōnis*,—(3) in Greek compounds in **pus**: *trīpus* (ōdis), *Oedīpus*.

**635. E** in the increments of declension is short: *puer, puērī; liber, libērī.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is long in the first increment,

1. Of Decl. V., except in the forms *fidēi, rēi*, and *spēi*; as *dīzi, diērum, diēbus, rēbus*.

2. Of nouns in **ēn**, mostly Greek: *liēn, liēnis; Sirēn, Sirēnis.* So *Anio, Aniēnis*.

3. Of *Celtiber, Iber, ver*,—*hēres, lōcūples, merces, quies, inquires, rēquies, plebs*,—*lex, rex, ālec, ālex, vertex*.

4. Of a few Greek words in **es** and **er**, except *aēr* and *aether*; as *lēbes, lebētis; crāter, cratēris*.

**636. I** in the increments of declension is short: *mīles, mīlitis, mīlitibus; anceps, ancīpitis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long in the first increment,

1. Of most words in **ix**: *rādix, radicis; felix, felicis.*

But short in: *appendix, cālix, Cīlix, fīlix, fornix, nix, pix, sālīx, strīx*, and a few others, chiefly proper names.

2. Of *dis, glis, lis, vis, Quiris, Samnis*.
3. Of *delphin* and a few rare Greek words.
4. For quantity of the ending *ius*, see 612. 3.

637. **U** in the increments of declension is short: *dux, dūcis; arcus, arcūbus; sātur, satūri*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the first increment,

1. Of nouns in **us** with the genitive in **uris, utis, udis**: *jus, jūris; sālus, salūtis; pālus, palūdis*. Except *intercus, Līgus, pēcus*.
2. Of *fur, frux, lux, plus, Pollux*.

638. **Y** in the increments of declension is short: *chlāmys, chlamydis*.

EXCEPTIONS.—This increment occurs only in Greek words, and is long in those in *yn, ynīs*, and in a few others.

## II. Increments of Conjugation.

639. RULE IX.—In the Increments of Conjugation (630), **a, e, and o** are long; **i and u** short:

*āmāmus, amēmus, amātōte, rēgimus, sūmus*.

1. In ascertaining the increments of the irregular verbs, *fēro, vōlo*, and their compounds, the full form of the second person, *feris, volis*, etc., must be used. Thus in *fērēbam* and *vōlēbam*, the increments are *re* and *le*.

2. In ascertaining the increments of reduplicated forms (254), the reduplication is not counted. Thus *dēdīmus* has but one increment *dī*.

640. **A** in the increments of conjugation is long: *āmāre*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment of **do**: *dāre, dābam, circumdābam*.

641. **E** in the increments of conjugation is long: *mōnēre*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is short before **r**,

1. In the tenses in **ram, rim, ro**: *āmāvēram, amavērim, amavēro; rexerat, rexerit*.

2. In first increment of the Present and Imperfect of Conj. III.: *rēgēre, regēris, regērem, regērer*.

3. In the Fut. ending **bēris, bēre**: *āmābēris, or -ēre, mōnēbēris*.

4. Rarely in the Perf. ending **erunt**: *stētērunt* for *steterunt*. See 235, also *Systole*, 669. IV.

642. **O** in the increments of conjugation is long without exception: *mōnētōte, rēgītōte*.

**643. I** in the increments of conjugation is short : *rēgītis, reximus*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long, except before a vowel,

1. In the first increment of Conj. IV., except *imus* of the Perf. : *audire, audiri, auditum* ; *sentio, sentimus, sensimus* (perf.).

2. In Conj. III. in the first increment of perfects and supines in *ivi* and *itum* (276. III.) and of the parts derived from them (except *imus* of Perf. : *trivimus*) : *cūpīvi, cupivērat, cupitus* ; *pētīvi, petitus* ; *cāpessīvi, capessitūrus*. *Gāvīsus* from *gaudeo* follows the same analogy.

3. In the endings *imus* and *itis* of Pres. Subj. : *simus, sitis* ; *velimus, velitis* (239. 3).

4. In *nōlīte, nolito, nolitōte*, and in the different persons of *ibam, ibo*, from *eo* (295).

5. Sometimes in the endings *rimus* and *ritis* of the Fut. Perf. and Perf. Subj. : *amāverimus, amāveritis*.

**644. U** in the increments of conjugation is short : *vōlūmus*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the Supine and the parts formed from it : *vōlūtum, volūtūrus, amātūrus*.

### III. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE ENDINGS.

**645. RULE X.**—The following derivative endings have the penult long :

I. *ābrum, ācrum, ātrum* :

*flābrum, simūlācrum, ārātrum*.

II. *ēdo, ido, ūdo* ; *āgo, igo, ūgo* :

*dulcēdo, cūpīdo, solitūdo* ; *vōrāgo, ōrigo, aerūgo*.

III. *āis, ēis, ōis, ōtis, ine, ōne*—*in patronymies* :

*Ptolēmaīs, Chrēsēs, Minōis, Icāriōtis, Nērīne, Acrisiōne*.

Except *Dānāis, Phōcāis, Thēbāis, Nērēis*.

IV. *ēla, ile* ; *ālis, ēlis, ūlis* :

*quērēla, ōvile* ; *mortālis, fidēlis, cūrālis*.

V. *ānus, ēnus, ōnus, ūnus* ; *āna, ēna, ōna, ūna* :

*urbānus, ēgēnus, patrōnus, tribūnus* ; *membrāna, hābēna, annōna, lācūna*.

Except *galbānus*.

VI. *āris, ārus* ; *ōrus, ōsus* ; *āvus, ivus* :

*sālūtāris, āvārus* ; *cānōrus, ānimōsus* ; *octāvus, aestivus*.

## VII. ātus, itus, ūtus; ātim, itim, ūtim; ētum, ēta:

ālātus, turrītus, cornūtus; singlātīm, vīrītīm, trībūtīm; quercētum, mōnēta.

Except (1) *ānhēlitus, fortuītus, grātuitus, hālītus, hospītus, servītus, spīritus*, (2) *affātīm, stūtīm*, and adverbs in *itus*, as *divīnītus*; and (3) participles provided for by 639.

## VIII. ēnī, īnī, ōnī,—in distributives:

septēni, quīni, octōni.

646. RULE XI.—The following derivative endings have the penult short:

## I. ādes, iādes, īdes,—in patronymics:

Aenēādes, Lāertiādes, Tantālides.

Except (1) those in *ides* from nouns in *eus* and *es*; as, *Pēlides* (Pelcus), *Neoclēdes* (Neocles), and (2) *Amphiārāides, Amjclides, Bēlides, Cōrōnides, Ljcurgides*.

## II. iācus, īcus, īdus:

Cōrinthiācus, mōdicus, cūpidus.

Except *āmīcus, anticus, aprīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, pūdicus*.

III. ōlus, ōla, ōlum; ūlus, ūla, ūlum; cūlus, cūla, cūlum,—in diminutives:

filiōlus, filiōla, atriōlum; hortūlus, virgūla, oppidūlum; floscūlus, particūla, mūnuscūlum.

## IV. ētas, itas,—in nouns; īter, itus,—in adverbs:

piētas, vērītas; fortīter, divīnītus.

V. ātilis, īlis, bīlis,—in verbals; īnus,—in adjectives denoting material or time:

versātilis, dōcīlis, āmābīlis; ādāmantīnus, cedrinus, crastīnus, diūtīnus.

Except *mātūtīnus, rēpentīnus, respertīnus*.

1. **Ilis** in adjectives from nouns usually has the penult long: *civilis, hostilis, puērīlis, vīrīlis*.

2. **Inus** denoting *characteristic* (325) usually has the penult long: *cānīnus, ēquīnus, mārīnus*.

647. RULE XII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult long:

## I. āceus, ūceus, āneus, ārius, ārium, ōrius:

rōsāceus, pannūceus, sūbitāneus, cībārius, cōlumbārium, censōrius.

## II. ābīlis, ātilis, ātīcus:

āmābīlis, versātilis, āquātīcus.

III. *āginta, iginti, ēsimus*,—*in numerals*:

*nōnāginta, vīginti, centēsīmus.*

648. RULE XIII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult short:

I. *ibīlis, itūdo, ōlentus, ūlentus.*

*crēdibīlis, sōlītūdo, vīnōlentus, ōpūlentus.*

II. *ūrīo*,—*in desideratives*:

*ēsūrīo, emptūrīo, partūrīo.*

#### IV. QUANTITY OF STEM SYLLABLES.

##### I. In Primitives.

649. The quantity of stem-syllables in primitive words, when not determined by the General Rules (Sec. I.), is in most cases best referred to authority. Thus,

In *māter, cēdo, scribo, dōno, ūtor*, the first syllable is *long by authority*, while in *pāter, tēgo, mīco, sōno, ūter*, it is *short by authority*.

650. RULE XIV.—The quantity of stem-syllables remains unchanged in inflection:

In DECLENSION,—*āvis, āvem; nūbes, nūbium.*

In COMPARISON,—*lēvis, lēvior, lēvissīmus.*

In CONJUGATION,—*mōneo, mōnēbam, mōnuī.*

1. Position may however affect the quantity: *āger, āgri* (611, 612); *possum, pōtui; solvo, sōlūtum; volvo, vōlūtum.*

Here *ā* becomes *ā* before *gr*. The *o* in *possum, solvo*, and *volvo*, long only by position, becomes short before a single consonant.

2. *Gigno* gives *gēnuī, gēnītum*, and *pōno, pōsui, pōsītum.*

3. See also 651, 652.

651. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long, unless short by position:

*jūvo, jūvi, jūtum; fōveo, fōvi, fōtum.*

1. These Perfects and Supines, if formed from Presents with the first syllable short, are exceptions to 650.

2. Seven Perfects have the first syllable short:

*bībī, dēdī, fūdī, scīdī, stētī, stītī, tūlī.*

3. Ten Supines have the first syllable short:

*cūtum, dātum, itum, litum, quītum, rūtum, rūtum, sūtum, sūtum, stūtum.*<sup>1</sup>

652. In trisyllabic Reduplicated Perfects the first two syllables are short:

*cādo, cēcīdi; cāno, cēcīni; disco, didīci.*

1. *Caedo* has *cēcīdi* in distinction from *cēcīdi* from *cādo*.

2. The second syllable may be made long by position: *cūcurri, mōmordi.*

## II. In Derivatives.

653. RULE XV.—Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives:

*bōnus, bōnitas; tīmeo, tīmor; ānīmus, ānīmōsus; cīvis, cīvīcus; cūra, cūro.*

1. Frequentatives in *ito*, have *i* short: *clāmīto*. See 332. I.

2. In a few Derivatives the short vowel of the primitive is lengthened:

<i>hōmo,</i>	<i>hūmānus,</i>	<i>rēgo,</i>	<i>rēx, rēgis, rēgūla,</i>
<i>lāteo,</i>	<i>lāterna,</i>	<i>sēcus,</i>	<i>sēcūs,</i>
<i>lēgo,</i>	<i>lēx, lēgis,</i>	<i>sēdeo,</i>	<i>sēdes, sēdūlus,</i>
<i>mācer,</i>	<i>mācēro,</i>	<i>sēro,</i>	<i>sēmen,</i>
<i>mōveo,</i>	<i>mōbīlis,</i>	<i>suspīcor,</i>	<i>suspīcio,</i>
<i>persōno,</i>	<i>persōna,</i>	<i>tēgo,</i>	<i>tēgūla.</i>

3. In a few Derivatives the long vowel of the primitive is shortened:

<i>ācer,</i>	<i>ācerbus,</i>	<i>nōtum,</i>	<i>nōta,</i>
<i>dīco,</i>	<i>dīcax,</i>	<i>ōdi,</i>	<i>ōdium,</i>
<i>dūco,</i>	<i>dux, dūcis,</i>	<i>sōpio,</i>	<i>sōpor,</i>
<i>fīdo,</i>	<i>fīdes,</i>	<i>vādo,</i>	<i>vādum,</i>
<i>lūceo,</i>	<i>lūcerna,</i>	<i>vōx, vōcis,</i>	<i>vōco.</i>
<i>mōles,</i>	<i>mōlestus,</i>		

This change of quantity in some instances is the result of contraction: *mōrībīlis, mōrībīlis, mōbīlis*, and in others it serves to distinguish words of the same orthography: as the verbs *lēgis, lēges, rēgis, rēges, sēdes*, from the nouns *lēgis, lēges, rēgis, rēges, sēdes*, or the verbs *dūcis, dūces, fīdes*, from the nouns *dūcis, dūces, fīdes*.

## III. In Compounds.

654. RULE XVI.—Compounds generally retain the quantity of their elements:

*antē-fēro, dē-fēro, dē-dūco, in-aequālis, prō-dūco.*

1. The change of a vowel or diphthong does not affect the quantity:

*dē-līgo (lēgo), oc-cīdo (cādo), oc-cīdo (caedo).*

<sup>1</sup> From *sisto*, but *stūtum* from *sto*.

2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—**Di**, **sē**, and **vē** are long, **rē** short: **ne** sometimes long and sometimes short:

*didūco, sēdūco, vēcors, rēdūco, nēdum, nēfas:*

1) *Di* is short in *dīrīmo, dīsertus*.

2) *Nē* is long in *nēdum, nēmo, nēquam, nēquāquam, nēquidquam, nēquītia*, and *nēre*. In other words it is short.

3) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in a few words: *rēlīgio, rēlīquiae, rēpērit, rēpūlit, rētūlit*, etc.

3. CHANGE OF QUANTITY.—In a few words the quantity of the second element is changed. Thus

*Dīco* gives *-dīcus*; *jūro*, *-jēro*; *nōtus*, *-nītus*; *nūbo*, *nūba*: *mālē-dīcus*, *de-jēro*, *cog-nītus*, *prō-nūba*.

4. PRO.—*Pro* is short in the following words:

*Prōcella, prōcul, prōfānus, prōfāri, prōfecto, prōfestus, prōficiscor, prōfiteor, prōfūgio, prōfūgus, prōfundus, prōnēpos, prōneptis, prōtervus*, and most Greek words, as *prōphēta*, generally in *prōfundo, prōpāgo, prōpīno*, rarely in *prōcūro, prōpello*.

5. STEM.—When the first element is the stem of a word (333. III.), it is often followed by a short connecting vowel:

*cāl-ē-fācio, lāb-ē-fācio, bell-i-gēro, aed-i-fīco, art-i-fex, ampl-i-fīco, lōc-ū-ples*.

Before *fācio* in a few compounds *e* is sometimes lengthened: *liquēfācio, patēfācio, putrēfācio, tēpēfācio*. The first *e* in *ridēlicet* is long.

6. I LONG.—*I* is long,—(1) in the first part of compounds of *dies*: *mērīdies, prīdie, postrīdie, quōtidie, trīdium*, and (2) in the contracted forms, *bīgae, trīgae, quadrīgae, ilīcet, scīlicet, tibicen* for *tibiicen*.

But *i* is short in *biduum* and *quātrīdium*.

7. O LONG.—*O* is long in *contrō-, intrō-, retrō-*, and *quandō-* in composition; as: *contrōversia, intrōdūco, retrōverto, quandōque*, but *quandōquīdem*.

8. SPECIAL WORDS.—*Hōdie, quāsi*, and *sīquīdem* have the first syllable short.

# CHAPTER II.

## VERSIFICATION.

### SECTION I.

#### GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJECT

655. Latin Versification is based upon Quantity and Accent. Syllables are combined into certain metrical groups called Feet, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into Verses.

#### I. METRICAL FEET.

656. Feet are either simple or compound. For convenience of reference we add the following list :

##### *I. Simple Feet.*

##### DISSYLLABIC FEET.

Spondee,	<i>two long syllables,</i>	— —	Lēgēs.
Trochee, <sup>1</sup>	<i>a long and a short,</i>	— ∪	Lēgīs.
Iambus,	<i>a short and a long,</i>	∪ —	Pārēns.
Pyrrhic,	<i>two short,</i>	∪ ∪	Pātēr.

##### TRISYLLABIC FEET.

Dactyl,	<i>a long and two short,</i>	— ∪ ∪	cārmīnā.
Anapaest,	<i>two short and a long,</i>	∪ ∪ —	bōnītās.
Tribrach,	<i>three short,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪	dōmīnūs.
Molossus,	<i>three long,</i>	— — —	libērtās.
Amphibrach,	<i>a short, a long, and a short,</i>	∪ — ∪	āmīcūs.
Amphimacer, <sup>2</sup>	<i>a long, a short, and a long,</i>	— ∪ —	millītēs.
Bacchius,	<i>a short and two long,</i>	∪ — —	dōlōrēs.
Antibacchius,	<i>two long and a short,</i>	— — ∪	pāstōrīs.

##### *II. Compound Feet.*

These are only compounds of the dissyllabic feet, and all have four syllables.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes called *Choree*.

<sup>2</sup> Also called *Cretic*.



Dispondee,	<i>double spondee,</i>	— — —	praëcëptōrēs.
Ditrochee,	<i>double trochee,</i>	— ∪ — ∪	civitatīs.
Diiambus,	<i>double iambus,</i>	∪ — ∪ —	āmōēnītās.
Proceleusmatic,	<i>double pyrrhic,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪ ∪	mēmōriā.
Greater Ionic,	<i>spondee and pyrrhic,</i>	— — ∪ ∪	sēntentiā.
Lesser Ionic,	<i>pyrrhic and spondee,</i>	∪ ∪ — —	ādōlescēns.
Choriambus,	<i>trochee (choree), and iambus,</i>	— ∪ ∪ —	impātīēns.
Antispast,	<i>iambus and trochee,</i>	∪ — — ∪	vēiēcundūs.
First Epitrite,	<i>iambus and spondee,</i>	∪ — — —	āmāvērunt.
Second Epitrite,	<i>trochee and spondee,</i>	— ∪ — —	cōnditōrēs.
Third Epitrite,	<i>spondee and iambus,</i>	— — ∪ —	auctōritās.
Fourth Epitrite,	<i>spondee and trochee,</i>	— — — ∪	ōrnāmēntā.
First Paeon,	<i>trochee and pyrrhic,</i>	— ∪ ∪ ∪	hīstōriā.
Second Paeon,	<i>iambus and pyrrhic,</i>	∪ — ∪ ∪	āmābilis.
Third Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and trochee,</i>	∪ ∪ — ∪	pūērīlis.
Fourth Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and iambus,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪ —	cēlērītās.

1. COMMON FEET.—The feet of most frequent occurrence in the best Latin poets are,

1) The *Dactyl* and *Spondee*, used in the Heroic Hexameter.

2) Less frequent the *Iambus*, *Trochee*, *Tribrach*, *Anapaest*, and *Choriambus*.

2. GROUPS.—A *Dipody* is a group of two feet; a *Tripody*, of three; a *Tetrapody*, of four, etc. A *Triemimēris* is a group of three half feet, i. e., a foot and a half; *Penthemimēris*, of two and a half; *Hepthemimēris*, of three and a half, etc.

657. METRICAL EQUIVALENTS.—A long syllable may often be resolved into two short ones, as equivalent to it in quantity, or two short ones may be contracted into a long one. The forms thus produced are metrical equivalents of the original forms. Thus,

The *Dactyl* becomes a *Spondee* by contracting the two short syllables into one long syllable; the *Spondee* becomes a *Dactyl* by resolving the second syllable, or an *Anapaest* by resolving the first. Accordingly the *Dactyl*, the *Spondee*, and the *Anapaest* are metrical equivalents. In like manner the *Iambus*, the *Trochee*, and the *Tribrach* are metrical equivalents.

658. METRICAL SUBSTITUTES.—In certain kinds of verse, feet are sometimes substituted for those which are not their metrical equivalents. Thus,

The *Spondee* is often substituted for the *Iambus* or the *Trochee*, though not equivalent to either. See 679, 682.

659. ICTUS OR RHYTHMIC ACCENT.—As in the pronunciation of a word one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called accent, so in the pronunciation of a metrical foot one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called Rhythmic Accent or Ictus.

1. **SIMPLE FEET.**—Feet consisting of both long and short syllables have the ictus uniformly on the long syllables, unless used for other feet. Thus,

The Dactyl and the Trochee have the ictus on the first syllable; the Anapaest and the Iambus on the last.

2. **EQUIVALENTS AND SUBSTITUTES.**—These take the ictus of the feet for which they are used. Thus,

The Spondee, when used for the Dactyl, takes the ictus of the Dactyl, i. e., on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the ictus of the Anapaest, i. e., on the last syllable.

1) Feet consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are generally equivalents or substitutes, and are accented accordingly.

2) When two short syllables of an equivalent take the place of an accented long syllable of the original foot, the ictus rests chiefly on the first of these two. Thus the Dactyl used for the Anapaest takes the ictus on the first short syllable.

3. **COMPOUND FEET.**—These take the ictus of the feet of which they are composed. Thus,

The *Choriambus* (trochee and iambus) takes the ictus of the trochee on the first syllable and that of the iambus on the last.

But *Ionic* feet are generally read with the ictus on the first long syllable.

660. **ARSIS AND THESIS.**—The accented part of each foot is called the Arsis (*raising*); and the unaccented part, Thesis (*lowering*).

## II. VERSES.

661. A verse is a line of poetry, and is either simple or compound.

I. A Simple verse has one characteristic or fundamental foot, which determines the ictus for the whole verse. Thus,

Every Dactylic Verse has the ictus on the first syllable, because the Dactyl, its characteristic foot, has it on that syllable.

II. A Compound verse has a characteristic foot for each member. See 692.

662. **CAESURAL PAUSE.**—Most verses are divided into two nearly equal parts by a pause or rest called the caesura<sup>1</sup> or caesural pause. See 673, 674.

663. **METRICAL NAMES OF VERSES.**—The metrical name of a verse designates,

I. The Characteristic foot. Thus,

<sup>1</sup> Caesura (from *caedo*, to cut) means a cutting; it cuts or divides the verse into parts.

Dactylic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses have respectively the Dactyl, the Trochee, and the Iambus as the characteristic foot.

## II. The Number of Feet or Measures.<sup>1</sup> Thus,

1. Dactylic Hexameter is Dactylic verse of six measures.

2. A verse consisting of one measure is *Monometer*; of two, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*.

## III. The Completeness or Incompleteness of the measures. Thus,

1. A verse is termed *Acatalectic*, when its last measure is complete; *Catalectic*, when it is incomplete.

1) A *Catalectic* verse is said to be *catalectic in syllabam*, in *disyllabum*, or in *trisyllabum*, according as the incomplete foot has one, two, or three syllables.

2) A *Brachycatalectic* verse wants the closing foot of the last Dipody.

3) An *Acephalous* verse wants the first syllable of the first foot.

4) A *Hypercatalectic* verse, also called *Hypermeter*, has an excess of syllables.

2. The full metrical name combines the three particulars enumerated under I. II. and III., as *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, *Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic*, etc.

1) But for the sake of brevity the term *Acatalectic* is often omitted when it can be done without ambiguity.

2) Verses are sometimes known by names which merely designate the number of feet or measures. Thus *Hexameter* (six measures) sometimes designates the *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, and *Senarius* (six feet), the *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic*.

664. SPECIAL NAMES OF VERSES.—Many verses are often designated by names derived from celebrated poets. Thus,

*Alcaic* from Alcaeus, *Archilochian* from Archilochus, *Sapphic* from Sappho, *Glyconic*, from Glycon, etc.

Verses sometimes receive a name from the kind of subjects to which they were applied: as *Heroic*, applied to heroic subjects; *Paroemiac*, to proverbs, etc.

665. FINAL SYLLABLE.—The final syllable of a verse may generally be either long or short.

666. STANZA.—A stanza is a combination of two or more verses of different metres into one metrical whole. See 699, 700.

A stanza of two lines is called a *Distich*; of three, a *Tristich*; of four, a *Tetrastich*.

---

<sup>1</sup> A measure is a single foot, except in Anapaestic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses, where it is a Dipody or Pair of feet.

667. METRE.—Metre signifies *measure*, and is used to designate,

1. A Foot or Dipody, as the measure, or metrical element of a verse.

2. A Verse or Stanza, as the measure of a poem.

668. SCANNING.—Scanning consists in separating a poem, or verse, into the feet of which it is composed.

### III. FIGURES OF PROSODY.

669. The ancient poets sometimes allowed themselves, in the use of letters and syllables, certain liberties generally termed Figures of Prosody. These are,

I. SYNALOEPHA.—This is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, before a word beginning with a vowel:

Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, *for* Monstrum horrendum informe ingens. *Virg.*

1. No account is taken of *h*, as it is only a breathing (2. 2). Hence *horrendum* is treated as a word beginning with a vowel.

2. Interjections, *o*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, etc., are not elided, but in other words the elision generally takes place in the best poets.

3. Final *e* in the interrogative *ne* is sometimes elided before a consonant: Pyrrhîn' connûbia servas? *for* Pyrrhîne connûbia servas? *Virg.*

4. The elision of *s* occurs in the early poets:

Ex omnîbu' rēbus, *for* Ex omnîbus rēbus. *Lucr.*

5. *Synaloepha* may occur at the end of a line when the next line begins with a vowel. It is then called *Synapheia*.

II. SYNAERESIS.—This is the contraction of two syllables into one:

aureā, dēinde, dēinceps, îdem, îsdem.

1. Synaeresis is of frequent application. It may unite

1) Two successive vowels, as in the examples above.

2) A vowel and a diphthong: *ēāedem*.

3) Two vowels separated by *h*, as only a breathing: *prohibeat*, pronounced *proibeat*.

2. In the different parts of *dēsum*, *ee* is generally pronounced as one syllable: *dēesse*, *dēest*, *dēerat*, *dēerit*, etc.: so *ei* in the verb *anteo*: *antēre*, *antērem*, *antēis*, *antēt*.

3. *I* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sound of *y* and *v*: Thus, *ābītē* and *ārītē*, become *ābyētē* and *āryētē*; *gēnūā* and *tēnūēs* become *gēnwā* and *tēnwēs*.

III. DIAERESIS.—This is the resolution of one syllable into two :

aurāi *for* aurae, Orphēūs *for* Orphēūs, soluendus, *for* solvendus, silua *for* silva.

As a matter of fact the Latin poets seldom, if ever, actually divide any syllable into two, and the examples generally explained by *diaeresis* are only ancient forms, occasionally used by them for effect or convenience.

IV. SYSTOLE.—This is the shortening of a long syllable :  
tūlērunt *for* tūlērunt, stētērunt *for* stētērunt (235), vīdē'n *for* vīdēsne.

This is a rare poetical license, occurring most frequently in the final vowels and diphthongs, which would otherwise be elided. See 669. I. 2.

V. DIASTOLE.—This is the lengthening of a short syllable :

Prīāmīdes *for* Prīāmīdes.

1. This is a poetical license, used chiefly in proper names and in final syllables in the arsis of the foot (669). In the latter case the syllable is said to be lengthened by the *ictus*.

## SECTION II.

### VARIETIES OF VERSE.

#### I. DACTYLIC VERSE.

670. All Dactylic Verses are measured by single feet (663. II.), and consist of Dactyls and their metrical equivalents, Spondees. The ictus is on the first syllable of every foot.

#### I. Dactylic Hexameter.

671. The Dactylic Hexameter consists of six feet. The first four are either Dactyls or Spondees, the fifth a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee (665).

The scale is,<sup>1</sup>

$\frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \text{—}$

Quādrūpē- | dāntē pū- | trem sōnī- | tū quātīt | āngūlā | cāmpum. *Virg.*

Armā vī- | rūmquē cā- | nō Trō- | jāe quī | prīmūs āb | ōris. *Virg.*

Infān- | dūm rē- | gīnā jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrem. *Virg.*

Illī<sup>2</sup> īn- | tēr sē- | sē māg- | nā vī | brāchiā | tōllūnt. *Virg.*

<sup>1</sup> In this scale the sign ' marks the *ictus* (659).

<sup>2</sup> The final *i* of *illi* is elided by *Synalopha* (669).

672. VARIETIES.—The scale of dactylic hexameters admits sixteen varieties, produced by varying the relative number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

1. ILLUSTRATION.—Thus a verse may contain,

1) Five dactyls and one spondee, as in the first example above.

2) Four dactyls and two spondees. These again admit four different arrangements.

3) Three dactyls and three spondees, as in the second and third examples above. But these again admit six different arrangements.

4) Two dactyls and four spondees. These admit four different arrangements.

5) One dactyl and five spondees, as in the fourth example.

2. EFFECT OF DACTYLS.—Dactyls produce a rapid movement and are adapted to lively subjects. Spondees produce a slow movement and are adapted to grave subjects. But generally the best effect is produced in successive lines by variety in the number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

3. SPONDAIC LINE.—The Hexameter sometimes takes a spondee in the fifth place. It is then called Spondaic, and generally has a dactyl as its fourth foot:

Cără dě- | ūm sǎbǒ- | lēs māg- | num Jǒvīs | ĩncrē- | mēntum. *Virg.*

673. CAESURAL PAUSE.—The favorite caesural pause of the Hexameter is *after the arsis*, or *in the thesis*, of the third foot:

Armā- | tī tēn- | dunt; || ĩt | clāmǒr ět | āgmīnē | fāctō. *Virg.*

Infān- | dūm, rē- | gīnā, || jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrem. *Virg.*

In the first line the caesural pause, marked ||, is after *tendunt*, after the arsis of the third foot; and in the second line after *regina*, in the thesis (*nā jū*) of the third foot.

1. RARE CAESURAL PAUSE.—The caesural pause is sometimes in the fourth foot, and then an additional pause is often introduced in the second foot. Sometimes indeed this last becomes the principal pause:

Crēdīdē- | rīm; || vēr | illūd ě- | rāt, || vēr | māgnūs ā- | gēbat. *Virg.*

2. BUCOLIC CAESURA.—A pause between the fourth and fifth feet is generally called the *bucolic caesura*, because often used in pastoral poetry:

Ingēn- | tem coe- | lō sōnī- | tūm dēdīt; || ĩndē sē- | cūsus. *Virg.*

3. FAULTY CAESURA.—A caesural pause at the end of the third foot is regarded as a blemish in the verse:

Pālvrē- | lēntūs ě- | quīs fūrīt; || ōmnēs | ārmā rē- | quĩrunt. *Virg.*

674. CAESURA AND CAESURAL PAUSE.—The ending of a word within a foot always produces a *caesura*. A line may therefore have several caesuras, but generally only one of these (sometimes two) is marked by the caesural pause:

Armă vî- | rumque că- | nō, || Trō- | jaē qui | prīmūs āb | ōris. *Virg.*

1. Here there is a caesura in every foot except the last, but only one of these, that after *cāno*, has the caesural pause.

2. In determining which caesura is to be marked by the pause the reader must be guided by the sense, introducing the pause where there is a pause of sense, or where at least it will not interfere with the sense.

3. The caesura, with or without the pause, is an important feature in every hexameter. A line without it is prosaic in the extreme:

Rōmaē | moēnīā | tērrūit | impīgēr | Hānnibāl | ārmis. *Enn.*

**675. LAST WORD OF THE HEXAMETER.**—The last word of the Hexameter should be either a dissyllable or a trisyllable. See examples above.

1. Two monosyllables are not particularly objectionable, and sometimes even produce a happy effect:

Praecīpī- | tant cū- | rae, || tūr- | bātāquē | fūnērē | mēns est. *Virg.*

*Est* is indeed often used even when not preceded by another monosyllable.

2. A single monosyllable, except *est*, is not often used at the end of the line, except for the purpose of emphasis or humor:

Pärtūrī- | ūnt mōn- | tēs, || nas- | cētūr | rīdīcū- | lūs mus. *Hor.*

## II. Dactylic Pentameter.

**676.** The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts separated by the caesural pause. Each part consists of two Dactyls and the arsis of a third. The Spondee may take the place of the Dactyl in the first part, but not in the second:

$\frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \cup \cup \mid \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \cup \cup \mid \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \parallel \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \cup \cup \mid \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \cup \cup \mid \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}}$

Admōnī- | tū coe- | pī || fōrtiōr | ēssē tū- | ō. *Ovid.*

1. **PENTAMETER.**—The name *Pentameter* is founded on the ancient division of the line into five feet; the first and second being dactyls or spondees; the third, a spondee; the fourth and fifth, anapaests.

2. **ELEGIAC DISTICH.**—The Dactylic Pentameter is seldom, if ever, used, except in the Elegiac Distich, which consists of the Hexameter followed by the Pentameter:

Sēmīšē- | pūltā vī- | rūm || cūr- | vīs fērī- | ūntūr ā- | rātris  
Ossā, rū- | inō- | sūs || ōccūlīt | hērbā dō- | mūs. *Or.*

## III. Other Dactylic Verses.

**677.** The other varieties of dactylic verse are less important, but the following deserve mention:

I. DACTYLIC TETRAMETER.—This consists of the last four feet of the Hexameter :

Ibīmūs | O sōcī- | ī, cōmī- | tēsque. *Hor.*

In compound verses, as the Greater Archilochian, the tetrameter in composition with other metres, has a dactyl in the fourth place. See 691. I.

II. DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.—This is the Lesser Archilochian, and is identical with the second half of the Dactylic Pentameter :

Arbōrī- | būsquē cō- | mae. *Hor.*

III. DACTYLIC DIMETER.—This is the Adonic, and consists of a Dactyl and Spondee :

Mōntīs ī- | māgō. *Hor.*

## II. ANAPAESTIC VERSE.

678. Anapaestic verses consist of Anapaestic dipodies.

An Anapaestic dipody consists of two Anapaests, but admits Spondees or Dactyls as equivalents.

I. ANAPAESTIC DIMETER consists of two dipodies :

Vēnīent : ānnīs || saeculā : sērīs.<sup>1</sup> *Sen.*

This is sometimes catalectic (663. III. 1), and has only a long syllable in place of the last foot. It is then called *Paroemiae*.

II. ANAPAESTIC MONOMETER consists of one dipody :

Dātū rēs : pātriāe. *Auson.*

1. In Anapaestic verse Dactyls are used sparingly, and are generally followed by Spondees. Each dipody generally ends with a word.

2. The last syllable is not common, as in most kinds of verse (665), but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity.

3. Anapaestic verse does not occur in the best Latin Poets.

## III. TROCHAIC VERSE.

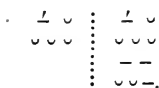
679. Trochaic verses consist of Trochaic dipodies.

A Trochaic dipody consists of two Trochees, or of a Trochee and a Spondee ; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Trochee, and the Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second :

---

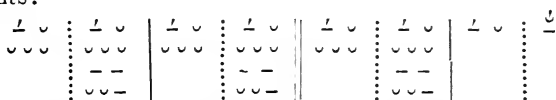
<sup>1</sup> In verses measured by dipodies, a dotted line is placed between the feet, a single line between the dipodies, and a double line in the place of the caesural pause.





### I. Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic.

680. This consists of four Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. The caesural pause is at the end of the fourth foot, and the incomplete dipody admits no equivalents:



Nüllă : vōx hū- | mănă : cōnstăt || ābsquē : sēptēm | littē- : ris,  
Rītē : vōcā- | lēs vō- : cāvīt || quās mǎ- : gīstră | Graēcī- : a. *Ter. Mau.*

1. In *Proper Names*, a dactyl may be introduced in any foot except the fourth and seventh.

2. The *Proceleusmatic* for the Spondee sometimes occurs.

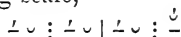
3. In *Comedy* the Spondee and its equivalents occur in the odd feet, as well as in the even, except in the last dipody.

4. The *Trochaic Tetrameter* also occurs in the earlier poets in its complete form, i. e., with eight full feet:

Ipsē : sūmmis | sūxīs : fixūs || āspē- : rīs ē- | vīscē- : rūtus. *Enn.*

### II. Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic.

681. This consists of two Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. In Horace it admits no equivalents and has the following scale,



Aulă : divī- | tēm mǎ- : net. *Hor.*

1. This is sometimes called *Iambic Dimeter Acephalous*, i. e., an Iambic Dimeter with the first syllable wanting.

2. A *Trochaic Tripody*,—three Trochees—technically called a *Trochaic Dimeter Brachycatalectic*, or an *Ithyphallicus*, occurs in the Greater Archilochian. See 691. I.

3. For *Sapphic Verse*, see 691. IV.

4. For *Phalaecean*, see 691. V.

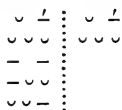
### IV. IAMBIC VERSE.

682. Iambic verses consist of Iambic dipodies.

An Iambic dipody consists of two Iambi, or of a Spondee and an Iambus; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Iambus, and sometimes the Dactyl or the

Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

In its full form it has the following scale :



### I. Iambic Trimeter.

683. This verse, also called *Senarius*, consists of three Iambic Dipodies.

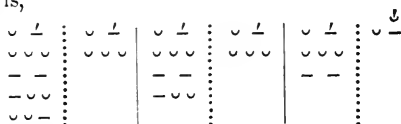
I. The first dipody has the full form.

II. The second admits no Anapaest.

III. The third admits no Anapaest or Dactyl, and in its second foot, no equivalent whatever.

IV. The Caesural Pause is usually in the third foot, but may be in the fourth.

The scale is,



Quid ōb- : sc̄rā- | tīs || au- : rībūs | fūndīs : pr̄ces? *Hor.*

Nēptū- : nūs āl- | tō || tūn- : dīt hī- | bērnūs : sālo. *Hor.*

Hās in- : tēr ēpū- | lās || ūl- : jūvāt | pāstās : ōves. *Hor.*

1. PROPER NAMES.—In proper names an Anapaest is admissible in any foot, except the last, but must be in a single word.

2. HORACE.—In Horace the only feet freely admitted are the Iambus and the Spondee; their equivalents, the Tribrach, the Dactyl and Anapaest, are used very sparingly. The Tribrach never occurs in the fifth foot and only once in the first. The Anapaest occurs only twice in all.

3. COMEDY.—In Comedy great liberty is taken, and the Spondee and its equivalents are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

4. CHOLIAMBUS.—This is a variety of *Iambic Trimeter* with a Spondee in the sixth foot and an Iambus in the fifth :

Mis̄er : Cātūl- | lē dē- : sīnās | inēp- : tīre. *Catul.*

*Choliambus* means *lame* or *limping Iambus*, and is so called from its limping movement. It is sometimes called *Seazon* for the same reason, and sometimes *Hipponactean*, from Hipponax, its reputed inventor.

684. IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.—This is the Iambic Trimeter with the last foot incomplete. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tri-

[illegible]

## II. Iambic Dimeter.

[illegible]

Ast ěgŏ : vĭcĭs- | sĭm rĭ- : sĕro. *Hor.*

[illegible]
$$\begin{array}{c|c} \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ \cap \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ \cap \end{array} \\ \vdots & \vdots \end{array} \quad \bigg| \quad \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ \cap \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ \cap \end{array} \quad \vdots \quad \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ \cap \end{array}$$

Au- : lă dī- | vītēm : mănet. *Hor.*

### III. Iambic Tetrameter.

Quāntum in- : tellēx- | ī mōdō : sēnīs || sēntēn- : tīām | dē nūp- :  
tīis. *Ter.*

The *Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic* belongs mostly to comedy, but occurs also in Catullus:

Quōt cōm- : mōdās | rēs āt- : tūlī? || quōt au- : tem ādē- | nāi cū- : rās. *Ter.*

## V. IONIC VERSE.

687. The Ionic a Minore consists entirely of Lesser Ionics. It may be either Tetrameter or Dimeter:

$\cup \cup \cup -$  |  $\cup \cup \cup -$  |  $\cup \cup \cup -$  |  $\cup \cup \cup -$   
 $\cup \cup \cup -$  |  $\cup \cup \cup -$

Sīmūl ūnctōs | Tībērīnīs | hūmērōs lā- | vīt īn ūndīs. *Hor.*

Nēquē sēgnī | pēdē victus. *Hor.*

1. Horace has this metre only in one short ode (III. 12). In some editions this ode consists entirely of Tetrameters; but in others it is arranged in stanzas of three lines; the first two, Tetrameters, and the third, a Dimeter.

2. In this verse the last syllable is not common, but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity, as in the Anapaestic verse. See 678. 2.

3. The Ionic a Majore, *Sotadēan Verse*, scarcely occurs in Latin, except in Comedy. In its pure state it consists of three Greater Ionic feet and a Spondee, but in Martial the third foot is a Ditrochee:

$\cup - \cup \cup$  |  $\cup - \cup \cup$  |  $\cup - \cup \cup$  |  $\cup -$   
 $\cup - \cup \cup$  |  $\cup - \cup \cup$  |  $\cup - \cup \cup$  |  $\cup -$

Hās cūm gēmī- | nā cōmpēdē | dēdicāt cā- | tēnās. *Mart.*

## VI. CHORIAMBIC VERSE.

688. Choriambic verses begin with a Spondee followed by one, two, or three Choriambi, and end with an Iambus.

In Horace the Choriambic verse uniformly begins with the Spondee, but in some of the other poets the Trochee, the Anapaest, or the Iambus occasionally takes the place of the Spondee.

689. A Choriambic verse with one Choriambus is called the *Glyconic*; or, if catalectic, the *Pherecratean*; with two, the *Asclepiadēan*; with three, the Greater *Asclepiadēan*.

I. The GLYCONIC has the following scale:

$\cup -$  |  $\cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\cup \cup$

Dōnēc | grātūs ērām | tībi. *Hor.*

II. The PHERECRATEAN is catalectic, but otherwise identical with the Glyconic. Its scale is,

$\cup -$  |  $\cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\cup$

Vix dū- | rārē cārī- | nac. *Hor.*

III. The ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale:

┌ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ┌ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ┌ | ◡ ┌

Maecē- | nās ātāvīs || ēdītē rēg- | ībus. *Hor.*

IV. The GREATER ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale:

┌ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ┌ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ┌ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ┌ | ◡ ┌

Seu plū- | rēs hīēmēs, || seu trībūit || Jūpītēr ūl- | tīmam. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called *Choriambic Pentameter* and sometimes *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

### *Epichoriambic Verse.*

690. When a verse begins with a Second Epitrite followed by one or two Choriambi, and ends with a Bacchius, it is called Epichoriambic. Of this there are two important varieties:

I. THE SAPPHIC VERSE.—This consists of a Second Epitrite, a Choriambus and a Bacchius:

┌ ◡ ┌ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ┌ | ◡ ┌ ┌

Nāmquē mē sīl- | vā || lūpūs īn | Sābīna. *Hor.*

1. But the Sapphic verse may also be measured as a Trochaic Dipody followed by an Aristophanic verse, i. e., as composed of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees. See 691. IV.

2. The Caesural Pause usually occurs after the fifth syllable, as in the example, but sometimes after the sixth.

3. Catullus admits two Trochees in place of the Epitrite.

II. THE GREATER SAPPHIC VERSE.—This differs from the Sapphic proper only in introducing a second Choriambus before the Bacchius:

┌ ◡ ┌ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ┌ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ┌ | ◡ ┌ ┌

Intēr aequā- | lēs ēquītāt, || Gāllicā nēc | lūpātis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes improperly called *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

### VII. LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

691. Logaoedic verses consist of Dactyls, or their equivalents, followed by Trochees.

I. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN.—This consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter (677. I.) followed by a Trochaic Tripody. The first three feet are either Dactyls or Spondees; the fourth, a Dactyl; and the last three, Trochees:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & || & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & || & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$$

Vītaē | sūmmā brē- | vīs spēm | nōs vētāt, || īnchō- : ārē | lōngam. *Hor.*  
The caesural pause is between the two members.

II. **ALCAIC VERSE.**—This consists of two Dactyls followed by two Trochees:

$$\text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—}$$

Purpūrē- | ō vārī- | ūs cō- : lōre. *Hor.*

III. **ARISTOPHANIC VERSE.**—This consists of a Dactyl followed by two Trochees:

$$\text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—}$$

Cūr nēquē | mīlī- : tāris. *Hor.*

This verse is variously named, *Aristophanic*, *Choriambic Dimeter*, and *Choriambic Dimeter Catalectic*.

IV. **SAPPHIC VERSE.**—This prefixes to the Aristophanic a Trochaic Dipody consisting of a Trochee and a Spondee (690. I.). The scale is,

$$\text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—}$$

Nāmquē : mē sīl- | vā lūpūs | īn Să- : bīna. *Hor.*

*Sapphic* verse may be classed at pleasure either with the *Logaoedic* verses, as here, or with the *Epichoriambic* verses, as in article 690. I.

V. **PHALAECIAN VERSE.**—This consists of a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees:

$$\text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—}$$

Nōn ēst | vīvērē, || sēd vā- : lērē | vīta. *Mart.*

This verse is sometimes called, from the number of its syllables, *Heptasyllabic*, of eleven syllables. It does not occur in Horace. In Catullus it sometimes has a Trochee, or an Iambus, in the first place.

## VIII. MISCELLANEOUS VERSES.

692. **GREATER ALCAIC VERSE.**—This consists of an *Iambic Penthemimeris* and a pure *Dactylic Dimeter*, i. e., an Iambic Dipody, a long syllable and two Dactyls:

$$\text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & || & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—}$$

Vīdēs : ūt āl- | tā || stēt nīvē | cāndīdum

Sōrāc- : tē nēe | jān || sūstīnē- | ānt ōnūs. *Hor.*

1. The Caesural Pause is usually between the two members.
2. In Horace the first foot is generally a Spondee.
3. This verse forms the first and second lines of the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. I.







B. *Stanzas of Three Verses.*

V. IONIC A MINORE (687).—The first two verses, Tetrameters: the third, Dimeter.

$$\begin{array}{l} 1. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cup \cup \frac{1}{2} - | \cup \cup \frac{1}{2} - | \cup \cup \frac{1}{2} - | \cup \cup \frac{1}{2} - \\ \cup \cup \frac{1}{2} - | \cup \cup \frac{1}{2} - \end{array} \right. \\ 2. \\ 3. \end{array}$$

In Ode III. 12.

### C. Stanzas of Two Verses.

## VI. IAMBIC TRIMETER AND IAMBIC DIMETER (683, 685).

[illegible]

In the first ten Epodes.

VII. GLYCONIC AND ASCLEPIADĒAN (689. I., III.).

1.  $\frac{1}{2} - \left| \frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \frac{1}{2} \right| \cup \frac{1}{2}$
2. See IV. 1.

In twelve Odes: I. 3, 13, 19, 36; III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; IV. 1, 3.

### VIII. HEXAMETER AND DACTYLIC TETRAMETER (671; 677. I.).

[illegible]

In two Odes: I. 7, 28, and Epode 12.

IX. HEXAMETER AND DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (671; 677. II.).

1. See VIII. 1.
2.  $\frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{2}$

In Ode IV. 7.

### X. HEXAMETER AND IAMBIC TRIMETER (671, 683).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 1.

In Epode 16.

## XI. HEXAMETER AND IAMBIC DIMETER (671, 685).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 2.

In Epodes 14 and 15.

## XII. HEXAMETER AND IAMBICO-DACTYLIO (671, 694).

1. See VIII. 1.

2.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \text{—} & \cup \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array}$ 

In Epode 13.

## XIII. IAMBIC TRIMETER AND DACTYLICO-IAMBIC (683, 693).

1. See VI. 1.

2.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \text{—} & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array}$ 

In Epode 11.

## XIV. TROCHAIC DIMETER CATALECTIC AND IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (681, 684).

1.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \text{—} & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array}$ 2.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \text{—} & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \text{—} & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array}$ 

In Ode II. 13.

## XV. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN AND IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (691. I.; 684).

1.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array}$ 

2. See XIV. 2.

In Ode I. 4.

## XVI. ARISTOPHANIC AND GREATER SAPPHIC (691. III.; 690. II).

1.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array}$ 2.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array}$ 

In Ode I. 8.

## D. Verses used Singly.

## XVII. ASCLEPIADEAN (689. III.).

 $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array}$ 

In three Odes: I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8.

## XVIII. GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN (689. IV.).

 $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \cup & \cup \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{array}$ 

In three Odes: I. 11, 18; IV. 10.

## XIX. IAMBIC TRIMETER (683). See VI. 1.

In Epode 17.

701. INDEX TO THE LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

The Roman numerals refer to articles in the preceding outline, 700.

[illegible]

# A P P E N D I X.

## I. FIGURES OF SPEECH.

**702.** A Figure is a deviation from the ordinary *form, construction, or signification* of words.

Deviations from the ordinary forms are called *Figures of Etymology*; from the ordinary constructions, *Figures of Syntax*, and from the ordinary significations, *Figures of Rhetoric*.

**703.** The Figures of Etymology are the following:

1. **APHAERESIS** takes a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word: *'est* for *est*.
  2. **SYNCOPE** takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word: *vīrum* for *vīrōrum*, *dixæ* for *dixisse*.
  3. **APOCOPE** takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word: *tūn'* for *tūne*.
  4. **PROSTHESIS** prefixes a letter or syllable to a word: *tētūli* for *tūli*.
  5. **EPENTHESIS** inserts a letter or syllable in a word: *Alcēmēna* for *Alcēmēna*, *ālītūm* for *ālītum*.
  6. **PÆRAGOGÆ** adds a letter or syllable to a word: *dicier* for *dici*.
  7. **METATHESIS** transposes letters or syllables: *pistris* for *pristis*.
  8. **ANTITHESIS** substitutes one letter for another: *volnus* for *vulnus*, *olli* for *illi*.
- See also Figures of Prosody, 669.

**704.** The Figures of Syntax are the following:

**I. ELLIPSIS** is the omission of one or more words of a sentence:

*Hābītābat ad Jōvis (sc. templum), He dwelt near the temple of Jupiter.*  
*Liv. Abiit, evāsit (et), He has gone, has escaped. Cic.*

1. **ASYNDETON** is an ellipsis of a conjunction. See 557. I. 6; 557. III. 4.
2. **ZYGMA** is an ellipsis which employs a single verb with two subjects or objects, though strictly applicable to only one:  
*Pācem a bellum gērens, whether at peace (agens) or waging war. Sall.*
3. **APOSIOPESES**, also called *Reluctantia*, used for rhetorical effect, is an ellipsis which leaves the sentence unfinished:  
*Quos ego — sed mōtos præstat compōnere fluctus. Whom I — but it is better to calm the troubled waves. Virg.*
4. **PROVERBS** are often elliptical.
5. **ELLIPSIS OF FACIO, DICO, ORO.** See 460. 3; 602, II. 3.

**II. PLEONASM** is the use of superfluous words:

*Erant itinēra duo, quibus itinērībus exire possent, There were two ways by which ways they might depart. Caes. Eurūque Nōtusque ruunt, Both Eurū and Nōtus rush forth. Virg.*

1. **POLYSYNDETON** is a pleonasm in the use of conjunctions, as in the last example.
2. **HENDIADYS** is the use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a noun with an adjective or genitive:

*Armis virisque, for viris armātis, with armed men. Tac.*

3. **ANAPHORA** is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses :  
*Me cuncta Itālia, me ūniversa cīvitas consulem dēclārāvīt, Me all Italy, me the whole state declared consul. Cic.*

4. **EPIPHORA** is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses :

*Laelius nāvus erat, doctus erat, Laelius was diligent, was learned. Cic.*

5. Monosyllabic prepositions are often repeated before successive nouns, regularly so with *et—et* :

*Et in bellicis et in cīvilibus officiis, both in military and in civil offices. Cic.*

Other prepositions are sometimes repeated.

6. A demonstrative, pronoun or adverb, *id, hoc, illud, sic, ita*, is often used somewhat redundantly to represent a subsequent clause. So also *quid*, in *quid censes* with a clause :

*Illud te oro ut diligens sis, I ask you (that thing) to be (that you be) diligent. Cic.*

7. Pronouns redundant with *quidem*. See 446. 1.

8. Pleonasm often occurs with *licet* :

*Ut liceat permittitur = licet, It is lawful (is permitted that it is, &c.). Cic.*

9. A word is often repeated for emphasis.

10. Circumlocutions with *res, genus, modus*, and *ratio* are common.

**III. ENALLAGE** is the substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one grammatical form for another :

*Pōpulus lāte rex (for regnans), a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively). Virg. Sērus (sēro) in coelum rēdeas, May you return late to heaven.*

*Hor. Vina cādīs (vinis cados) ōnērāre, to fill the flasks with wine. Virg.*

1. **ANTIMERIA** is the use of one part of speech for another, as in the first two examples. •

2. **HYPALLAGE** is the use of one case for another, as in the last example.

3. **SYNESIS** is a construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms. See 438. 6 and 461.

4. **ANACOLŪTHON** is a want of harmony in the construction of the different parts of a sentence :

*Si, ut dicunt, omnes Graios esse (Graii sunt), if, as they say, all are Greeks. Cic.*

**IV. HYPERBATON** is a transposition of words or clauses :

*Praeter arma nihil erat super (supererat), Nothing remained, except their arms. Nep. Vālet atque vīvit (vīvit atque vālet), He is alive and well. Ter.*

1. **ANASTROPHE** is the transposition of words only, as in the first example.

2. **HYSTERON PROTERON** is a transposition of clauses, as in the second example.

3. **TMSIS** is the separation of a compound word. See 523. 2. 2).

**705. Figures of Rhetoric**, also called Tropes, comprise several varieties. The following are the most important.

**I. METAPHOR.**—This is an implied comparison, and assigns to one object the appropriate name, epithet or action of another :

*Rei pūblicae vulnus (for damnum), the wound of the republic. Cic. Naufrāgium fortunae, the wreck of fortune. Cic.*

**II. METONYMY** is the use of one name for another naturally suggested by it :

Aequo Marte (for *proelio*) pugnātum est, *They fought in an equal contest.* Liv. Fūrit Vulcānus (*ignis*), *The fire rages.* Virg.

By this figure the cause is often put for the effect and the effect for the cause; the property for the possessor, the place or age for the people, the sign for the thing signified, etc.: *Mars* for *bellum*, *Vulcānus* for *ignis*, *Bacchus* for *vīnum*, *nōbilitas* for *nōbiles*, *Graecia* for *Graeci*, *laurea* for *victōria*, etc.

III. SYNECDOCHE is the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special:

In vestra tecta (*vestras dōmos*) discēdite, *Depart to your homes.* Cic. Statio māle fida cārīnis (*nāvibus*), *a station unsafe for ships.* Virg.

IV. IRONY is the use of a word for its opposite:

Lēgātos bōnus (for *mālus*) impērātor vester non admisit, *Your good commander did not admit the ambassadors.* Liv.

1. *Enim, etenim, scilicet, videlicet, nimirum, credo*, and the like, are often ironical. See 503. 3.

V. HYPERBOLE is an exaggeration:

Ventis et fulmīnis ōcior ālis, *swifter than the winds and the wings of the lightning.* Virg.

VI. LITOTES denies something instead of affirming the opposite:

Non ōpus est = pernīciōsum est, *It is not necessary.* Cic.

## II. LATIN AUTHORS.

703. The history of Roman literature embraces about eight centuries, from 250 B. C. to 550 A. D., and has been divided by Dr. Freund into three principal periods:

I. THE ANTE-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—From 250 to 81 B. C. The principal authors of this period are:

Ennius, Plautus, Terence, —Lucretius.

II. THE CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Golden and the Silver age:

1. The *Golden Age*.—From 81 B. C. to 14 A. D. The principal authors are:

~Cicero,	~Æpos,	~Horace,	~Tibullus,
~Caesar,	~Livy,	~Ovid,	~Propertius.
~Sallust,	~Virgil,	~Catullus,	

2. The *Silver Age*.—From 14 to 180 A. D. The principal authors are:

Phaedrus,	The Plinies,	Quintilian,	— Persius,
Velleius,	Tacitus,	Suetonius,	Lucan,
The Senecas,	Curtius,	Juvenal,	Martial.

III. The POST-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Brazen and the Iron Age:

1. The *Brazen Age*.—From 180 to 476 A.D. The principal authors are:

Justin,	Eutropius,	Lactantius,	Claudian,
Victor,	Macrobius,	Ausonius,	Terentian.

2. The *Iron Age*.—From 476 to 550 A.D. The principal authors are:

Boëthius,	Cassiodorus,	Justinian,	Priscian.
-----------	--------------	------------	-----------

### III. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

707. The Julian Calendar of the Romans is the basis of our own, and is identical with it in the number of months in the year and in the number of days in the months.

708. PECULIARITIES.—The Roman calendar has the following peculiarities:

I. The days were not numbered from the beginning of the month, as with us, but from three different points in the month:

1. The Calends, the *first* of each month;
2. The Nones, the *fifth*,—but the *seventh* in March, May, July, and October;
3. The Ides, the *thirteenth*,—but the *fifteenth* in March, May, July, and October.

II. From these three points the days were numbered, not forward, but backward.

Hence after the *Ides* of each month, the days were numbered from the *Calends* of the following month.

III. In numbering backward from each of these points, the day before each was denoted by *pridie Cælendas*, *Nōnas*, etc.; the second before each by *die tertio* (not *secundo*; third, not second) *ante Cælendas*, etc., the third, by *die quarto*, etc., and so on through the month.

1. NUMERALS.—This peculiarity in the use of the numerals, designating the *second* day before the Calends, etc., as the *third*, and the *third* as the *fourth*, etc., arises from the fact that the Calends, etc., were themselves counted as the first. Thus *pridie ante Cælendas* becomes the second before the Calends, *die tertio ante Cælendas*, the third, etc.

2. NAME OF MONTH.—In dates the name of the month is added in the form of an adjective in agreement with *Cælendas*, *Nōnas*, etc., as, *die quarto ante Nōnas Jānuārias*, often shortened to, *quarto ante Nōnas Jan.* or *IV. ante Nōnas Jan.* or without *ante*, as, *IV. Nōnas Jan.*, the second of January.

3. ANTE DIEM.—Instead of *die-ante*, *ante diem* is common, as, *ante diem quartum Nōnas Jan.* for *die quarto ante Nōnas Jan.*

4. AS INDECLINABLE NOUNS.—The expressions *ante diem*—*Cal.*, etc., *prīdie Cal.*, etc., are often used as indeclinable nouns with a preposition, as, *ex ante diem V. Idus Oct.*, from the 11th of Oct. *Liv. Ad prīdie Nōnas Maias*, till the 6th of May. *Cic.*

## 709. CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, Oct.	Jan. Aug. December.	April, June, Sept. Nov.	February.
1	CALENDIS. <sup>1</sup>	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.
2	VI. Nonas. <sup>1</sup>	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Prīdie Nonas.	Prīdie Nonas.	Prīdie Nonas.
5	III. "	NONIS.	NONIS.	NONIS.
6	Prīdie Nonas.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	NONIS.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Prīdie Idus.	Prīdie Idus.	Prīdie Idus.
13	III. "	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.
14	Prīdie Idus.	XIX. Calend. <sup>2</sup>	XVIII. Calend. <sup>2</sup>	XVI. Calend. <sup>2</sup>
15	IDIBUS.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Calend. <sup>2</sup>	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.) <sup>3</sup> "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prīdie Cal. (III. Cal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prīdie Cal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Prīdie Calend.	
31	Prīdie Calend.	Prīdie Calend.		

710. ENGLISH AND LATIN DATES.—The table (709) will furnish the learner with the English expression for any Latin date, or the Latin expression for any English date; but in translating Latin, it may be convenient also to have the following rule:

I. If the day is numbered from the Nones or Ides, subtract the number diminished by one from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall:

<sup>1</sup> To the Calends, Nones, etc., the name of the month must of course be added. Before Nonas, Idus, etc., *ante* is sometimes used and sometimes omitted (708. III. 2).

<sup>2</sup> The Calends of the following month are of course meant, as the 16th of March for instance is, *XVII. Calendas Aprīles*.

<sup>3</sup> The enclosed forms apply to *leap-year*.



VIII. ante Idus Jan. =  $13 - (8 - 1) = 13 - 7 = 6$ th of January.

II. If the day is numbered from the Calends of the following month, subtract the number diminished by two from the number of days in the current month:

XVIII. ante Cal. Feb. =  $31 - (18 - 2) = 31 - 16 = 15$ th of January.

In Leap-year the 24th and 25th February are both called the sixth before the Calends of March, *VI. Cal. Mart.* The days before the 24th are numbered precisely as if the month contained as usual only 29 days, but the days after the 25th are numbered regularly for a month of 29 days: *V., IV., III. Cal. Mart.,* and *pridie Cal. Mart.*

711. DIVISIONS OF DAY AND NIGHT.—The Roman day, from sun-rise to sun-set, and the night from sun-set to sun-rise, were each divided at all seasons of the year into twelve hours.

1. NIGHT WATCHES.—The night was also divided into four watches of three Roman hours each.

2. LENGTH OF ROMAN HOUR.—The hour, being uniformly  $\frac{1}{12}$  of the day or of the night, of course varied in length, with the length of the day or night at different seasons of the year.

#### IV. ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

712. COINS.—The principal Roman coins were the *as*, of copper, the *sestertius*, *quīnārius*, *dēnārius*, of silver, and the *aureus*, of gold. Their value in the classical period was as follows:

As, . . . . .	1 to 2 cents.
Sestertius, . . . . .	4 "
Quīnārius, . . . . .	8 "
Dēnārius, . . . . .	16 "
Aureus = 25 dēnārii, . . . . .	\$4.00.

1. AS—THE UNIT OF MONEY.—The *As* was originally the unit of the Roman currency, and contained a pound of copper, but it was diminished from time to time in weight and value till at last it contained only  $\frac{1}{24}$  of a pound.

But whatever its weight,  $\frac{1}{12}$  of the *as* is always called an *uncia*,  $\frac{2}{12}$  a *sextans*,  $\frac{3}{12}$  a *quadrans*,  $\frac{4}{12}$  a *triens*,  $\frac{5}{12}$  a *quincunx*,  $\frac{6}{12}$  a *sēmis*,  $\frac{7}{12}$  a *septunx*,  $\frac{8}{12}$  a *bes*,  $\frac{9}{12}$  a *drans*,  $\frac{10}{12}$  a *dextans*,  $\frac{11}{12}$  a *deunx*.

2. SESTERTIUS, QUINARICS, AND DENARIUS.—The *sestertius* contained originally  $2\frac{1}{2}$  asses, the *quīnārius* 5, and the *dēnārius* 10; but as the *as* depreciated in value, the number of *asses* in these coins was increased.

3. AS—THE GENERAL UNIT OF COMPUTATION.—The *as* is also used as the unit in other things as well as in money. Thus

1) *In Weight*.—The *as* is then a pound, and the *uncia* an ounce.

2) *In Measure*.—the *as* is then a foot or a jugerum (718), and the *uncia* is  $\frac{1}{12}$  of a foot or of a jugerum.

3) *In Interest*.—The *as* is then the unit of interest, which was one per cent. a month, i. e., twelve per year, the *uncia* is  $\frac{1}{12}$  per month, i. e., 1 per year, and the *semiss* is  $\frac{1}{24}$  per month, i. e., 6 per year, etc.

4) *In Inheritance*.—The *as* is then the whole estate, and the *uncia*  $\frac{1}{12}$  of it: *hères ex asse*, heir of the whole estate; *hères ex dodrante*, heir of  $\frac{3}{4}$ .

**713. COMPUTATION OF MONEY.**—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sestertius*, also called *nummus*; but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sestertii* with the proper cardinals:

Quinque sestertii, 5 *sesterces*, viginti sestertii, 20 *sesterces*, dūcenti sestertii, 200 *sesterces*.

II. One thousand sesterces are denoted by *mille sestertii*, or *mille sestertium*.

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 sesterces, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *millia sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sestertia*:

Duo millia sestertium, or duo sestertia, 2,000 *sesterces*; quinque millia sestertium, or quinque sestertia, 5,000 *sesterces*

With *sestertia* the distributives were generally used, as, *bīna sestertia*, for *duo sestertia*.

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of sesterces, *sestertium* with the value of 100,000 sesterces is used with the proper numeral adverb, *décies*, *vicies*, etc. Thus

Décies sestertium, 1,000,000 ( $10 \times 100,000$ ) sesterces; Vicies sestertium, 2,000,000 ( $20 \times 100,000$ ) sesterces.

1. **SESTERTIUM.**—In the examples under IV., *sestertium* is treated and declined as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plur. of *sestertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 sesterces was *Décies centēna millia sestertium*. *Centēna millia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sestertium* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension

2. **SESTERTIUM OMITTED.**—Sometimes *sestertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: as, *décies*, 1,000,000 sesterces.

3. **SIGN HS.**—The sign HS, is often used for *sestertii*, and sometimes for *sestertia*, or *sestertium*:

Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = sestertii). Dona HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertia). Décies HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertium).

**714. WEIGHT.**—The basis of Roman weights is the *Libra*, also called *As* or *Pondo*, equal probably to about  $11\frac{1}{2}$  ounces avoirdupois.

1. **OUNCES.**—The *Libra*, like the *as* in money, is divided into 12 parts called by the names given under 712. 1.

2. **FRACTIONS OF OUNCES.**—Parts of ounces also have special names:  $\frac{1}{2}$  = *sēmi-uncia*,  $\frac{1}{3}$  = *duella*,  $\frac{1}{4}$  = *scīlicus*,  $\frac{1}{8}$  = *sextūla*,  $\frac{1}{16}$  = *drachma*,  $\frac{1}{32}$  = *scrūpulum*,  $\frac{1}{64}$  = *obolus*.

**715. DRY MEASURE.**—The *Modius* is the basis, equal to about a peck.

1. **SEXTARIUS.**—This is  $\frac{1}{8}$  of a modius.

2. **PARTS OF THE SEXTARIUS.**—These have special names:  $\frac{1}{2}$  = hēmīna,  $\frac{1}{8}$  = ōcētābūlum,  $\frac{1}{16}$  = cyāthus.

**716. LIQUID MEASURE.**—The *Amphōra* is the most convenient unit of the Roman liquid measure, and contained a Roman cubic foot, equivalent probably to about seven gallons, wine measure.

1. **CULEUS.**—Twenty *amphōrae* make one *Culeus*.

2. **PARTS OF AMPHORA.**—These have special names:  $\frac{1}{2}$  = urna,  $\frac{1}{8}$  = congius,  $\frac{1}{16}$  = sextārius,  $\frac{1}{32}$  = hēmīna,  $\frac{1}{64}$  = quartārius,  $\frac{1}{128}$  = ōcētābūlum,  $\frac{1}{256}$  = cyāthus.

**717. LONG MEASURE.**—The basis of this measure is the Roman foot, equivalent to about 11.6 inches.

1. **COMBINATIONS OF FEET.**—Palmīpes =  $1\frac{1}{2}$  Roman feet; cūbitus =  $1\frac{1}{2}$ ; passus = 5; stādium = 625.

2. **PARTS OF FOOT.**—Palmus =  $\frac{1}{4}$  foot; uncia =  $\frac{1}{12}$ ; dīgītus =  $\frac{1}{16}$ .

**718. SQUARE MEASURE.**—The basis of this measure is the *Jūgērūm*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre.

The parts of the *jūgērūm* have the same name as those of the *As*: uncia =  $\frac{1}{16}$ , sextans =  $\frac{1}{32}$ , etc. See 712. 1.

## V. ABBREVIATIONS.

### 719. Names.

A. = Aulus.  
Ap. = Appius.  
C. (G.) = Caius (Gaius).  
Cn. (Gn.) = Cnaeus (Gnaeus).  
D. = Dēcimus.

L. = Lūcius.  
M. = Marcus.  
M'. = Mānius.  
Mam. = Māmercus.  
N. = Nūmērius.  
P. = Publius.

Q. (Qu.) = Quintus.  
S. (Sex.) = Sextus.  
Ser. = Servius.  
Sp. = Spūrius.  
T. = Titus.  
Ti. (Tib.) = Tibērius.

### 720. Other Abbreviations.

A. D. = ante diem.  
Aed. = aedilis.  
A. U. C. = anno urbis conditae.  
Cal. (Kal.) = Calēndae.  
Cos. = consul.  
Coss. = consules.  
D. = divus.  
D. D. = dōno dēdit.  
Des. = dēsīgnātus.  
D. M. = diis mānibus.  
D. S. = de suo.  
D. S. P. P. = de sua pēcūnia pōsuit.  
Eq. Rom. = Eques Rōmānus.  
F. = filius.

F. C. = faciendum cūrāvit.  
Id. = Idus.  
Imp. = impērātor.  
Leg. = lēgātus.  
Non. = Nōnae.  
O. M. = optimus maximus.  
P. C. = patres conscripti.  
Pont. Max. = pontifex maximus.  
P. R. = pōpulus Rōmānus.  
Pr. = praetor.  
Praef. = praefectus.

Proc. = prōconsul.  
Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod bonum, felix, faustumque sit.  
Quir. = Quīrītes.  
Resp. = res publica.  
S. = sēnātus.  
S. C. = sēnātus consultum.  
S. D. P. = sālūtē dicit plūrimam.  
S. P. Q. R. = sēnātus pōpulusque Rōmānus.  
Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plēbis.

## INDEX OF VERBS.

721. This Index contains an alphabetical list, not only of all the simple verbs in common use which involve any important irregularities, but also of such compounds as seem to require special mention.

But in regard to compounds of prepositions, two important facts must be borne in mind :

1. That the elements,—preposition and verb—often appear in the compound in a changed form. See 338. 1 and 341. 3.

2. That the stem-vowel is often changed in the Perfect and Supine. See 260.

### A.

Abdo, ěre, dĭdi, dĭtum, 280.  
 Ab-ĭgo. See *ĭgo*, 279.  
 Ab-jicio. See *jācio*, 279.  
 Ab-luo. See *luo*, 274.  
 Ab-nuo. See *annuo*, 274.  
 Abŏleo, ěre, ěvi, ĭtum, 266. I.  
 Abŏlesco, ěre, ŏlĕvi, ŏlĭtum, 276. II.  
 Ab-rĭpio. See *rĕpio*, 276.  
 Abs-con-do. See *abdo*, 280.  
 Ae-cendo, ěre, i, censum, 273. III.  
 Ae-cĭdo. See *cādo*, 280.  
 Ae-cĭno. See *cāno*, 280.  
 Ae-cĭpio. See *cāpio*, 279.  
 Ae-cŏlo. See *cŏlo*, 276.  
 Ae-cumbo, ěre, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum, 276.

### II.

Acco, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Acesco, ěre, ācui, —, 281.  
 Ae-qui-ro. See *quaero*, 276. III.  
 Acuo, ěre, ui, ŭtum, 273. II.  
 Ad-do. See *abdo*, 280.  
 Ad-ĭmo. See *ĕmo*, 279.  
 Adĭpiscor, i, adeptus sum, 282.  
 Ad-ŏlesco. See *abŏlesco*, 276. II.  
 Ad-ŏrior. See *ŏrior*, 286.  
 Ad-spicio. See *aspicio*, 273. I. 2.  
 Ad-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
 Aegresco, ěre, —, 281.  
 Af-fĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.  
 Age, *def.*, 297.  
 Ag-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.  
 Ag-grĕdior. See *grādior*, 282.  
 Ago, ěre, ěgi, actum, 279.  
 Aio, *def.*, 297.  
 Albeo, ěre, —, 268.  
 Algeo, ěre, alsi, —, 269.

Al-licio, ěre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273.

### II. 1.

Al-luo. See *luo*, 274.  
 Alo, ěre, ālui, ālĭtum, altum, 276. II.  
 Amb-ĭgo. See *ĭgo*, 279.  
 Ambio, 295. 3.  
 Amĭcio, ĭre (ui), tum, 284.  
 Amo, *parad.*, 205.  
 Amplector, i, amplexus sum, 282.  
 An-go, ěre, anxi, —, 274.  
 Annuo, ěre, i, —, 274.  
 Apāge, *def.*, 297.  
 Apĕrio, ĭre, ui, tum, 284.  
 Apiscor, i, aptus sum, 282.  
 Ap-pāreo. See *pāreo*, 266.  
 Ap-pĕto. See *pĕto*, 276. III.  
 Applico. See *plico*, 262.  
 Ap-pŏno. See *pŏno*, 276.  
 Arcesso, ěre, ĭvi, ĭtum, 276. III.  
 Ardeo, ěre, arsi, arsum, 269.  
 Aresco, ěre, ārui, —, 281.  
 Arguo, ěre, ui, ŭtum, 273. II.  
 Ar-rĭpio. See *rĕpio*, 276.  
 A-scendo. See *scando*, 273. III.  
 A-spergo. See *spargo*, 273.  
 A-spicio, ěre, spexi, spectrum, 273.  
 As-sentior, ĭri, sensus sum, 286.  
 As-sideo. See *sĭdeo*, 270.  
 At-texo. See *texo*, 276.  
 At-tĭneo. See *tĕneo*, 266.  
 At-tingo. See *tango*, 280.  
 At-tollo. See *tollo*, 280.  
 Audeo, ěre, ausus sum, 272.  
 Audio, *parad.*, 211.  
 Au-fĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.  
 Augeo, ěre, auxi, auctum, 269.  
 Ave, *def.*, 297.  
 Aveo, ěre, —, 268.

B.

Balbūtio, ire, —, 283.  
Bātuo, ēre, i, —, 274.  
Bībo, ēre, i, —, 274.  
Blandior, iri, itus sum, 226.

C.

Cādo, ēre, cēcīdi, cāsum, 280.  
Caecūtio, ire, —, 283.  
Caedo, ēre, cēcīdi, caesum, 280.  
Cālesco, ēre, cālui, —, 281.  
Calleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
Calveo, ēre, —, 268.  
Candeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
Cāneo, ēre, —, 268.  
Cāno, ēre, cēcīni, cantum, 280.  
Cāpresso, ēre, iui, itum, 276. III.  
Cāpio, ēre, cēpi, captum, 214, 279.  
Carpo, ēre, si, tum, 273.  
Cāveo, ēre, cāvī, cautum, 270.  
Cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, 273. III.  
Cēdo, *def.*, 297.  
Cello, *obs.* See *excello*, 276. II.  
Censeo, ēre, ui, censum, 266. III.  
Cerno, ēre, crēvi, crētum, 276. II.  
Cīcio, ēre, cīvi, cītum, 269. I.  
Cingo, ēre, cīxi, cinctum, 273.  
Circum-sisto. See *sisto*, 280.  
Clango, ēre, —, 275.  
Claudo, ēre, clausi, clausum, 273. III.  
Claudo, ēre (*to be lame*), —, 275.  
Co-ālesco, ēre, ālui, ālitum, 281.  
Co-arguo. See *arguo*, 273.  
Coeno, 262. 2.  
Coepi, *def.*, 297.  
Cognosco. See *nosco*, 277.  
Cōgo, ēre, cōēgi, coactum. See *āgo*, 279.  
Col-lido. See *laedo*, 273. III.  
Col-ligo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
Col-lūceo. See *lūceo*, 269.  
Cōlo, ēre, ui, cultum, 276. II.  
Com-ēdo. See *ēdo*, 291.  
Commīniscor, i, commentus sum, 282.  
Com-mōveo. See *mōveo*, 270.  
Cōmo, ēre, compsi, comptum, 273.  
Com-parco (perco). See *parco*, 280.  
Compērio, ire, pēri, pertum, 284.  
Compesco, ēre, pescui, —, 276. II.  
Com-pingo. See *pango*, 280.

Com-plector, i, plexus sum, 282.  
Com-pleo, ēre, ēvi, etum, 266.  
Com-prīmo. See *prēmo*, 273. III.  
Com-pungo, ēre, punxi, punctum.  
See *pungo*, 280.  
Con-cido. See *cādo*, 280.  
Con-cido. See *caedo*, 280.  
Con-cino. See *cāno*, 280.  
Con-clādo. See *claudio*, 273. III.  
Con-cūpisco, ēre, cūpīvi, cūpītum, 281.  
Con-cūtio. See *quātio*, 273. III.  
Con-do. See *abdo*, 280.  
Con-fercio. See *farcio*, 284.  
Con-ficio. See *fācio*, 279.  
Confit, *def.*, 297.  
Con-fiteor. See *fāteor*, 272.  
Con-fringo. See *frango*, 279.  
Congruo, ēre, i, —, 274.  
Connīveo, ēre, nīvi, nīxi, —, 269.  
Con-sēro. See *sēro*, 276. II.  
Con-sisto. See *sisto*, 280.  
Con-spicio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, 249.  
Con-stītuō. See *stātuō*, 273. II.  
Con-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
Consūlo, ēre, ui, tum, 276. II.  
Con-temno. See *temno*, 275.  
Con-texo. See *texo*, 276.  
Con-tingo. See *tango*, 280.  
Con-vālesco, ēre, vālui, vālītum, 281.  
Cōquo, ēre, coxi, coctum, 273. II.  
Cor-rīpio. See *rāpio*, 276.  
Cor-ruo. See *ruo*, 273.  
Crēbresco, ēre, crēbrui, —, 281.  
Crēdo, ēre, credīdi, crēdītum, 280.  
Crēpo, āre, ui, itum, 262.  
Cresco, ēre, crēvi, crētum, 276. II.  
Cūbo, āre, ui, itum, 262.  
Cūdo, ēre, cūdi, cūsum, 273. III.  
Cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.  
Cūpio, ēre, iui, itum, 249, 276.  
Cūiro, ēre, cūcurri, cursum, 280.

D.

Dē-cerpo, ēre, si, tum, 273. I. 1.  
Dēcet, *impers.*, 299.  
Dē-do. See *abdo*, 280.  
Dē-fendo, ēre, i, fensum, 273. III.  
Dē-fētsor. See *fātsor*, 282.  
Dēfit, *def.*, 297.  
Dēgo, ēre, dēgi. See *āgo*, 279.  
Dēleo, ēre, ēvi, etum, 266.

Dē-līgo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
 Dē-mīco. See *mīco*, 262.  
 Dēmo, ēre, dempsi, demptum, 273.  
 Dē-pango. See *pango*, 280.  
 Dē-prīmo. See *prēmo*, 273. III.  
 Depso, ēre, ui, itum, tum, 276. II.  
 De-scendo. See *scando*, 273. III.  
 Dē-sīlio. See *sālio*, 284.  
 Dē-sīpio. See *sāpio*, 276. III.  
 Dē-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.  
 Dē-tīneo. See *tēneo*, 266.  
 Dē-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.  
 Dīco, ēre, dixi, dictum, 273, 237.  
 Dif-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.  
 Dig-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.  
 Dī-līgo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
 Dīmīco. See *mīco*, 262.  
 Dī-rīgo, ēre, rexi, rectum, 273. I. 1.  
 Disco, ēre, didici, —, 280.  
 Dis-crēpo. See *crēpo*, 262.  
 Dis-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.  
 Dis-pertior. See *partior*, 286.  
 Dis-plīceo. See *plāceo*, 266.  
 Dis-sīdeo. See *sēdeo*, 270.  
 Dī-stīnguo. See *stīnguo*, 275.  
 Dī-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
 Dītesco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Dīvido, ēre, vīsi, vīsum, 273. III.  
 Do, dāre, dēdi, dātum, 264.  
 Dūceo, ēre, ui, tum, 266. III.  
 Dōmo, āre, ui, itum, 262.  
 Dūco, ēre, duxi, ctum, 273, 237.  
 Dulcesco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Dūresco, ēre, dūrui, —, 281.

## E.

Edo, ēre, ēdi, ēsum, 279, 291.  
 E-do, ēre, ēdīdi, editum, 280.  
 Egeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Elīcio, ēre, ui, itum, 276. II.  
 E-līgo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
 Emīco. See *mīco*, 262.  
 Emīneo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Emo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, 279.  
 Enēco, āre, ui, tum, 262.  
 Eo, ire, īvi, itum, 295.  
 Esūrio, ire, —, itum, 283.  
 E-vādo, ēre, vāsi, vāsum, 273. III.  
 Evānesco, ēre, evānui, —, 281.  
 Ex-ardesco, ēre, arsi, arsum, 281.  
 Excello, ēre, ui (rare), —, 276. II.  
 Ex-clūdo. See *claudo*, 273. III.

Ex-curro. See *curro*, 280.  
 Ex-ōlesco. See *abolesco*, 273. II.  
 Expēdit, *impers.*, 301.  
 Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum, 282.  
 Ex-pērior, īri, pertus sum, 286.  
 Ex-pleo. See *compleo*, 266.  
 Ex-plico. See *plīco*, 262.  
 Ex-plōdo. See *plaudo*, 273. III.  
 Ex-stīnguo, ēre, stīnxi, stīnctum, 275.  
 Ex-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
 Ex-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.  
 Ex-tollo. See *tollo*, 280.

## F.

Fācesso, ēre, īvi, i, itum, 276. III.  
 Fācio, ēre, fēci, factum, 249, 279, 237.  
 Fallo, ēre, fēfelli, falsum, 280.  
 Farcio, īre, farsi, fartum, farctum, 284. II.  
 Fārī, *def.*, 297.  
 Fāteor, ēri, fassus sum, 272.  
 Fātisco, ēre, —, 281. 3.  
 Fātiscor, i, —, 282.  
 Fāveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum, 270.  
 Fendo, *obs.* See *dēfendo*, 273.  
 Fērio, īre, —, 283.  
 Fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, 292.  
 Fērōcio, īre, —, 283.  
 Ferreo, ēre, fervi, ferbui, —, 269.  
 Fīdo, ēre, fīsus sum, 282.  
 Fīgo, ēre, fīxi, fixum, 273. III.  
 Findo, ēre, fīdi, fissum, 273. III.  
 Fingo, ēre, finxi, fictum, 273.  
 Fīo, fīeri, factus sum, 294.  
 Flāveo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Flecto, ēre, xi, xum, 273. III.  
 Fleo, ēre, ēvi, ctum, 266.  
 Flōreo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Flōresco, ēre, flōrui, —, 281.  
 Fluo, ēre, fluxi, fluxum, 273. III.  
 Fōdio, ēre, fōdi, fossum, 249, 279.  
 Foeteo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Fōrem, *def.*, 297. III. 2.  
 Fōveo, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, 270.  
 Frango, ēre, frēgi, fractum, 279.  
 Frēmo, ēre, ui, itum, 276. II.  
 Frendo, ēre, —, fressum, frēsum, 273. III.  
 Frīco, āre, ui, ātum, tum, 262.  
 Frīgeo, ēre, frīxi (rare), —, 269.  
 Frondeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.

Fruor, i, fructus, frūtus sum, 282.  
 Fūgio, ēre, fūgi, fugitum, 249, 279.  
 Fulcio, īre, fulsi, fultum, 284.  
 Fulgeo, ēre, fulsi, —, 269.  
 Fulminat, *impers.*, 300.  
 Fundo, ēre, fūdi, fūsum, 279.  
 Fungor, i, functus sum, 282.  
 Fūro, ēre, ui, —, 276. II.

## G.

Gannio, īre, —, 283.  
 Gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 272.  
 Gēmo, ēre, ui, itum, 276. II.  
 Gēro, ēre, gessi, gestum, 273.  
 Gigno, ēre, gēnui, gēnitum, 276. II.  
 Glisco, ēre, —, 275.  
 Grādiōr, i, gressus sum, 249, 282.  
 Grandesco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Grandīnat, *impers.*, 300.  
 Grāvesco, ēre, —, 281.

## H.

Haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, 269.  
 Haurio, īre, hausi, haustum, haustū-  
 rus, haustūrus, 284.  
 Hēbeo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Hisco, ēre, —, 275.  
 Horreo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Hortor, 222.  
 Hūmeo, ēre, —, 263.

## I.

Ico, ēre, ici, ietum, 273. II.  
 Illīcio, ēre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273.  
 I. 1.  
 Il-lido. See *laedo*, 273. III.  
 Imbuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.  
 Immīneo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Im-parco. See *parco*, 280.  
 Im-pertior. See *partior*, 286.  
 Im-pingo. See *pango*, 280.  
 In-cendo. See *accendo*, 273.  
 Incesso, ēre, īvi, i, —, 276. III.  
 In-cīdo. See *cādo*, 280.  
 In-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.  
 In-crēpo. See *crēpo*, 262.  
 In-cresco. See *cresco*, 276. II.  
 In-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.

In-cūtio. See *quātio*, 273. III.  
 Ind-īgeo, ēre, ui, —. See *ēgeo*, 267.  
 Ind-īpiscor. See *āpiscor*, 282.  
 In-do. See *abdo*, 280.  
 Indulgeo, ēre, dulsei, dultum, 269.  
 Ineptio, īre, —, 283.  
 Infīt, *def.*, 297.  
 Ingruo, ēre, i, —, 274.  
 In-nōtesco, ēre, nōtui, 281.  
 In-ōlesco. See *ābōlesco*, 276.  
 Inquam, *def.*, 297.  
 In-sīdeo. See *sīdeo*, 270.  
 In-spīcio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, 249.  
 In-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
 Intel-ligo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
 Intērest, *impers.*, 301.  
 Inter-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.  
 Invētērasco, ēre, rāvi, rātum, 276.  
 Irascor, i, —, 282.  
 Ir-ruo. See *ruo*, 273.

## J.

Jācio, ēre, jēci, jactum, 249, 279.  
 Jūbeo, ēre, jussi, jussum, 269.  
 Jūro, 262. 2.  
 Jūvēnesco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Jūvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum, 263.

## L.

Lābor, i, lapsus sum, 282.  
 Lācesso, ēre, īvi, itum, 276. III.  
 Lācio, *obs.* See *allicio*, 273. I. 2.  
 Lacteo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Laedo, ēre, laesi, laesum, 273. III.  
 Lambo, ēre, i, —, 274.  
 Languéo, ēre, i, —, 269.  
 Lāpidat, *impers.*, 300.  
 Largior, īri, itus sum, 286.  
 Lāteo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Lāvo, ēre, lāvi, lautum, lōtum, lavā-  
 tum, 263.  
 Lēgo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, 279.  
 Libet, *impers.*, 299.  
 Līceor, ēri, itus sum, 272.  
 Līcet, *impers.*, 299.  
 Līno, ēre, līvi, lītum, 276. II.  
 Linquo, ēre, liqui, —, 279.  
 Līqueo, ēre, liqui (licui), 269.  
 Līquet, *impers.*, 299.  
 Līquor, i, —, 282.

Līveo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Lōquor, i, locūtus sum, 282.  
 Lūceo, ēre, luxi, —, 269.  
 Lūcescit, *impers.*, 300.  
 Lūdo, ēre, lūsi, lūsum, 273. III.  
 Lūgeo, ēre, luxi, —, 269.  
 Luo, ēre, lui, —, 274.

## M.

Macresco, ēre, macrui, —, 281.  
 Mādeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Mādesco, ēre, mādui, —, 281.  
 Maereo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Mālo, malle, mālui, —, 293.  
 Mando, ēre, i, mansum, 273. III.  
 Māneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, 269.  
 Mātūresco, ēre, mātūrui, —, 281.  
 Mēdeor, ēri, —, 272.  
 Mēmīni, *def.*, 297.  
 Mentior, iri, itus sum, 286.  
 Mēreor, ēri, itus sum, 272.  
 Mergo, ēre, mersi, mersum, 273. III.  
 Mētior, iri, mensus sum, 286.  
 Mēto, ēre, messui, messum, 276. II.  
 Mētuo, ēre, ui, —, 274.  
 Mīco, āre, ui, —, 262.  
 Mīniscor, *obs.* See *commīniscor*, 282.  
 Mīnuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.  
 Mīsceo, ēre, miscui, mistum, mixtum, 266. III.  
 Mīsēreor, ēri, itus or tus sum, 272.  
 Mīsēret, *impers.*, 299.  
 Mītesco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Mitto, ēre, misi, missum, 273. III.  
 Mōlior, iri, itus sum, 286.  
 Mollesco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Mōlo, ēre, ui, itum, 276. II.  
 Mōnco, ēre, ui, itum, *parad.*, 207.  
 Mordeo, ēre, mōmordi, morsum, 271.  
 Mōrior, i (iri), mortuus sum, 249, 282.  
 Mōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 270.  
 Mulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269.  
 Mulgeo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269.

## N.

Nanciscor, i, nactus sum, 282.  
 Nascor, i, nātus sum, 282.  
 Necto, ēre, nexi, nexui, nexum, 273. III.

Neg-līgo, ēre, lexi, lectum. See *lēgo*, 279.

Neo, ēre, nēvi, nētum, 266.  
 Nēqueo, ire, ivi, itum, 296.  
 Nigresco, ēre, nigrui, —, 281.  
 Ningō, ēre, ninxi, —, 274.  
 Nīteo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Nitor, i, nisus, nixus sum, 282.  
 Nōlo, nolle, nōlui, —, 293.  
 Nosco, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, 277.  
 Nūbo, ēre, nupsi, nuptum, 273.  
 Nuo, *obs.* See *annuo*, 274.  
 Nuptūrio, ire, ivi, —, 283. 2.

## O.

Ob-do. See *abdo* 280.  
 Ob-dormisco, ēre, dormīvi, dormītum, 281.  
 Obliviscor, i, oblitus sum, 282.  
 Ob-mūtesco, ēre, mūtui, —, 281.  
 Ob-sīdeo. See *sīdeo*, 270.  
 Ob-sōlesco. See *abōlesco*, 276.  
 Ob-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
 Ob-surdesco, ēre, surdui, —, 281.  
 Ob-tīneo. See *tīneo*, 266.  
 Oc-cīdo. See *cūdo*, 280.  
 Oc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.  
 Oc-cīno. See *cāno*, 280.  
 Oc-cīpio. See *cāpio*, 279.  
 Occūlo, ēre, ui, tum, 276. II.  
 Odi, *def.*, 297.  
 Of-fendo. See *dēfendo*, 273. III.  
 Oleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Olesco, *obsolete*. See *abōlesco*, 276. II.  
 Op-erio, ire, ui, tum, 284.  
 Oportet, *impers.*, 299.  
 Op-pērior, iri, pertus, perītus sum, 286.  
 Ordior, iri, orsus sum, 286.  
 Orior, iri, ortus sum, 286.  
 Os-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.  
 Ovāt, *def.*, 297. \*

## P.

Pāciscor, i, pactus sum, 282.  
 Palleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Pando, ēre, i, pansum, passum, 273. III.  
 Pango, ēre, pēpīgi, pactum, 280.  
 Pango, ēre, panxi, pēgi, panctum, pactum, 280.



Parco, ěre, pĕperci (parsi), parsum, 280.

Pārio, ěre, pĕpĕri, partum, 249, 280.

Partior, ĭri, ĭtus sum, 286.

Partūrio, ĭre, ĭvi, —, 283. 2.

Pasco, ěre, pāvi, pastum, 276.

Pāteo, ěre, uī, —, 267.

Pātor, i, passus sum, 225, 249, 282.

Pāveo, ěre, pāvi, —, 270.

Pecto, ěre, xi, xum, 273. III.

Pel-licio, ěre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273.

## I. 2.

Pello, ěre, pĕpŭli, pulsum, 280.

Pendeo, ěre, pĕpendi, pensum, 271.

Pendo, ěre, pĕpendi, pensum, 280.

Per-cello. See *excellō*, 276. II.

Per-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.

Per-do, ěre, dīdi, dītum. See *abdo*, 280.

Pergo (*for* per-rīgo), ěre, per-rexi, per-rectum. See *rĕgo*, 273.

Per-pĕtor. See *pātor*, 282.

Per-sto. See *sto*, 264.

Per-tīneo. See *tēneo*, 266.

Pessum-do. See *do*, 264.

Pĕto, ěre, ĭvi, ĭtum, 276. III.

Piget, *impers.*, 299.

Pingo, ěre, pinxi, pictum, 273.

Pinguesco, ěre, —, 281.

Pinso (pīso), ěre, i, uī, pinsītum, pīsum, pīsum, 273. III.

Plaudo, ěre, si, sum, 273. III.

Plecto, ěre, xi, xum, 273. III.

Plector, *not used as Dep.* See *am-plector*, 282.

Pleo, *obsolete*. See *compleo*, 266.

Plĕco, āre, āvi, uī, ātum, ĭtum, 262.

Pluo, ěre, i *or* vī, —, 274.

Poenitet, *impers.*, 299.

Polleo, ěre, —, 268.

Polliceor, ěri, ĭtus sum, 272.

Pōno, ěre, pōsui, pōsītum, 276. II.

Posco, ěre, pōposci, —, 280.

Pos-sĕdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.

Possum, posse, pōtui, —, 289.

Pōtor, ĭri, ĭtus sum, 286.

Pōto, āre, āvi, ātum, um, 262. 1, 2.

Prae-cĭno. See *cāno*, 280.

Prae-curro. See *curro*, 280.

Prae-sĕdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.

Prae-sto. See *sto*, 264.

Prae-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.

Prandeo, ěre, i, pransum, 269.

Prehendo, ěre, i, hensum, 273. III.

Prĕmo, ěre, pressi, pressum, 273. III.

Prōd-ĭgo. See *āgo*, 279.

Prō-do. See *abdo*, 280.

Prōficiscor, i, prōfectus sum, 282.

Prō-fiteor. See *fāteor*, 272.

Prōmo, ěre, prompsi, promptum, 273.

Prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, —, 290.

Prō-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.

Psallo, ěre, i, —, 274.

Pūdet, *impers.*, 299.

Puērasco, ěre, —, 281.

Pungo, ěre, pūpūgi, punctum, 280.

## Q.

Quaero, ěre, quaesīvi, quaesitum, 276. III.

Quaesio, *def.*, 297.

Quātio, ěre, quassi, quassum, 249, 273. III.

Queo, ĭre, ĭvi, ĭtum, 296.

Quĕror, i, questus sum, 282.

Quiesco, ěre, quīēvi, quīētum, 276. II.

## R.

Rādo, ěre, rāsi, rāsum, 273. III.

Rāpio, ěre, rāpui, raptum, 249, 276.

Raucio, ĭre, rausi, rausum, 284.

Rĕ-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.

Re-crūdesco, ěre, crūdui, 281.

Rĕd-arguo. See *arguo*, 273.

Red do. See *abdo*, 280.

Rĕ-fello. See *fallo*, 280.

Rĕfĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.

Rĕfert, *impers.*, 301.

Rĕgo, ěre, rexi, rectum, *parad.*, 209, 273.

Rĕ-linguo. See *linguo*, 279.

Rĕmīniscor, i, —, 282.

Rĕnīdeo, ěre, —, 268.

Reor, rĕri, rātus sum, 272.

Rĕ-pango. See *pango*, 280.

Rĕ-parco. See *parco*, 280.

Rĕ-pĕrio, ĭre, pĕri, pertum, 284.

Rĕ-sĕdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.

Rĕ-sĭpio. See *sĭpio*, 276. III.

Rĕ-sōno. See *sōno*, 262.

Re-spergo. See *spargo*, 273. III.

Rĕ-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.

Rě-tíneo. See *tíneo*, 266.  
 Rě-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.  
 Rě-víviseo, ěre, vixi, victum, 281.  
 Rídeo, ěre, rísi, rísum, 269.  
 Rígeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Ringor, i, —, 282.  
 Ródo, ěre, rósi, rósum, 273. III.  
 Rórat, *impers.*, 300.  
 Rúbeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Rúdo, ěre, ívi, ítum, 276. III.  
 Rumpo, ěre, rúpi, ruptum, 279.  
 Ruo, ěre, rui, rútum, ruitúrus, 273.  
 II.

## S.

Ságio, ěre, —, 283.  
 Sálío, ěre, ui (ii), tum, 284.  
 Salve, *def.*, 297.  
 Sancio, ěre, sanxi, sancítum, sanc-  
 tum, 284.  
 Šápío, ěre, ívi, ui, —, 249, 276.  
 Šarcio, ěre, sarsi, sartum, 284.  
 Šát-ágo. See *ágo*, 279.  
 Šcābo, ěre, šcābi, —, 279.  
 Šcalpo, ěre, psi, ptum, 273.  
 Šcando, ěre, di, sum, 273. III.  
 Šcāteo, ěre, —, 268.  
 Šcindo, ěre, šcīdi, šcissum, 273. III.  
 Šciscao, ěre, šcīvi, šcítum, 281.  
 Šěco, āre, ui, tum, 262.  
 Šědeo, ěre, šědi, šessum, 270.  
 Šě-lígo. See *lígo*, 279.  
 Šentio, ěre, sensi, sensum, 284.  
 Šěpělio, ěre, ívi, sepultum, 283.  
 Šěpio, ěre, psi, ptum, 284.  
 Šěquor, i, šěcútus sum, 224.  
 Šěro, ěre, šěvi, šátum, 276. II.  
 Šěro, ěre, šerui, šertum, 276. II.  
 Šído, ěre, i, —, 274.  
 Šileo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Šingultio, ěre, —, 283.  
 Šino, ěre, šīvi, šítum, 276. III.  
 Šisto, ěre, štīti, šátum, 280.  
 Šítio, ěre, ívi, —, 283.  
 Šőleo, ěre, šolítus sum, 272.  
 Šolvo, ěre, šolvi, šölútum, 273. II.  
 Šőno, āre, ui, ítum, 262.  
 Šorbeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Šordeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Šortior, íri, ítus sum, 286.  
 Špargo, ěre, šparsi, šparsum, 273.  
 III.

Špécio, *obs.* See *aspécio*.  
 Šperno, ěre, šprěvi, šprětum, 276.  
 II.  
 Šplendeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Špondeo, ěre, špōpondi, sponsum,  
 271.  
 Šquāleo, ěre, —, 268.  
 Štātuo, ěre, ui, útum, 273. II.  
 Šternuo, ěre, strāvi, strátum, 276.  
 Šternuo, ěre, i, —, 274.  
 Šterto, ěre, ui, —, 276. II.  
 Štinguo, ěre, —, 275.  
 Što, āre, štěti, štátum, 264.  
 Štrěpo, ěre, ui, ítum, 276. II.  
 Štrídeo, ěre, štrīdi, —, 269.  
 Štrído, ěre, i, —, 274.  
 Štruo, ěre, štruxi, structum, 273. II.  
 Štűdeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Štűpeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Šuādeo, ěre, si, sum, 269.  
 Šub-do, ěre, dīdi, dítum, 280.  
 Šűb-ágo. See *ágo*, 279.  
 Šub-silio. See *sálío*, 284.  
 Šuc-cēdo. See *cēdo*, 273.  
 Šuc-cendo. See *accendo*, 273.  
 Šuc-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.  
 Šuc-cīdo. See *cādo*, 280.  
 Šuc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.  
 Šuc-cresco. See *cresco*, 276. II.  
 Šuesco, ěre, suēvi, suētum, 276. II.  
 Šuf-fěro. See *fěro*, 292.  
 Šuf-ficio. See *fācio*, 279.  
 Šuf-fűdio. See *fűdio*, 279.  
 Šug-gěro. See *gěro*, 273.  
 Šum, esse, fui, —, 204.  
 Šūmo, ěre, psi, ptum, 273.  
 Šűperbio, ěre, —, 283.  
 Šup-pōno. See *pōno*, 276.  
 Šurgo (*for* sur-rígo), ěre, sur-rexi,  
 sur-rectum. See *rěgo*, 273.

## T.

Taedet, *impers.*, 299.  
 Tango, ěre, tětīgi, tactum, 280.  
 Temno, ěre, —, 275.  
 Tendo, ěre, tětendi, tentum, tensum,  
 280.  
 Těneo, ěre, ui, tum, 266. III.  
 Těpesco, ěre, těpui, —, 281.  
 Tergeo, ěre, tersi, tersum, 269.  
 Tergo, ěre, tersi, tersum, 273. III.  
 Těro, ěre, trīvi, trítum, 276. III.

Texo, ěre, ui, tum, 276. II.  
 Tĕmeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Tollo, ěre, sustŭli, sublĕtum, 280.  
 Tondeo, ěre, tŏtondi, tonsum, 271.  
 Tŏno, ěre, ui, ĭtum, 262.  
 Torpeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Torqueo, ěre, torsi, tortum, 269.  
 Torreo, ěre, torrui, tostum, 266. III.  
 Trĕdo. See *abdo*, 280.  
 Traho, ěre, traxi, tractum, 273.  
 Trĕmo, ěre, ui, —, 276. II.  
 Tribuo, ěre, ui, ŭtum, 273. II.  
 Trĭdo, ěre, trĕsi, trĕsum, 273. III.  
 Tueor, ěri, tuitus sum, 272.  
 Tŭmeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Tundo, ěre, tŭtŭdi, tunsum, tŭsum,  
 280.  
 Tuor, for *tueor*, 272.  
 Turgeo, ěre, tursi (*rare*), —, 269.  
 Tussio, ěre, —, 283.

## U.

Ulciscor, i, ultus sum, 282.  
 Urgeo, ěre, ursi, —, 269.  
 Uro, ěre, ussi, ustum, 273.  
 Utor, i, ŭsus sum, 282.

## V.

Vĕdo, ěre, —, 275.  
 Vĕgio, ěre, ĭvi, —, 283.

Vĕgeo, ěre, —, 268.  
 Veho, ěre, vexi, vectum, 273.  
 Vello, ěre, velli (*vulsi*), vulsum, 273.  
 III.  
 Vendo, ěre, dĭdi, dĭtum, 280.  
 Vĕn-eo. See *eo*, 295.  
 Vĕnio, ěre, vĕni, ventum, 285.  
 Vĕnum-do. See *do*, 264.  
 Vĕreor, ěri, verĭtus sum, 223, 272.  
 Vergo, ěre, —, 275.  
 Verro, ěre, verri, versum, 273. III.  
 Verto, ěre, ti, sum, 273. III.  
 Vertor. See *dĕvertor*, 273. III.  
 Vescor, i, —, 282.  
 Vespĕrascit, *impers.*, 300.  
 Vĕtĕrasco, ěre, rĕvi, —, 276.  
 Vĕto, ěre, ui, ĭtum, 262.  
 Vĭdeo, ěre, vĭdi, vĭsum, 270.  
 Vĭeo, ěre, —, ĕtum, 266. I. 2.  
 Vĭgeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Vĭlesco, ěre, vilui, —, 281.  
 Vincio, ěre, vinxi, vinctum, 284.  
 Vinco, ěre, vĭci, victum, 279.  
 Vĭreo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Viresco, ěre, virui, —, 281.  
 Vĭso, ěre, i, um, 273. III.  
 Vĭvo, ěre, vixi, victum, 273.  
 Vŏlo, velle, vŏlui, —, 293.  
 Volvo, ěre, volvi, vŏlĕtum, 273. II.  
 Vŏmo, ěre, ui, ĭtum, 276. II.  
 Vŏveo, ěre, vŏvi, vŏtum, 270.

# INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

NOTE.—The numbers refer to *articles*, not to pages. *Constr.* = construction, *w.* = with, *ff.* = and the following, *compds.* = compounds, *gen.* or *gentl.* = genitive, *gend.* = gender, *acc.* or *accus.* = accusative, *accs.* = accusatives, *adjs.* = adjectives, *preps.* = prepositions, etc.

It has not been thought advisable to overload this Index, with such separate words as may be readily referred to classes, or to general rules, or even with such exceptions as may be readily found under their respective heads. Accordingly the numerous exceptions in Dec. III. in the formation of the genitive and in gender, are not inserted, as they may be best found under the respective endings, 55-115.

- A, SOUND** of, 6 ff., 14. Nouns in *a*,—of 1st dec., 42; of 3d dec., 48; genitive of, 58; gender, 111; derivatives in *a*, 320, 6. *A*, in nom., accus., voc. plur., 88; in acc. sing., 93; changed in compds., 341, 3. *A*, quantity of,—final, 615; in increments of dec., 633; of conj., 640.
- A*, *ab*, *abs*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, w. abl., 434, of agent, 388, 1, in personification, 414, 6.
- Abbreviations, 719.
- Abhinc*, 427.
- Ablative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 3d dec., 87, 90, 97; in 4th dec., 116, 4; in adjs., 156.
- Ablative, syntax of, 412-437. Of cause, manner, means, 414; agent, accompaniment, 411, 5 and 7. Of price, 416. W. comparatives, 417. Of differ., 418. In special constrs., 419; 385, 5; 386, 2; 434, 2; 414, 2. Of place, 420 ff. Of source, 425. Of time, 426. Of charac., 428. Of specification, 429. Abl. absol., 431; w. *quisque*, 431, 6. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds, etc., 566. Of supine, 570.
- Absolute, ablative, 430 ff.; infinitive or clause, 431, 4.
- Absque*, w. abl., 434.
- Abstineo*, w. acc. and abl., 425, 2; w. gen., 409, 4.
- Abstract nouns, 31; from adjs., 319; from verbs, 321, 2.
- Abunde*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- abus, for *is*, in 1st dec., 42, 3.
- Ac*, for *quam*, 417, 4. *Ac si*, w. subj., 503, 506.
- Acatalectic verse, 663, III. 1.
- Accidit*, constr., 556, II. 1.
- Accentuation, 25 ff.
- Accidit*, constr., 556, II.
- Accingo*, constr., 374, 7.
- Accompaniment, abl. of, 414, 7.
- Accomplishing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.
- Accusative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 2d dec., 45; 46, 3; in 3d dec., 85, 88, 98; in adjectives, 157.
- Accusative, syntax of, 370-381.—Direct object, 371 ff.; cognate, 371, 1, 3; w. other cases, 371, 2; w. compds., 371, 4; w. verbal adjs. and nouns, 371, 7. Two accs., 373 ff.; other constrs. for, 374, 3; infin. or clause, 374, 4; poetic acc., 374, 7. Subj. of infin., 375. Agreement, 376. Adverbial acc., 377 ff. Acc. of time and space, 378. Of limit, 379,

- poetic dat. for, 379, 5. Of specification, 380. In exclam., 381. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds and gerundives, 565. Of supine, 569.
- Accusing and acquitting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Acephalous verse, 663, III.
- aceus**, adjs. in, 324.
- Active voice, 195. Act. and pass. constr., 465.
- Ad**, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. **Ad**, w. acc., 433.
- ades**, in patronymies, 316; quantity, 646, 1.
- Adhuc locorum**, 396, 2, 4) (4).
- Adipiscor**, w. gen., 409, 3.
- Adjective,—Decl. of, 147 ff. Formation of cases, 154 ff., irreg., 159. Comparison, 160 ff. Numerals, 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff. Derivation, 322 ff. Comp., 340. W. dat., 391. W. gen., 396, III. 2; 399. W. abl., 414, 419. Agreement, 438 ff. W. the force of nouns, clauses, adverbs, 441 ff. Use of comparison, 444.
- Admiseco**, w. dat., 385, 5.
- Admoneo**, constr., 410, 3.
- Admonishing, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Adolescens**, compared, 168, 3.
- Adonic verse, 677, III.
- Adulor**, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
- Advantage, dat. of, 385.
- Adverbial acc., 377.
- Adverbs,—Numeral, 181. Classes of, 304. Compar., 305. Derivation, 333 ff. Composition, 342. For adjs., 352, 4. W. dat., 392. W. gen., 396, III. 4). As preps., 437. Use, 582; w. nouns, 583. Negatives, *non*, *ne*, *haud*, 584, two negatives, 585.
- Adversative conjcs., 310; 587, III.
- Adversative sentence, 360.
- Adversus**, w. accus., 433.
- Advising, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.
- Ae**, sound of, 9, 15; changed to *z*, 341, 3.
- Aedes**, sing. and plur., 132.
- Aeger**, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Aemulus**, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).
- Aeneas**, decl. of, 43.
- Aequi boni facere**, 402, 3.
- Aër**, *ather*, acc. of, 93, 1, quantity of, 621, 3.
- aeus**, adjs. in, 326.
- Affatim**, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- Afficio**, w. abl. 414, 1, 1).
- Affinis**, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Age, expression of, 417, 3.
- Agent,—Abl. of, w. *a* or *ab*, 388, 1; Dat. of, 388.
- Agreement,—Of Pred. Noun, 362; in gen. and numb., 362, 1. Of Appositive, 363, in gen. and numb., 363, 1. Of Adject., 438; w. clause, 438, 3; constr. accord. to sense, 438, 6; w. pred. noun or appositive, 438, 7; w. two nouns, 439; 439, 2; w. part. gen. 396, 2, 3). Of Pronouns, 445; w. two antecedents, 445, 3; w. pred. noun or appositive, 445, 4; constr. accord. to sense, 445, 5; w. clause, 445, 7. Of Verb, 460; constr. accord. to sense, 461; agreement w. Appos. or Pred. noun, 462; w. comp. subject, 463.
- aï**, for *ac*, 42, 3; quant. of, 612, 1.
- al**, gen. and abl. of nouns in, 64, 87, 89.
- Aleaic verse, 664; 691, II.; greater, 692; stanza, 700, I.
- Alienus**, w. dat., 391, 1; w. abl., 391, 2, 3); w. gen., 399, 3.
- Aliquantus**, **aliquis**, **aliquot**, 191; use of **aliquis**, 455.
- alis**, adjs. in, 325.
- Alius**,—Decl. 149. Indef. 191, 2; w. abl., 417, 5; w. *atque*, *ac*, or *et*, 459, 2. **Alius—alius**, 459; **alius—alium**, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
- Alphabet, 2 ff.
- Alter**,—Decl. 149. Indef., 191, 2; **alteruter**, 191, 2; **alter—alter**, 459; **alter—alterum**, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
- Altercor**, w. dat., 385, 5.
- Alvus**, gender of, 47.
- Ambi**, **amb.**, 338, 2.
- Ambo**, decl. of, 176, 2.
- Amphora, 716.
- Amplius** without *quam*, 417, 3.

- An*, *annon*, 346, II. 2; 526, 2, 2).  
*Anacoluton*, 704, III. 4.  
*Anapaestic verse*, 678.  
*Anaphora*, 704, II. 3.  
*Anastrophe*, 704, IV. 1.  
*Animi*, constr., 399, 3. 4).  
*Ante*, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386. *Ante*, in expressions of time, 427; w. acc., 433.  
*Antecedent*, use of term, 445, 1; omitted, 445, 6; attracted, 445, 9. Clause as antecedent, 445, 7.  
*Antequam*, w. indic. or subj., 523.  
*Antimeria*, 704, III. 1.  
*Antithesis*, 703, 8.  
**-anus**, adjs. in, 325 ff.  
*Anxius*, w. gen., 399, 3.  
*Aphaeresis*, 703, 1.  
*Apocope*, 703, 3.  
*Aposiopesis*, 704, I. 3.  
*Appendix*, 702-720.  
**Appositive**,—Agreement of, 363; in gen. and numb., 363, 1. Subject omitted, 363, 2. Force of, 363, 3.  
*Aptus*, w. dat., 391, 1; *aptus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.  
*Apud*, w. accus., 433.  
**-ar**, gen. and abl. of nouns in, 66, 87, 89.  
*Arceo*, w. dat., 385, 4.  
*Archilochian verse*, 664; 677, II.; greater, 691, I.  
*Arenae*, gen. of place, 424, 3.  
**-aris**, adjs. in, 325.  
*Aristophanic*, 691, III.  
**-arium**, nouns in, 317.  
**-arius**, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 325.  
*Arrangement*,—Of Words, 592-602, —General rules, 593 ff. Effect of emphasis and euphony, 594. Contrasted groups, 595. Kindred words, 596. Words with common relation, 597. Special rules, 598 ff. Modifiers of nouns, 598; of adjs., 599; of verbs, 600; of adverbs, 601; of special words, —Demon. Prep. Conjunct. Rel. *Non*, 602. Of Clauses, 603-606, —Clause as Subj. or Pred., 603; as Subord. element, 604; in Latin Period, 605; in compd. sentence, 606.  
*Arsis and thesis*, 660.  
*As* and its divisions, 712.  
**-as**, nouns in, 1st dec., 43; 3d dec., 50; genit. of, 68; gend. of, 105.  
**-as**, for *ae* in gen., 42, 3; in Greek acc. plur., 98; in patronymics, 316; in adjs., 326; quantity of, 623.  
*Asclepiadæan verse*, 689, III.; greater, IV.  
**-asco**, inceptives in, 332, II.  
*Asking*, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.  
*Aspergo*, constr., 384, I.  
*Aspirated letters*, 4, 3.  
**-asso**, **assim**, in fut. perf. and perf. subj., 239, 4.  
*Asyndeton*, 704, I. 1.  
**-atim**, adverbs in, 334, 2.  
*Atque*, for *quam*, 417, 4.  
*Attraction*, of pronoun, 445, 4; of antecedent, 445, 9; of pred. noun or adj. after an infin., 547. Subj. by attraction, 527.  
*Attributive adj.*, 438, 2.  
**-atus**, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323.  
*Au*, 9, 15; changed, 341, 3.  
*Audio*, w. Pred. Noun, 362, 2, (1).  
*Audiens*, w. two datives, 390, 3.  
*Aureus*, the coin, 712.  
*Autem*, place of, 602, III.  
*Authority*, long or short by, 609, 2.  
*Authors*, Latin, 706.  
*Avidus*, w. gen., 399, 2; w. dat., 399, 5; w. acc. and prep., 399, 5.  
**-ax**, genit. of nouns in, 77; verbals in, 328; w. gen., 399, 2.  
**B**, CHANGED to *p*, 248.  
*Being angry*, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
*Being distant*, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.  
*Believing*, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
*Belli*, constr., 424, 2.  
*Bene*, compared, 305, 2; w. verbs of buying, 416, 3.  
*Benefiting*, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
*Bibi*, quantity of, 651, 2.  
**-bilis**, verbals in, 328.  
*Bonus*, decl., 148; compar., 165; *boni consulo*, 402, 3.  
*Bos*, gen. of, 72, 6; gen. plur., 89, III.; dat., abl., 90, 2.  
*Brachycatalectic*, 663, III.  
*Brazen age*, 706, III.

**-brum**, nouns in, 320.

**-bs**, genit. of nouns in, 75.

Bucolic caesura, 673, 2.

**-buium**, nouns in, 320.

**-bandus**, verbals in, 328.

**C**, SOUND of, 11 ff. Nouns in, 48; genit. of, 63; gend., 111.

*C*, quantity of final syllables in, 621.

Caesura, caesural pause, 662; in hexam., 673 ff.; in anapaestic verse, 678; in trochaic, 680; in iambic, 683, IV.; 686.

Calendar, Roman, 707.

Calends, 708, I. 1.

Calling, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.

**-canus**, adjs. in, 326, 2.

*Caput*, genit. of, 67; w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.

*Carbasus*, gend. of, 47.

Cardinals, 172, 174; decl. of, 175 ff.

Cases, etymology of,—Endings of, 38, 2; in 1st dec., 42; in 2d dec., 45; in 3d dec., 52; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 119; comparative view of, 121; general endings, 123. Formation of, in 3d dec.—nom. sing., 55; gen., 56 ff.; dat., 84; acc., 85; voc., 86; abl., 87; nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88; gen., 89; dat. and abl., 90. Greek cases,—gen. sing., 92; acc., 93; voc., 94; nom. and voc. plur., 95; gen., 96; dat. and abl., 97; acc., 98. Cases of adjs. of 3d dec., 154–158.

Cases, syntax of, 364–435,—characterized, 364; kindred, 365; nom., 364 ff.; voc., 369; accus., 370–381; dat., 382–392; gen., 393–411; abl., 412–431; w. prepositions, 432–437.

Catalectic verse, 663, III. 1.

*Causa, gratia*, 414, 2, 3).

Causal conjunctions, 310, 311; 587, V.; 588, VII.

Causal sentences, 360.

Cause, abl. of, 414.

Cause, Subj. of, 517–523,—Rule, 517, 521; w. *quum*, 518; *qui*, 519; *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quando*, 520; *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, 522; *antequam*, *priusquam*, 523.

Cause, denoted by part., 578, II.

Causing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.

*Cave*, w. subj. for imperat., 555, 1.

*Caveo*, constr., 385, 3.

**-ce**, appended, 186, 1.

*Celo*, constr., 374, 2 and 3.

**-cen**, compounds in, 339, 2.

**-ceps**, genit. of nouns and adjs. in, 75, 1; 155, 3.

*Certo*, w. dat., 385, 5.

*Certus*, w. gen., 399, (2).

*Ch*, 4, 3; sound of, 11, 1.

Characteristic, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428; gen. and abl. distinguished, 428, 4.

Choliambus, 683, 4.

Choosing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.

Choriambic verse, 689 ff.

*Cingo*, constr. of, 374, 7.

**-cio**, derivatives in, 315, 5.

*Circa, circiter*, w. acc., 433.

*Circum*, in compds., 338, 1; compds. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Circumdo, circumfundo*, constr., 384, 1. *Circum*, w. acc., 433.

*Cis, citra*, w. acc., 433.

*Citerior*, compared, 166.

*Citum*, quantity of, 651, 3.

*Clam*, w. acc. or abl., 437, 3.

Clauses, as nouns, gender of, 35. Prin. and sub. clauses, 345, 1 and 2. Clause as object, 371, 5; as abl. absol., 431, 4; as antecedent, 445, 7. Indirect questions, clauses w. infin., subj., and w. *quod*, compared, 554. Arrangement of, 603 ff.

*Coelum*, plur. *coeli*, 143, 1.

Cognate accus., 371, 1.

Coins, Roman, 712.

**-cola**, compounds in, 339, 2.

Collective nouns, 31.

*Colus*, gender of, 47.

*Com, con* for *cum*, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386.

Combined objects, 354, 3.

*Comitor*, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.

Command, subj. of, 487 ff. Constr. of verbs of, 385; 558, VI.

Common nouns, 31; com. quantity, 23.

*Commonco, commonefacio*, constr., 410, 3.

*Communis*, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.

- Commuto*, constr. of, 416, 2.  
 Comparative conj., 311; 588, II.  
 Comparative degree, 160; wanting, 167; formed by *magis*, 170. Comparatives w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2); w. abl., 417; w. *quam*, 417, 1; w. force of too, 444, 1; before and after *quam*, 444, 2; w. *quam* and the subj., 501, IV.  
 Comparative view,—of decl., 121–123; of conjugation, 243 ff.  
 Comparison,—of adjs., 160; modes of, 161; terminational, 162 ff.; irreg., 163 ff.; defect., 166 ff.; adverbial, 170. Use of, 444; in adverbs, 444, 4.  
*Compleo*, constr., 410, 7.  
 Complex sentences, 345, 357; abridged, 358 ff. Comp. elements, 350; subject, 352; predicate, 354.  
*Compos*, genit. of, 155; w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.  
 Composition of words, 313, 338 ff.  
 Compound nouns,—decl. of, 125 ff.; composition of, 339; comp. adjectives, 340; verbs, 341; prin. parts of, 259 ff.: comp. adverbs, 342.  
 Comp. sentences, 345, 360; abridged, 361. Comp. subject, predicate, modifier, 361, 1–3. Compounds of preps. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two aces., 374, 6.  
 Computation of money, 713.  
*Con*, see *com*.  
 Concealing, verbs of, w. two aces., 374.  
*Concedo*, constr., 551, II. 2.  
 Concession, subj. of, 514 ff.; participle, 578, IV.  
 Concessive conjunctions, 311; 588, IV.  
 Condemning, constr. of verbs of, 410, 5.  
 Condition,—conjunctions of, 311, 588. Subj. of, 502; force of tenses, 504; w. *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, 505; *ac si*, *ut si*, etc., 506; *si*, *nisi*, etc., 507 ff.; *si* omitted, 503, 1; condition supplied, 503, 2; first form, 508; second, 509; third, 510; mixed forms, 511, 512.  
 Condition in relative clauses, 513; in oratio obliqua, 533, 2 and 3; denoted by participle, 578, III.  
 Conditional sentences, 502 ff.  
*Confido*, w. dat., 385, 1; w. abl., 419.  
 Conjugation, 201 ff.; of *sum*, 204. First conj., 205 ff., 261 ff.; second, 207 ff., 266 ff.; third, 209 ff., 273 ff.; fourth, 211 ff., 283 ff.; of verbs in *io* of the 3d conj., 213. Periphrastic, 227 ff. Contractions and peculiarities, 234 ff. Comparative view of conj., 243 ff.; one general system, 244. Vowel conj., 278. Conj. of irreg. verbs, 287 ff.; of defect., 297; of impersonal, 298 ff.  
 Conjunctions, 308; coördinate, use of, 587; subordinate, use of, 588. Place of, in sentence, 602, III.  
*Conscius*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5; w. gen. and dat., 399, 6.  
*Conscius mihi sum*, constr., 551, 3.  
 Consecutive conjunctions, 311, 588.  
 Consonants, 3, I.; double, 4, 2; sounds of, 10 ff., 16.  
*Consors*, w. gen., 399, (3).  
*Constituo*, constr., 558, II.  
*Consuetudo, consuetudinis est*, constr., 556, I. 1.  
*Consulo*, constr., 385, 3.  
*Consultus*, w. gen., 399, (2).  
*Contentus*, w. abl., 419, IV.  
*Contingit*, constr., 556, II.  
*Contra*, w. accus., 423.  
 Contracted syllables, quantity of, 610.  
 Contractions, in conj., 234 ff.  
*Contrarius*, constr., 391, 2, 4).  
 Convicting, constr. of verbs of, 410.  
 Coördinate conjunctions, 309.  
 Copulative conjunctions, 310, 587. Copul. sentences, 360.  
*Coram*, w. abl., 434.  
 Countries, gender of names of, 35.  
**-crum**, nouns in, 320.  
*Cuicuiusmodi*, 187, 7.  
*Cujas*, 185, 3; 188, 4.  
*Cujus*, 185, 3; 187, 3; 188, 4; *cujusmodi*, *cujuscemodi*, *cujuscumquemodi*, 187, 7; *cujusdummodi*, 191, 4.  
**-culum**, nouns in, 320.  
**-culus, cula, culum**, nouns in, 315; adjs. in, 327.  
*Cum*, appended, 184, 6; 187, 2;



- cum, com*, in compds., 338, 1.  
*Cum*, w. abl., 434.  
**-cundus**, verbals in, 228.  
*Cuncti, omnes*, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).  
*Cupidus*, w. gen., 399, 2.  
*Cupiens*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.  
*Cupio*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- D**, DROPPED before *s*, 55, 3;  
 quantity of final syllables in, 621.
- Dactylic verse, 670 ff. Dactylico-  
 iambic, 693.
- Dama*, gend. of, 44.  
 Dates, Lat. and Eng., 710.  
 Dative, formation of,—in 1st dec.,  
 42, 3; in 3d dec., 84, 90, 97; in  
 4th dec., 116, 4; in 5th dec., 119,  
 4.  
 Dative, syntax of, 382–392,—with  
 verbs, 384 ff. Of advant. and dis-  
 advant., 385. W. compds., 386.  
 Of possessor, 387. Of agent, 388.  
 Ethical dat., 389. Two dat., 390.  
 W. adjs., 391. W. nouns and adv.,  
 392. Of gerunds, etc., 564. W.  
 verbs of Separ. 425, 2, 3).  
*Datum*, quantity of, 651, 3.  
*De*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *De*  
 w. abl., 434.  
*Decerno*, constr., 558, II.  
*Decipio*, w. gen., 409, 4; 410, 7.  
 Declarative sentence, 346.  
 Declaring, constr. of verbs of, 551.  
 Declension, 39; first, 42; second,  
 45; third, 48; fourth, 116; sec-  
 ond and fourth, 117; fifth, 119.  
 Comparative view of decl., 121;  
 one general system of decl., 122.  
 Decl. of compds., 125.  
*Dedi*, quantity of, 651, 2.  
*Dedeco*, constr., 374, 2 and 3.  
 Defective nouns, 119, 5; 129; def.  
 adjs., 159; def. comparison, 166;  
 def. verbs, 297.  
 Deliberative questions, w. the subj.,  
 486, II.  
 Demanding, constr. of verbs of, 374;  
 558, VI.  
 Demonstratives, 186; use of, 450.  
*Denarius*, 712.  
 Deponent verbs, 221; 465, 2.
- Derivation, 313; of nouns, 314 ff.;  
 of adjs., 322 ff.; of verbs, 330 ff.;  
 of adverbs, 333 ff.  
 Derivatives, quantity of, 653; quan-  
 tity of deriv. endings, 645 ff.  
 Desideratives, 332, III.  
*Desino*, w. gen., 409, 4.  
 Desire, subj. of, 487 ff.; in assevera-  
 tions, 488, 4; in relat. clauses,  
 488, 5.  
 Desiring, constr. of verbs of, 551.  
*Desisto*, w. gen., 409, 4.  
*Despero*, w. acc., 371, 3.  
*Deterior*, compared, 166.  
*Deterreo*, constr., 499, 1–2.  
*Deus*, 45, 6.  
 Diaeresis, 669, III.  
*Diana*, quantity of, 612, 3.  
 Diastole, 669, IV.  
*Dic* for *dice*, 237.  
**-dicus**, compds. in compared, 164.  
 Difference, abl. of, 418.  
 Differing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4.  
*Differo*, w. dat., 385, 4.  
*Dignor*, constr., 419, 2.  
*Dignus*, constr., 419; *dignus, qui*,  
 w. subj., 501, III.  
 Dimeter, 663, 2.  
 Diminutive, nouns, 315; dim. adjs.,  
 327; dim. verbs, 332, IV.  
 Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9; quan-  
 tity of, 610.  
 Dipody, 656, 2.  
 Direct object, 354, 1; 371.  
*Dis, di*, 338, 2.  
 Disadvantage, dat. of, 385.  
*Discrepo*, w. dat., 385, 4.  
 Disjunctive conj., 310; 587; sen-  
 tences, 360.  
*Dispar*, constr., 391, 2, 4).  
 Displeasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
*Dissentio*, w. dat., 385, 4.  
*Dissimilis*, constr., 391, 2, 4).  
 Dissyllabic perfects and supines,  
 quantity of, 651.  
 Distance, abl. of, 378, 2.  
 Distich, 666.  
*Disto*, w. dat., 385, 4.  
 Distributives, 172; 174; decl. of,  
 179.  
*Div*, compared, 305, 4.  
*Dius*, quantity of, 612, 3.  
*Diversus*, compared, 167.  
*Dives*, compared, 165, 2.

*Docco*, constr., 374, 2 and 3.  
*Docleo*, w. accus., 371, 3; w. clause, 558, V.; w. abl., 414, 2, 1).  
*Domus*, decl. of, 117; gend., 118; constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.  
*Donec*, w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.  
*Dono*, constr., 384, 1.  
 Double constr. of a few verbs, 384, 1.  
 Double consonants, 3.  
*Duc* for *duce*, 377.  
*Dum*, *dummodo*, w. subj., 503 ff.; w. ind. or subj., 521 ff.  
*Duo*, decl. of, 176.

**E**, SOUND of, 6, 14. Nouns in *e*,—1st dec., 43 ff.; 3d dec., 48, 50; genit. of, 59; 89, 1; abl. of, 87, 1; gend., 111. *E* in abl., 87; in Greek acc. plur., 98; for *ei* in gen. and dat., 119, 4; *E* in adverbs, 335; changed to *i*, 341, 3.  
*E*, quantity of—in *ei*, 119, 1; final, 616; in increments of decl., 635; of conjugation, 641.

*E* or *ex*, see *ex*.  
*Ecce* with demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.  
*Ecquis*, 188, 3. *Ecquid*, 346, II. 2.  
*Edocceo*, constr., 374, 2 and 3.  
*Egenus*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.

*Egeo*, constr., 409, 1.  
*Ego*, decl. of, 184.  
*Eheu*, quantity of, 612, 2.  
*Ei*, 9. *Ei*, quantity of, 612, 2.  
*-eis*, in patronymics, 316.  
*-eius*, quantity of, 612, 2.  
*Ejusmodi*, 186, 4.

*-ela*, nouns in, 320, 7.  
*Elegiac distich*, 676, 2.  
*Elegiambus*, 693, 1.

Elements of sentences, 347 ff.  
 Ellipsis, 704, of *facio*, *oro*, 367, 3; 602, II. 3.

*-ellus*, *ella*, *ellum*, nouns in, 315; ads. in, 327.

*-em*, in accus., 85, 119.  
 Emotion, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.

Emphasis and euphony in the arrangement of words, 594.

*-en*, nouns in, 51; *en* in Greek acc., 93; with demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.

Enallage, 704, III.

Enclitics, accent of, 26, (a); quantity of, 613, 1.

Endeavoring, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.

Endings, 41; in 1st dec., 42; in 2d dec., 45, 1; in 3d dec., 52, 2; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 119; in the five decls., 121, 123; in comparison, 162; in conjugation, 242.

English pronunciation of Latin, 6 ff.

*Enum*, place of, 602, III.

*-ensis*, ads. in, 325 ff.

*-entior*, *entissimus*, in comparison, 164.

Envying, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

*Eo*, w. gen., 396, 2, 4).

Epenthesis, 703, 5.

Epicene nouns, 36.

Epichoriambic verse, 690.

Epiphora, 704, II. 4.

*Epitome*, decl. of, 43.

*Epulum*, plur., *epulae*, 143.

*-er*, gend. of nouns in, 47, 103. Ads. in, 151; comparison of, 163, 1. Adverbs in, 335.

*-ere*, for *crunt*, 235.

*Erga*, w. acc., 433.

*Ergo*, w. gen., 411.

*-ernus*, ads. in, 325, 2.

*-es*, nouns in, 50, 119; genitive of, 69; gender of, 104, 109, 119. *es*, in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88.

*-es*, final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity of, 624.

*-esco*, inceptives in, 332, II.

*-esso*, *essim*, in fut., perf., and perf. subj., 239, 4. *esso*, verbs in, 332.

*-ester*, ads. in, 325, 2.

*-estus*, ads. in, 323, 3.

Ethical dative, 389.

*Etiamsi*, *etsi*, w. subj., 515, 516, III.

*-etum*, nouns in, 317.

Etymology 29-342.

*Eu*, sound of, 9.

Euphonic changes, 55, 3; before *si*, *sum*, *tum*, 248; 257, 1; in prepositions, 338, 1.

Euphony, see *Emphasis*.

*-eus*, ads. in, 324, 326.

*Evenit*, constr., 556, II.

*-ex*, genit. of nouns in, 78.

*Ex, e*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *Ex*, w. abl., 434.

Exchanging, constr. of verbs of, 416, 2.

Exclamatory sentences, 346, IV.; accus. in, 381; voc., nom., dat. in, 381, 3; infinitive in, 553, III.

*Exoro*, constr., 374, 2.

*Expers, exsors*, w. gen., 399, (3).

*Exterus*, compared, 163, 3.

*Extra*, w. acc., 433.

*Extremum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.

*Exuo*, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.

**F**AC, for *face*, 237.

*Facio*, w. pred. gen., 403.

*Falsum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.

*Falsus*, compared, 167.

*Fames*, abl. *famē*, 137, 2.

*Familia*, genitive of, 42, 3.

Fearing, constr. of verbs of, 492, 4.

Feeling, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.

Feet, metrical, 656 ff.

Feminine, 33.

*Fer*, for *fere*, 237.

*Fertilis*, w. gen., abl., or acc., 399, (2) and 5.

**-fex**, compds. in, 339, 2.

**-ficus**, adjs. in, compared, 161.

*Fido*, w. dat., 385; w. abl., 419.

Figures—of prosody, 669; of etymology, 703; of syntax, 704; of Rhetoric, 705.

Filling, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.

Final conjcs., 311; 588, V.

Final syllables, quantity of, 613 ff.; final syllable of the verse, 665.

Finite, or definite moods, 196; finite verb, 196.

*Flo*, quantity of, 612, 3.

*Fit*, constr., 556, II.

*Flagito*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.

*Foci*, gen. of place, 424, 3.

Following, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.

Formation,—of cases, 55–98; of parts of verbs, 240–260; of words, 313–342.

Fractions, 174, 1.

Freeing, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.

*Frenum*, pl., *freni*, *frena*, 143.

Frequentatives, 332.

*Fretus*, w. abl., 419, IV.

*Frugi*, in decl., 159; compared, 165.

*Fruor*, constr., 419.

*Fungor*, constr., 419.

Future, 197; 241, I.; in indic., 470; w. force of imperat., 470, 1; for Eng. pres., 470, 2; w. *melius*, 470, 3. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 1. In imperat., 534, 537; fut. for pres., and pres. for fut., 534, 1 and 2. In infin., 543 ff.; circumlocution for, 544. In part., 573.

Future Perfect, 197; 241, II.; in indic., 473; to denote certainty, 473, 1; for Eng. pres., 473, 2. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 2.

*Futurum esse, fuisset, fore, ut*, 544, 1–3.

*Futurum sit ut*, 481, III. 1 and 2.

**G**, SOUND of, 11 ff.; changed, 248.

*Gaudio*, constr., 371, 3; 551, III.; 558, V.; 414, 2.

*Gemo*, w. accus., 371, 3.

Gems, gender of names of, 47.

Gender, 33 ff.; in 1st dec., 44; in 2d dec., 47; in 3d dec., 99–115; in 4th dec., 118; in 5th dec., 119; general table of, 124.

Genitive, formation of.—endings, 40; in 1st dec., 42; as for *ae, um* for *arum*, 42, 3; in 2d dec., 45; *i* for *ii, um* for *orum*, 45, 5; *o* or *on*, 46, 3; in 3d dec., 56–83, 89, 93; in 4th dec., 116; *uis* for *us*, 116, 4; in 5th dec., 119; *e* or *i* for *ei*, 119, 4. In adjectives, 155.

Genitive, syntax of, 393–411,—with nouns, 395; varieties, 396; peculiarities, 397; other constrs. for gen., 398. W. adjs., 399. W. verbs, 401 ff. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; other constrs. for, 404. Of place, 404; 421, II. In special constrs., 405 ff. Acc. and gen., 410. W. adverbs, 411. Gen. of gerunds and gerundives, 563.

*Genitus*, w. abl., 425, 3.

Gentile nouns, 326, 3.

Gerund,—Nature of, 559. Cases of, 560. Ger. and Infin., 560, 2. W.

1-

:

n,  
t.  
u-40  
in-  
6;  
of,  
s.,  
2;  
ter  
is.,  
in  
d.,  
in  
s.,  
7.;

19.

her

lat.,

, 1;  
use588.  
e of,346,  
I. 1.  
iber  
II,

direct object, 561. Gerundive, 562; of *utor*, *fruor*, etc., 562, 4. Pass. sense of Ger., 562, 5. Genitive of ger. and gerundive, 563; ger. when preferred, 563, 2; gerundive with *mei*, *nostri*, etc., 563, 4; of purpose, 563, 5; infin. for ger., 563, 6. Dat. of, 564; of purpose, with official names, 564, 2 and 3. Accus. of, 565; w. object, 565, 2; of purpose, 565, 3. Abl. of, 566.

*Gloriosum est*, 556, I. 2.

Glyconic verse, 664, 689.

*Gnarus*, w. gen., 399, (2).

Golden age, 706.

Greek nouns,—in 1st dec., 43; in 2d dec., 46; in 3d dec., 91–98.

## II, A BREATHING, 2.

*Hadria*, gender of, 44.

Happening, constr. of verbs of, 556, II.

*Haud*, *ne*, *non*, 584.

Hendecasyllabic verse, 691, V.

Hendiadys, 704, II. 2.

Hephthemimeris, 656, 2.

Heroic verse, 664.

Heteroclitics, 135 ff.

Heterogeneous nouns, 141 ff.

Hexameter verse, 663, 2. Dactylic, 671.

*Ille*, *iste*, *ille*, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

*Hic* (adv.), w. gen., 396, III. 4).

Hipponactean, 683, 4.

Historical tenses, 198, 2; hist. present, 467, III.; hist. perfect, 471, II.

*Hodie*, quantity of, 654, 8.

Horace, versification of, 698 ff. Lyric metres of, 700. Index, 701.

*Horreo*, w. accus., 371, 3.

*Huc*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

*Hujusmodi*, 186, 4.

*Humus*, gender of, 47; constr. of *humi*, 424, 2.

Hypallage, 704, III. 2.

Hyperbaton, 704, IV.

Hyperbole, 705, V.

Hypercatalectic verse, 663, III.

Hypermeter, 663, III.

Hypothetical sentences, see *Conditional* ditto.

Hysteron proteron, 704, IV. 2.

**I**, SUPPLIES the place of *j*, 2, 3; sound of, 6 ff.; 14 ff.; with the sound of *y*, 9; *i* for *ii*, *ie*, 45, 5. Nouns in, 48; genit. of, 60; gender of, 111; *i*, final in dat., 84; in abl., 87; for *is*, 92; for *ei*, 119, 4; in perfect, 247, 2. *I*, quantity of,—final, 618; in increments of decl., 636; of conjugation, 643. *-ia*, nouns in, 319; in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88.

*-iacus*, adjs. in, 326.

*-iades*, in patronymics, 316.

Iambelegus, 694, 1.

Iambic verse,—Dipody, 682. Trimeter, 683; choliambus, 683, 4; catalectic, 684. Dimeter, 685; hypermeter, 685, 1; catalectic, 685, 2; acephalous, 685, 3. Tetrameter, 686.

Iambico-dactylic verse, 694.

*-ianus*, adjs. in, 326.

*-ias*, in patronymics, 316.

*-ibam*, for *iebam*, 239, 1.

*-ibo*, *ibor*, for *iam*, *iar*, 239, 2.

*-ibus*, in dat. and abl. plur., 90.

*-icius*, adjs. in, 324, 328.

Ictus, 659.

*-icus*, adjs. in, 325 ff.

*Idem*, decl., 186; w. dat., 391, 3; use of, 451. *Idem—qui*, *ac* or *atque*, 451, 5.

Ides, of the calendar, 708, I. 3.

*-ides*, in patronymics, 316.

*-ido*, nouns in, 320, 7.

*Idoneus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.

*-idus*, verbals in, 328.

*-iensis*, adjs. in, 326.

*-ier*, for *i* in infin., 239, 6.

*Igitur*, place in the clause, 602, III.

*Ignarus*, w. gen., 399, (2).

*-igo*, nouns in, 320, 7.

*-ile*, nouns in, 317.

*-ilis*, adjs. in, 325, 328; compared, 163, 2.

Illative conj., 310; 587, IV.; sentences, 360.

*Ille*, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

*Illic* for *ille*, 186, 2.

*Illiusmodi*, 186, 4.

*-illo*, verbs in, 332, IV.

*-illus*, *illa*, *illum*, in nouns, 315, 3; in adjs., 327.

- im**, in acc., 85, 93; for *am*, or *em* in pres. subj., 239, 3.  
*Immemor*, genit. of, 155, 4; gen. plur., 158, 3; w. gen., 399, 2.  
**-imonia**, nouns in, 319.  
*Impedio*, constr., 499, 1-2.  
 Imperative, 196. Tenses, 534. Use, 535 ff.; pres., 536; fut., 537; in prohibitions, 538.  
 Imperative sentences, 346, III.  
 Imperfect tense, 197; 241, I.; in indic., 468 ff.; in lively description, of customary or repeated action, 469; of attempted action, in letters, 469, 1 and 2. In Subj., 477; of present time, 481, V.; after Perf. Def., 482, 1; for Pluperf., 486, 4; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2.  
*Imperitus*, w. gen., 399, (2).  
*Impero*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.  
 Impersonal verbs, 298 ff.; subjects of, 556, I.-III.  
*Impertio*, constr., 384, 1.  
*Impleo*, constr., 410, 7.  
*Impos*, genit. of, 155; w. gen., 399, (3).  
*Impotens*, w. gen., 399, (3).  
*Imprudens*, w. gen., 399, (2).  
**-in**, in Greek accs., 93.  
*In*, in compds., 338, 1; w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *In*, w. acc. or abl., 435.  
 Inceptives, inchoatives, 332, II.  
*Incertus*, w. gen., 399, (2).  
 Inclination, subj. of, 486, 3.  
*Inclutus*, compared, 167.  
 Increments, 629 ff.; quantity of, 632 ff., 639 ff.  
 Indeclinable nouns, gender of, 35; examples, 128. Indecl. adjs., 159.  
 Indefinite moods, 196.  
 Indefinite pronouns, 189; use of, 455 ff.  
 Index of verbs, 721.  
 Indicative, 196; use of, 474 ff.; special uses, 475.  
*Indigeo*, constr., 409, 1.  
*Indignus*, w. abl., 419, IV. *indignus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.  
 Indirect discourse, distinguished from direct, 528. Subj. in, 529. Moods in prin. clause, 530; in sub. clause, 531. Tenses, 532; Pronouns, adverbs, etc., 533.  
 Indirect object, 354. 2. Rule, 384: indirect w. direct, 384, II.  
 Indirect questions, 524 ff.—Subj. in, 525. Indic. in, 525, 6; in orat. obliqua, 530, II. 2; sing. and double, 526.  
*Induco*, constr., 374, 7.  
 Indulging, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
*Induo*, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.  
**-ine**, in patronymics, 316, 4.  
*Inferus*, compared, 163, 3.  
 Infinitive, 196, II. Tenses of, 540 ff. Subject of, 545; of Hist. infin., 545, 1. Predicate after, 546; attracted, 547. Construction of, 548 ff.; as Nom., 549; as Accus., 550 ff.; w. another acc., 552, 2; in relative clauses, 531, 1; after conjunctions, 531, 2; after adjs., 552, 3; after preps., 552, 4; in special constrs., 553; as pred., 553, I.; as appos., 553, II.; in exclam., 553, III.; as abl. abs., 553, IV.; of Purpose, 553, V.; for Gerund, 553, VI.  
*Infra*, w. acc., 433.  
*Ingenii*, w. adjs., 399, 3.  
 Injuring, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
*Inniter*, constr., 419.  
*Inops*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.  
*Inscius*, w. gen., 399, (2).  
 Inseparable preps., 397; 654, 2.  
*Insupergo*, constr., 384, 1.  
 Instrument, abl. of, 414, 4.  
*Insutus*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. other constrs., 399, 5.  
*Integer*, w. gen., 399, 3.  
*Inter*, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386. *Inter*, w. acc., 433.  
*Intercludo*, constr., 384, 1.  
*Interest*, w. gen., 406, III.  
*Interior*, compared, 166.  
 Interjections, 312; w. voc., 369, 1; w. nom., acc., or dat., 381, 3; use of, 539 ff.  
 Interrogative conjunctions, 311, 588.  
 Interrogative pronouns, 188; use of, 454.  
 Interrogative sentences,—Form, 346, II. Interrog. words, 346, II. 1. Double quest., 346, II. 2. Deliber quest., 486, II. Answers, 346, II.

3. Indirect quest., 525; w. indic., 525, 6; single and double, 526. In indirect discourse, 529 ff.; rhetorical ques., 530, 2.

*Interrogo*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. acc. and abl., 374, 2-3.

*Intra*, w. accus., 433.

Intransitive verbs, 193; 371, 3; impersonal pass., 465, 1.

**-inus**, adjs. in, 324 ff.

*Invidus*, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).

*Inventus*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.

**-io**, verbs of 3d conj. in, 213 ff.; nouns in, 318, 321.

Ionic verse, 687.

**-ior**, in comparatives, 162.

*Ipse*, decl. of, 186; use of, 452.

*Ipsus*, for *ipse*, 186, 3.

Iron age, 706.

Irony, 705, IV. in condition, 503, 3.

Irregular nouns, 127 ff.; irreg. adjs., 159; irreg. comparison, 163 ff.

Irregular principal parts of verbs, 249-258; irreg. verbs, 287 ff.

*Is*, decl. of, 186; use of, 451; reflexive, 448. *Is*—*qui*, 451, 4.

**-is**, in dat. and abl. of the 1st and 2d decls., 42, 45; in genit. of 3d dec., 52; in acc., dat., and abl. plur., 88, III.; 90. Nouns in *is*, 50; genitive of, 71; gender of, 106.

**-is**, in patronymics, 316; quantity of *is* final, 626.

**-isco**, inceptives in, 332, II.

Islands, genit. of names of, 35; constr. of names of, 424.

**-issimus**, in superlatives, 162.

**-isso**, verbs in, 332.

*Iste*, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

*Istic*, *isthic*, for *iste*, 186, 2.

*Istiusmodi*, 186, 4.

**-itas**, nouns in, 319.

**-iter**, adverbs in, 335.

Ithyphalicus, 681, 2.

**-itia**, nouns in, 319.

**-itimus**, adjs. in, 325, 2.

**-itium**, nouns in, 318.

**-ito**, frequentatives in, 332.

**-itudo**, nouns in, 319.

*Itum*, quantity of, 651, 3.

**-itus**, nouns in, 318; adverbs in, 335, 3.

**-ium**, in genit. plur., 89; nouns in, 318 ff.

**-ius**, adjs. in, 326; quantity of, 612, 3.

**-ivus**, adjs. in, 328, 5.

**-ix**, genitive of nouns in, 79.

**J**, PLACE supplied by *i*, 2; length-ens preceding vowel, 611.

*Jecur*, genitive of, 66, 5.

*Jesus*, decl. of, 128, 1, 3).

*Jocus*, pl., *joci*, *joca*, 141.

*Jubeo*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.

*Jugrum*, decl. of, 136; use of, 718.

*Jugum*, quantity of compds. of, 611, 3.

*Jungo*, w. dat., 385, 5.

*Jupiter*, genitive of, 66, 3.

*Jusjurandum*, decl. of, 126.

Juvenal, versification of, 696.

*Juvenalis*, abl. of, 87, 2.

*Juvenis*, abl. of, 87, 2; compared, 168, 3.

*Juvo*, w. accus., 385, 1.

*Juxta*, w. accus., 433.

**K**, RARE, 2.

Knowing, constr. of verbs of, 551, I. 1.

**L**, NOUNS in, 48, 51; genit. of, 64; gender, 112; quantity of final syllables in, 621.

Labials, 3.

*Lacrimo*, w. accus., 371, 3.

*Lacdo*, w. accus., 385, 1.

*Lar*, quantity of genit., 633, 4.

*Lassus*, w. gen., 399, 3.

Latin authors, 706.

Latin grammar, 1.

Latin period, 605.

**-lentus**, adjs. in, 323.

Letters, classes of, 3; combinations of, 4; sounds of, 5-16.

*Libero*, w. abl. or gen., 425, 3.

*Libra*, 714.

*Licet*, w. subj., 515.

Linguals, liquids, 3.

Litotes, 705, VI.

*Litum*, quantity of, 651, 2.

Logaoedic verse, 691.

*Longius*, without *quam*, 417, 3.

**-ls**, genit. of nouns in, 76.

**M**, EUPHONIC changes of, 248, 338, 1; quantity of final syllables in, 621; elided, 669, I.

**-ma**, dat. and abl. plur. of nouns in, 90, 1.  
*Magis*, *maxime*, in adverbial comparison, 170.  
*Magnus*, compared, 165.  
*Major*, in expressions of age, 417, 3.  
 Making, verbs of, w. two accs., 373; w. subj., 558, IV.  
*Malo*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.  
*Malus*, compared, 165.  
*Manifestus*, w. gen., 399, 3.  
 Manner, means, abl. of, 414; principle for, 578, II.  
 Masculine, 33.  
 Material nouns, 31.  
*Me*, for *mihi*, 184, 5.  
 Measure of difference, abl. of, 418; measure in prosody, 663, II.; Roman measure, 715 ff.  
*Med*, *mehe*, for *me*, 184, 5.  
*Medcor*, w. dat., 385, 2.  
*Medius*, designating part, 441, 6.  
*Melius*, w. indic. for subj., 475, 2-4.  
*Melos*, plur. of, 95, 1.  
*Meme*, 184, 6.  
*Mimini*, w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407, 1.  
*Memor*, w. gen., 399, 2).  
**-men**, **mentum**, nouns in, 320.  
*Mensa*, decl. of, 42.  
*Mepte*, 184, 5.  
**-met**, forms in, 184, 3; 185, 1.  
 Metaphor, 705, I.  
 Metathesis, 703, 7.  
 Metonymy, 705, II.  
 Metre, 667.  
 Metrical equivalents and substitutes, 657, 658.  
**-metros**, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.  
*Metuo*, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.  
*Meus*, decl., 185.  
*Mi* for *mihi*, 184, 5.  
*Militia*, constr., 424, 2.  
*Mille*, decl. and use of, 178.  
 Million, cardinal for, 174; symbol for, 180.  
 Million sesterces, Latin for, 713, 4.  
**-mino**, in imperatives, 239, 5.  
*Minor*, *minus*, without *quam*, 417, 3.  
*Mirror*, w. accus., 371, 3; w. gen., 409, 4.  
*Mirum est*, constr. of, 556, I. 2.

*Mis* for *mei*, 184, 5.  
*Misceo*, w. dat., or abl., 385, 5.  
*Misericor*, *misericord*, w. gen., 406.  
*Miseret*, constr., 410. *Miserescit*, *miseretur*, 410, 6.  
 Mobile nouns, 36.  
*Moderor*, constr., 385, 3.  
 Modifier, 348 ff.  
*Modius*, 715.  
*Modo*, w. subj., 503, 505.  
*Moereo*, w. accus., 371, 3.  
*Monco*, constr., 410, 3.  
 Money, Roman, 712 ff.  
 Monometer, 663, 2.  
 Monosyllables, quantity of, 613.  
 Months, Roman, 707; division of, 708; gender of names of, 35.  
 Moods, 196,—Indic., 474 ff. Subj., 483-533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infinitive, 539-553. Gerund, 559 ff. Supine, 567 ff. Part., 571 ff.  
*Mos*, *moris est*, constr., 556, I. 1.  
**-ms**, gen. of nouns in, 75.  
 Multiplicatives, 173.  
*Multus*, comparison of, 165.  
 Mutes, 3.  
*Muto*, constr., 416, 2.

**N**, NOUNS in, 48; genit. of, 65;gend. of, 113; quantity of final syllables in, 621.  
 Name, dat. of, 387, 1; gen. of, 387, 2.  
 Names of towns, constr., 423.  
*Natus*, w. abl., 425, 3.  
*Nē*, *num*, *nonne*, interrog. particles, 311, 8; in single questions, 346, II. 1; in double, 346, II. 2; in indirect questions, 526.  
*Nē*, w. subj. of desire, 488, 3; of purpose, 489 ff.; of concession, 515.  
*Nē*, *non*, *haud*, 584. *Necne*, 490, 1.  
*Necne*, 346, II. 2, 3; 526, 2, 1).  
*Nedum*, w. subj., 493, 4.  
 Negatives, 584; force of two negatives, 585.  
*Nemo*, indef., 191, 2; use of, 457, 1.  
*Nequam*, indecl., 159; compared, 165, 2.  
*Nē—quidem*, 585; 602, III. 2.  
*Nescio an*, w. subj., 526, II. 2, 2).  
*Nescio quis*, *quomodo*, etc., w. indic., 525, 4.  
*Nescius*, w. gen., 399, (2).

- neus**, adjs. in, 324.  
*Neuter*, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2.  
 Neuter adjectives, as adverbs, 335, 4; as cognate accus., 371, 1, 3) (2); as a second accus., 374, 5; w. partitive genit., 396, III. 2, 3) (3); as predicate, 438, 4.  
 Neuter nouns, nom., acc., and voc. of, 38, 3; neuter by signification, 35; by ending, in 2d dec., 47; in 3d dec., 111 ff.; in 4th dec., 118.  
*Nŭ*, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.  
*Nimis*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).  
*Nisi*, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.  
*Nitor*, constr., 419.  
*Nolo*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2; *noli*, -ito, in prohibitions, 535, 1, 3).  
*Nomen est*, constr., 387, 1.  
 Nominative, formation of, in 3d dec., 55, 88, 95; neut. plur. in adjs., 157.  
 Nominative, syntax of, 366 ff.; as subject, 367; agreement of, 368; for voc., 369, 2.  
*Non*, *ne*, *haud*, 584; place of *non*, 602, IV., omitted, 584, 2.  
*Non*, w. *quo*, *quod*, *quin*, *quia*, w. subj., 520, 3.  
 Nones in the Roman month, 708, I. 2.  
*Nonne*, *non* = *nonne*, 346, II. 1.  
*Nos*, for *ego*, 416, 2.  
*Noster*, for *meus*, 446, 2.  
*Nostras*, 185, 2.  
*Nostrī*, *nostrum*, 396, 1; 446, 3.  
 Nouns, etymology of,—gender of, 33 ff.; pers. and numb., 37; cases, 38; declensions, 39–126; indecl., 128; defect., 129; heteroclitics, 135 ff.; heterogeneous, 141.  
 Nouns, syntax of, 362–437,—Agreement, 362 ff. Nom., 364 ff.; Voc., 369; Accus., 370–381; Dat., 382–392; Gen., 393–411; Abl., 412–431; w. preps., 432–437.  
*Novus*, compared, 167.  
*Noxius*, w. gen., 399, 2.  
**-ns**, genit. of nouns in, 76.  
*Nubo*, w. dat., 385, 2.  
*Nullus*, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2; use of, 457; for *non*, 457, 3.  
*Num*, *numquid*, 346, II. 1 and 2.  
 Number, 37; in verbs, 199.  
 Numerals, 171 ff.; adjs., 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff.; symbols, 180; adverbs, 181.  
**-nus**, adjectives in, 324.  
*Nusquam*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).  
**O**, SOUND of, 6 ff., 14; nouns in, 48, 51; genit. of, 61; gend., 100; derivatives in, 320, 6.  
*O*, quantity of,—final, 620; in increments, 634, 642; in compds., 654, 7.  
*Ob*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Ob*, w. acc., 433.  
*Obediens*, w. two datives, 390, 3.  
 Obeying, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
 Object, direct, indirect, combined, 354; direct, 371; omit., 371, 1, (3); clause as an object, 371, 5; 557 ff. See *Subject and object clauses*.  
 Objective genitive, 396, II.  
 Oblique cases, 38; use of, 370–437.  
*Obliviscor*, w. gen., 406, II.; other constrs., 407.  
*Obsisto*, *obsto*, constr., 499, 1–2.  
*Ociore*, compared, 166.  
**-odos**, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.  
*Oe*, sound of, 9, 14.  
*Officio*, constr., 499, 1–2.  
*Ohe*, quantity, 612, 4.  
*Olco* and *redolco*, w. acc., 371, 3.  
*Ollus*, for *ille*, 186, 3.  
**-olus**, **ola**, **olum**, in diminutives,—in nouns, 315, 2; in adjs., 327.  
*Omnes*, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).  
**-on**, in Greek gen. plur., 96.  
**-one**, in patronymics, 316.  
*Operam do*, w. subj., 492, 1.  
*Optimum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.  
*Opus*, constr., 419.  
**-or**, gender of nouns in, 101; derivation of, 320 ff.  
*Oratio obliqua*, see *Indirect discourse*.  
 Ordinal numbers, 172, 174; decl. of, 179.  
*Oro*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj. or infin., 558, VI. 3.  
 Orthography, 2–28.  
*Ortus*, w. abl., 425, 3.  
**-os**, nouns in, 50; genit. of, 72; gend., 102.  
**-os**, for *is* in the genitive, 92.  
**-os** final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity, 625.



-osus, adjs. in, 323.

Ovid, versification of, 697.

-ox, genit. of nouns in, 80.

**PALAM**, w. abl., 437, 2.

Palatals, 3, II.

*Pan*, gen. and acc. of, 65, 2; 93, 1.

*Panthus*, voc. of, 46, 3, 5).

*Par* and *dispar*, constr., 391, 2, 4).

Paragoge, 703, 6.

Pardoning, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

Paroemic verse, 664.

*Pars*, in fractions, 174, 1.

*Particeps*, genit. of, 155; w. gen., 399, (3).

Participles, 196, II. 4. Tenses, relative time, 571. Agreement and use, 438 and 575 ff. For rel. clause, 577. For sub. clause,—time, cause, manner, means, condition, concession, purpose, 578. For prin. clause, 579. For verbal noun, 580. W. negative, 581.

Particles, etymology of,—Adverbs, 303 ff.; preps., 306 ff.; conjuncts., 308 ff.; interjects., 312.

Particles, syntax of, 582–590,—Adverbs, 582 ff.; preps., 586, 432–437; conjuncts., 587 ff.; interjects., 589 ff.

*Partim*, w. gen., 396, III. 4). *Partim*—*partim*, for *pars*—*pars*, 461, 5.

Partitive genitive, 396, III.

Parts of speech, 30.

*Parum*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

*Parvus*, compared, 165.

Passive voice, 195; passive constr., 371, 6.

*Paterfamilias*, decl. of, 126.

*Patior*, constr., 551, II. 1–2.

Patrials, 326, 3.

Patronymics, 316.

Pause, caesural, 662.

Peculiarities in conjug., 234 ff.

*Pelagus*, plur. and gen. of, 46, 5; 47, II.

*Penes*, w. accus., 433.

Pentameter, 663, 2.

Penthemimeris, 656, 2.

Penults, quantity of, 645 ff.

*Per*, in compds., 338, 1; 371, 4;

*per*, w. acc., 433. *Per me stat*, 499, 1.

Perceiving, constr. of verbs of, 551.

*Percontor*, w. two accs., 374, 2.

Perfect system, 241.

Perfect and supine, formation of, 258.

Perfect, 197; 241, II.; pres. and hist., or definite and indef., 198; wanting, 268, 275, 281, 283.

Perfect, syntax of,—in indic., 471; def. and indef., or pres. and hist., 471; of what has ceased to be, 471, 1; w. *paene*, *prope*, 471, 2; for Eng. pres., 471, 3. In subj., 478; in sequence, 480; after hist. tense, 482, 2; 533, 1; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 509; in orat. obl., 532 ff.; in infin., 542; for pres., 542, 2. In part., 574; for verbal noun, 580.

Period, Latin, arrangement of, 605.

Periphrastic conjugation, 227 ff.

*Peritus*, w. gen., 399, (2).

*Permisco*, w. dat., 385, 5.

*Permitto*, constr., 551, II. 2.

Person, of nouns, 37; of verbs, 209.

Personal pronouns, 184; use of, 446; reflex. use of, 448.

Persuading, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

*Pertaedet*, *pertacsum est*, 410, 6.

*Peto*, constr., 374, 3, 4).

*Ph*, 4.

Phalaecian verse, 691, V.

Pherecratean verse, 689, II.

*Piget*, constr., 410.

Place, abl. or gen. of, 421 ff.; locative, 423, 2.

Pleasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

Plenty, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419, III.

*Plenus*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.

Pleonasm, 704, II.

Pluperfect, 197; 241, II.—in indic., 472; in letters, 472, 1; for Eng. imp., 472, 2. In subj., 478; sequence, 480; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2; in orat. obl., 532; 533, 2–4.

Plural, 37; wanting, 130; with change of meaning, 132.

*Plus*, without *quam*, 417, 3.

*Pocnitct*, constr., 419.

Polysyndeton, 704, II. 1.

*Pone*, w. accus., 453.

- Posco*, w. two accs. or acc. and abl., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
- Position, long by, 611; short, 612.
- Positive, 160; wanting, 166.
- Possessives, 185; w. gen., 397, 3; for gen., 398, 3; w. *refert* and *interest*, 408, 1, 2); use of, 447; reflexive, 448.
- Possessor, dat. of, 387.
- Post*, sound of, 8, 1.
- Post*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Post*, in expressions of time, 427; *post*, w. acc., 433.
- Posterus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Postremus*, force of, 442.
- Postridie*, w. gen., 411; w. accus., 437, 1.
- Postulo*, constr., 374, 3, 4).
- Potens*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Potential subjunctive, 485 ff.; in declar. sentences, 486, I.; in deliberative questions, 486, II.; in sub. clauses, 486, III.; of repeated action, 486, 5.
- Potior*, w. gen., 409, 3; w. abl., 419; 419, 4.
- Prae*, in compds. w. dat., 386; *prae*, w. abl., 434.
- Præditus*, w. abl., 419, 3.
- Præter*, in compds., w. accus., 371, 4; *præter*, w. accus., 433.
- Predicate, 347; simple, 353; complex, 354; compound, 361. Pred. nouns, 355, 362. Pred. adjs., 356; 438, 2. Pred. gen., 401; varieties of, 402; verbs with, 403; other constrs. for, 404. Pred. abl., 428, 1.
- Prepositions, 306; insep., 307; in compds., 338, 1. In expressions of time and space, 378, 1 and 2. W. names of places, 379, 1, 2 and 4. *Pro* with abl., 384, 2, 2). Compds. w. dat., 386. *A* or *ab* w. abl. of agent, 388, 1; 414, 5. Case w. prep. for the dat., 391, 2; for the gen., 398, 4; 399, 5; 407, 2; 410, 4. *Cum* w. abl. of accompaniment, 414, 7. *Quam pro*, 417, 6. W. abl. of place, 421; of source and separation, 425; of time, 426. Preps. w. cases, Rule, 432, 434 ff.; preps. as adverbs, 436.
- Present, 197; 241, I.,—in indic., 466 ff.; of general truths, customs, hist. pres., 467. In subj., 477. In imperat., 536. In infin., 541. Part., 572.
- Present perfect, 471, I.
- Present system of forms, 241.
- Priapeian verse, 695.
- Price, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 416.
- Pridie*, w. gen., 411; w. acc., 437, 1.
- Primitives and derivatives, 313.
- Principal parts of verbs, 240, 246–260. Prin. clauses, 345, 2; in oratio obliqua, 530. Prin. elements, 349; tenses, 198, 2.
- Prior*, *primus*, 166; force of, 442, 1.
- Præusquam*, w. indic. or subj., 521, 523.
- Pro*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2; *pro*, w. abl. in defence of, 384, 2, 2); *pro*, w. abl., 434.
- Pro*, quantity of, in compds., 654, 4.
- Procul*, w. abl., 437, 2.
- Prohibeo*, constr., 499, 1; 551, II. 1.
- Pronouns, 182 ff.; pers., 184; pos-  
ses., 185; demon., 186; relat., 187; interrog., 188; indef., 189.
- Pronouns, syntax of, 445–459,—  
Agreement, 445. Pers. and Pos-  
ses., 446 ff. Reflex. use of, 448 ff.  
Demon., 450 ff. Rel., 453. In-  
terrog., 454. Indef., 455.
- Pronunciation of Latin, 5–28.
- Prope*, w. accus., 433.
- Proper nouns, 31.
- Propior*, *proximus*, 166; w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.
- Propius*, w. accus., 437, 1.
- Proprius*, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.
- Propter*, w. accus., 433.
- Prosody, 607–701,—Quantity, 608–654. Versification, 655–701.
- Prospicio*, constr., 385, 3.
- Prosthesis, 703, 4.
- Provido*, constr., 385, 3.
- Providus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Proxime*, w. accus., 437, 1.
- Proximum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.
- Proximus*, w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.
- Prudens*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.
- ps, genit. of nouns in, 75.
- Pudet*, constr., 410.
- Punishment, w. verbs of condemn-  
ing, 410, 5.

*Purgo*, constr., 410, 7.

Purpose, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490; pure purpose, 491; mixed, 492; peculiarities, 493; in rel. clauses, 500 ff. Inf. of purpose, 553, V.; gerund, 563, 5; 564, 2; supine, 569; participle, 578, V.

*Pyrites*, decl. of, 43.

**Q**U, changed, 248.

*Quaero*, constr., 374, 3, 4).

*Qualis*, *qualiscunque*, *qualisqualis*, 187, 7; *qualis*, interrog., 188, 4; *qualislibet*, indef., 191, 4.

Quality, characteristic, genit. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428.

*Quam*, w. comparatives, 417, 1; w. superlatives, 170, 2. *Quam pro*, w. abl., 417, 6. *Quam ut*, w. subj., 496, 2. *Quam si*, w. subj., 503, 506. *Quam quod*, w. subj., 520, 3.

*Quamquam*, w. indic. or subj., 516, I.

*Quamvis*, *quantumvis*, w. subj., 515 ff.

*Quando*, w. indic. or subj., 520.

Quantity, 20 ff.; signs of, 24. General rules for, 610 ff. Special, 613-654; final syllables, 613 ff.; increments, 629 ff.; deriv. endings, 645 ff.; stem syllables, 649 ff.

*Quantus*, *quantuscunque*, *quantusquantus*, 187, 7; indefinite, 188, 4.

*Quasi*, w. subj., 503, 506.

*Qui*, rel., interrog., indef., 187 ff.; for *quo*, *qua*, 187, 1; 188, 2. Use of as rel., interrog., indef., 453 ff. *Qui*, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489, 500 ff. *Qui dicitur*, *vocatur*, 453, 7. *Quicunque*, 187, 4.

*Quia*, w. indic. or subj., 520.

*Quidam*, indef., 191, 455.

*Quidem*, place in clause, 602, III.

*Quilibet*, 191; use of, 458.

*Quin*, w. subj., 489, 498.

*Quinam*, 188, 3.

*Quinarius*, 712.

*Quippe*, w. relative, 519, 3.

*Quis*, interrog., 188; indef., 189 ff.; use of, 454 ff.

*Quis*, for *quibus*, 187, 1.

*Quisnam*, 188, 3.

*Quispiam*, 191; use of, 455.

*Quisquam*, 191; use of, 457.

*Quisque*, 191; use of, 458; w. plur. verb, 461, 3.

*Quisquis*, 187, 4.

*Quitum*, quantity of, 651, 3.

*Quivis*, 191; use of, 458.

*Quo*, w. gen. 396, III. 4); w. subj. of purpose, 489, 497.

*Quoad*, w. gen., 396, III. 4); w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.

*Quod*, expletive, 453, 6; w. subj., 520; clause w. *quod* unconnected, 554, IV.; *quod* restrictive, 501, 3.

*Quojus*, *quoi*, for *cujus*, *cui*, 187, 1.

*Quominus*, w. subj., 499.

*Quoniam*, w. indic. or subj., 520.

*Quoque*, place in the clause, 602, III.

*Quot*, *quotcunque*, *quotquot*, *quotus*, *quotuscunque*, 187, 7; 188, 4.

*Quum*, w. subj., 515, 517 ff.; w. indic., 518, 3.

**R**, DROPPED, 55, 3; changed, 248; nouns in, 48, 51; genit. of, 66; gender, 101, 103, 111, 114.

*R*, quantity of final syllables in, 621.

*Rastrum*, plur. *rastri*, *rastra*, 143.

*Ratum*, quantity of, 651, 3.

*Re*, *red*, 338, 2.

**-re**, for *ris*, 236.

Reason, subj. of, 517 ff. See *Cause*. *Recordor*, w. gen., 406, II.; w. accus., 407, 1; w. abl. with *de*, 407, 2.

*Recuso*, constr., 499, 1-2.

Reduplicated perfects, 254; quantity of, 652.

*Refert*, constr., 406, III.: 408.

*Refertus*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (2) and 5.

Reflexive use of pronouns, 448 ff.

Regarding, verbs of, w. two accus., 373.

*Regno*, w. gen., 409, 3.

Relative, 187; as adj., 445, 8; use of, 453.

Relative clause, w. potential subj., 486, 1; w. subj. of desire, 488, 5; of purpose, result, 500; of result after indefinite or general antecedents, after *unus*, *solus*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, and compar. w. *quam*, 501, I.-IV.; w. subj. of condition, 513; of conces-

- sion, 515; of cause, reason, 517, 519; w. infin., 531, 1.
- Reliquum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.
- Remaining, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
- Reminding, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Reminiscor*, w. gen., 406, II.
- Repeated action, subj. of, 486, 5.
- Reposco*, with two accs., 374, 2.
- Resisting, verbs of, w. the dat., 385.
- Respublica*, decl. of, 126.
- Restat ut*, 495, 2.
- Result, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490 ff.; of pure result, 494; mixed, 495; peculiarities, 496. With relatives, 500. See *Relative clause*.
- Reticentia*, 704, I. 3.
- Rhetorical questions, 539, 2.
- Rhythmic accent, 659.
- Ridco*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Rivers, gender of names of, 35.
- Rogo*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
- rs*, genit. of nouns in, 76.
- Rudis*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.
- Rules of Syntax, 591.
- Rus*, constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
- Rutum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- S** SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48 ff.; genit. of, 68-76; gend., 110.
- Sacer*, compared, 167; w. dat. or gen., 391; 399, 3, 3).
- Saepe*, compared, 305, 4.
- Sapio*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Sapphic verse, 664; 690, I.; 691, IV.; greater sapphic, 690, II.
- Satago, satagito*, w. gen., 409, 5.
- Satis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- Satisfacio*, w. dat., 385, 2.
- Satium*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- Scanning, 668.
- Season, 683, 4.
- Scidi*, quantity of, 651, 2.
- Secundum*, w. accus., 433.
- Semi-deponents, 272, 3; 282; use of, 465, 3.
- Senex*, compared, 168, 3.
- Sentences, syntax of, 343-361; classification of, 345 ff.; simple, 347 ff.; complex, 357 ff.; compound, 360. See also *Declarative, Exclamatory, Imperative, Interrogative*.
- Separation, abl. of, 425.
- Sequence of tenses, 480 ff. Rule, 480. Application, 481; after hist. pres., 481, IV.; after imp. subj., 481, V.; after infin. or part., 481, VI. Exceptions, 482; after perf. def., 482, 1; hist. tense, 482, 2; in orat. obliqua, 482, 3.
- Sequitur*, w. subj. or infin., 495, 2; 549, 1.
- Serving, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Serveus*, decl. of, 45.
- Seve*, 184, 4.
- Sestertius, sestertia, sestertium*, 712 ff.
- Showing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
- si, sin*, in Greek datives, 90, 97.
- Silver age, 706.
- sim*, in perfect subj., 239, 4.
- Similis* and its compds., constr., 391, 2, 4).
- Simple,—sentence, 347 ff.; elements, 350; subject, 351; predicate, 353; words, 313, 1.
- Simul*, w. abl., 437, 2.
- Sin*, w. subjunctive, 503, 507 ff.
- Sine*, w. abl., 434.
- Singular, 37; wanting, 131.
- Sino*, constr., 551, II. 1.
- Sitio*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Situm*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- so*, in fut. perfect, 239, 4.
- Solus*, decl. of, 149; *solus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.
- Source, abl. of, 425.
- Space, abl. of, 378.
- Sparing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Specification, acc. of, 380; genit. of, 396, V.; abl. of, 429.
- Spirants, 3.
- Stanza, 666; stanzas of Horace, 699 ff.
- Statum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- Statuo*, constr., 558, II.
- Stem, 41; in the five decls., 123.
- Stem-syllables, quantity in primitives, 649 ff.; in derivats., 653; in compds., 654.
- Steti, stiti*, quantity of, 651, 2.
- Striving, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.
- Studiosus*, w. gen., 399.
- Sub*, in compds., 338, 1; compds. w. dat., 386. *Sub* w. acc. or abl., 435.

- Subject,—Simple subject, 351; complex, 352; compound, 361. Subj. nom., 367; omitted, 367, 2. Subj. acc., 375, 545; omitted, 545, 2. Infin. as subj., 549. Clause as subj., 555 ff.
- Subject and object clauses, 554 ff. Indirect questions, infin. clauses, subjunctive clauses, and clauses with *quod*, compared, 554. Subject clauses, 555 ff.; interrog., 555; not interrog., 556. Object clauses, 557 ff.; interrog., 557; not interrog., 558.
- Subjective genitive, 396, I.
- Subjunctive, 196; syntax of, 483–533,—Potential Subj., 485 ff. Subj. of desire, 487 ff. Of purpose or result, 489–501; w. conjuncts., 489 ff.; w. relatives, 500 ff. Of condition, 502 ff. Of concession, 515 ff. Of cause and time, 517 ff. In indirect questions, 524 ff. By attraction, 527. In indirect discourse—*oratio obliqua*, 528.
- Subordinate,—clauses, 345, 2; in *oratio obliqua*, 531. Sub. conjuncts., 311, 588; elements, 349.
- Substantives, see *Nouns*.
- Subter*, in compds. w. acc., 371, 4. *Subter*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Sui*, decl. of, 184; use of, 448 ff.
- Sum*, w. dat., 387; w. pred. gen., 403.
- Super*, in compds. w. accus., 371, 4.; in compds. with dat., 386. *Super*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Superlative, 160; irreg., 163; wanting, 168 ff.; formed by *maxime*, 170; w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2).
- Superus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Supine, 196, II.; wanting, 267 ff., 274, 281, 283. Use of, 567 ff.
- Supine system, 241.
- Supplico*, w. dat., 385, 2.
- Supra*, w. accus., 433.
- Suspensus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Suus*, decl. of, 185; use of, 448 ff.
- Syllables, 17 ff.
- Synaeresis, 669, II.
- Synaloepha, Synapheia, 669, I. 5.
- Synecdoche, 705, III.
- Synesis, 704, III. 3.
- Synopsis of conjugation, 216–226.
- Syntax, 343–606,—of sentences, 343–361; of nouns, 362–437; of adjectives, 438–444; of pronouns, 445–459; of verbs, 460–581; of particles, 582–590. Rules of syntax, 591. Arrangement of words and clauses, 592–606.
- Systole, 669, IV.
- T** SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48; genit. of, 67; gender, 111. *T* dropped, 55, 3; 248.
- T*, quantity of final syllables in, 621
- Tacet*, constr., 410.
- Talis*, 186, 4.
- Talpa*, gender of, 44.
- Tametsi*, w. subj., 515; 516, III.
- Tanquam*, *tanquam si*, w. subj., 503; 506.
- Tantus*, 186, 4; *tantum abest*, 496, 3.
- Teaching, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
- Ted* for *te*, 184, 5.
- Tempero*, constr., 385, 3.
- Templum*, decl. of, 45.
- Temporal conjunctions, 311; 588, I.
- Tenses, 197; prin. and hist., 198; wanting, 198, 3. Use of, in indic., 466 ff.; in subj., 476 ff.; sequence of, 480 ff.; in imperat., 534; in infin., 540; in part., 571.
- Tenus*, w. gen., 411; w. abl., 434; after its case, 434, 2.
- Terrae*, genit. of place, 424, 3.
- Testis sum*, constr., 551, 3.
- Tete*, 184, 4.
- Tetrameter verse, 663, 2.
- Tetrapody, 656, 2.
- Tetrastich, 666.
- Th, 4.
- Thesis, 660.
- thongos**, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.
- Threatening, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- tim**, adverbs in, 334, 2.
- Time, accus. of, 378; abl. of, 378, 2; 426; w. the prep. *in*, 426, 2; w. *abhinc*, 427. Time denoted by acc. or abl. w. *ante* or *post*, 427; by participle, 578, I.
- Time, with cause or purpose, subj. of, 521 ff.
- Timco*, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.
- Tis*, for *tui*, 184, 5.
- to**, for *tor*, in imperative, 239, 5.

*Tot, totus*, 186, 4. *Totus*, decl. of, 149.

Towns, gender of names of, 35; constr.—accus., 379; with *urbs* or *oppidum*, 379, 2; genit. or abl., 421, II.

*Trans*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Trans*, w. acc., 433.

Transitive verbs, 193; 371, 3.

Trees, gender of names of, 35.

Trimeter, 663, 2.

Tripody, 656, 2.

Tristich, 666.

Trochaic verse, 679 ff.

**-trum**, nouns in, 320.

*Tu*, decl. of, 184.

*Tuli*, quantity of, 651, 2.

**-tus**, nouns in, 318.

*Tuus*, decl. of, 185.

**U**, SOUND of, 6 ff., 14; w. sound of *u*, 9. Nouns in *u*, 116; gender of, 118.

*U*, quantity of,—final, 619; in increments, 637, 641.

**-u**, for *ui* in dat., 116, 4.

*Ubi*, w. genit., 396, 2, 4).

**-ubus**, in dat. and abl., 90; 116, 4.

*Ui*, as diphthong, 9.

**-uis**, for *us*, in genit., 116, 4.

**-ula**, nouns in, 320, 5.

**-uleus**, in derivatives, 315, 5.

*Ullus*, decl. of, 119; indef., 191, 2; use of, 457.

*Ullior*, *ultimus*, 166; force of, 412, 1.

*Ultra*, w. accus., 433.

**-ulus, ula, ulum**, in nouns, 315; 320, 5; in adjs., 327 ff.

**-um**, for *arum*, 42, 3; for *orum*, 45, 5, 4; in gen. plur. of 3d dec., 89.

**-undus, undi**, for *endus, endi*, 238.

*Unus*, decl. of, 119, 176; *unus qui*, v. subj., 501, II.

*Uti quisque*, 191, 1.

**-u**, end. of nouns in, 114.

**-ura**, nouns in, 321.

**-urio**, desideratives in, 332, III.

**-us**, for *e* in voc. sing., 45, 5; nouns in, 50 ff., 116; genitive of, 73, 116; gender, 115, 118. Derivatives in, 320, 6; 321; *us*, final, quantity of, 627.

*Usque*, w. accus., 437, 1.

**-ustus**, adjs. in, 323.

*Usus*, constr., 419.

**-ut**, nouns in, 51; genit. of, 67; gend., 111.

*Ut*, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489 ff.; omitted, 493, 2; w. *qui*, 519, 3.

*Ut si*, w. subj., 503, 506.

*Ut quisque—ita*, 458, 2.

*Uter, uterque*, 149; 187, 6; 188, 4; 191, 2.

*Uterlibet, uterque, utervis*, 191, 3.

*Uterque*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.

*Utinam*, w. subj. of desire, 488, 1.

*Utor*, constr., 419; 419, 4.

*Utpote*, w. *qui*, 519, 3.

*Utrum*, 346, II. 2.

**-utus**, adjs. in, 323.

**-uus**, verbal adjs. in, 328, 5.

**-ux**, genitive of nouns in, 81.

**V**, PLACE supplied by *u*, 2.

*Vacuum*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3) and 5.

Value, genit. of, 396, IV.

*Vannus*, gender of, 47.

*Velut, velut si*, w. subj., 503, 506.

Verbal inflections, table of, 242.

Verbs, etymology of—Classes, voices, moods, tenses, etc., 192–203. Paradigms, 204–215. Synopsis, 216–226. Periphrastic conj., 227–232. Contractions and peculiarities, 234–239. Formation of parts, 240 ff. Table of inflections, 243 ff. Comparative view of conjs., 243 ff. Principal parts of verbs, 246–260. Classification of verbs, 261–286. Irreg. verbs, 287–296. Defect., 297. Impers., 298–301. Deriv., 330 ff. Compound, 341. Irregularities of special verbs, 721. See also *Transitive, Intrans., Finite, Deponent, Semi-depon., Impersonal, Frequent., Incept., Desiderat., Diminutive.*

Verbs, syntax of, 460, 581,—Agreement, 460 ff. Omitted, 367, 3; 460, 3. Voices, 464 ff. Tenses of Indic., 466 ff. Use of Indic., 474. Tenses of Subj., 476 ff. Use of Subj., 483–533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infin., 539–553. Subject and

object clauses, 554 ff. Gerund, 559-566. Supine, 567 ff. Participles, 571-581.  
 Verb-stem, 203, 242.  
*Vereor*, constr., 492, 4.  
*Verisimile est*, *verum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.  
*Vero*, place in clause, 602, III.  
 Verses, 661; names of, 663 ff.  
 Versification, 655,—Feet, 656 ff.  
 Verses, 661 ff. Figures of prosody, 669. Varieties of verse, 670 ff.  
*Versus*, w. accus., 433.  
*Vescor*, constr., 419; 419, 4.  
*Vestras*, 185, 2.  
*Vestri*, *vestrum*, 396, III. 1.; 446, 3.  
*Veto*, constr., 551, II. 1.  
*Vetus*, compared, 167.  
*Vicinus*, w. dat. or gen., 391, 1; 399, 3.  
*Vir*, decl. of, 45, 4.  
*Virgil*, versification of, 696.  
 Vocative, formation of, 86, 88; in Greek nouns, 95; in adjs., 154, 157. Syntax of, 369.  
 Voices, 195. See also under *Verbs*, *syntax of*.  
*Volens*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.  
*Volo*, constr., 551, II. 1.

**-volus**, compds. in, compared, 164.  
 Vowels, 3, I.; sounds of, 6 ff., 14 ff.; before *r*, 6, 2.

**W**, PLACE supplied by *u*, 2.  
 Want, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419.

Warning, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.

Weights, Roman, 714.

Winds, gender of names of, 35.

Wishing, constr. of verbs of, 551.

Words, arrangement of, 592.

**X**, SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48, 50; genitive of, 77-83; gender of, 108.

**Y**, ONLY in Greek words, 2.  
 Nouns in, 48; genitive of, 62; gender, 111.

*Y*, quantity of,—final, 617; in increments, 638.

**-ys**, genitive of nouns in, 74; gender of, 107; quantity of *ys* final, 628.

**-yæ**, genitive of nouns in, 82.

**Z**, ONLY in Greek words, 2.  
 Zeugma, 704, I. 2.

THE END.





